

**外研社 朗文 新概念英语 练习详解 3**

**NEW CONCEPT ENGLISH (New Edition)**

**EXERCISE COMPANION 3: *Developing Skills***

English edition of *New Concept English* © L. G. Alexander 1967

Original English material © Addison Wesley Longman Ltd. 1997

This edition of *New Concept English EXERCISE COMPANION 3*

with the addition of Chinese material © Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press and Pearson Education North Asia Ltd., 2000. This edition is

published under the Longman imprint,

which is an imprint of Pearson Education Group,

and by arrangement with Pearson Education North Asia Ltd., Hong Kong.

Licensed for sale in the mainland territory of the People's Republic of China only.

This simplified Chinese characters edition first published in 2000 jointly by Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press and Pearson Education North Asia Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

合作出版人: 李朋义(外研社) 沈维贤(朗文)

主编: 何其莘 顾问: 亚历山大(英)

责任编辑: 任小玫

执行编辑: 周继东

封面设计: 诸中英

外语教学与研究出版社 联合出版  
培生教育出版北亚洲有限公司

本书任何部分之文字及图片,如未获得本社之书面同意,不得用任何方式抄袭、节录或翻印。

本简体字版只供在中华人民共和国内地销售。

凡属合法出版之本书,封面均贴有防伪标贴;

凡无防伪标贴者均属未经授权之版本,

本书出版者及原版权持有者将予以追究。

朗文(Longman)为培生教育出版集团(Pearson Education Group)所拥有之商标。

《新概念英语》(新版)是《新概念英语》1967年首次出版以来第一次推出的新版本。现在,由该经典教材的出版者外语教学与研究出版社和培生教育出版中国有限公司独家授权、由原编著者何其莘教授亲自主持编写、亚历山大先生充任顾问的这套《新概念英语》(新版)辅导丛书涵盖自学导读、练习详解、词汇、语法以及录音练习等各方面的内容,是面向中国广大英语爱好者的一套权威的辅导用书,定能满足中国广大读者对《新概念英语》(新版)的全方位的要求,并使英语爱好者在学习过程中最大限度地发挥自己的潜能。

《新概念英语》(新版)辅导丛书包括:

《新概念英语自学导读1》(*NCE Study Guide 1: First Things First*)

《新概念英语自学导读2》(*NCE Study Guide 2: Practice and Progress*)

《新概念英语自学导读3》(*NCE Study Guide 3: Developing Skills*)

《新概念英语自学导读4》(*NCE Study Guide 4: Fluency in English*)

《新概念英语练习详解1》(*NCE Exercise Companion 1: First Things First*)

《新概念英语练习详解2》(*NCE Exercise Companion 2: Practice and Progress*)

《新概念英语练习详解3》(*NCE Exercise Companion 3: Developing Skills*)

《新概念英语练习详解4》(*NCE Exercise Companion 4: Fluency in English*)

《新概念英语语法手册》(*An NCE Grammar Handbook*)

《新概念英语词汇大全》(*An NCE Complete Vocabulary List*)

《新概念英语词汇自学手册》(*An NCE Pocket Dictionary*)

《新概念英语录音练习手册》(*Recorded Drills for NCE*)

## Preface

This Exercise Companion is intended for all students of *Developing Skills*, but particularly for those working on their own.

Detailed notes are provided for each of the sixty texts. These consist of:

- Writing exercises (Summary writing < points, summary >, Composition and Letter writing included)
- Grammar and vocabulary exercises (Vocabulary, Key structures and Special difficulties included)
- Multiple choice questions (Comprehension, Structure and Vocabulary included)

We believe that these additional notes will help students from all background to benefit from the course and to complete it successfully.



Louis George Alexander

## 前 言

该《练习详解》专为所有使用《培养技能》的学习者而设计，特别适用于自学者。

书中，针对 60 篇课文中的每一篇均有进一步说明。其中包括：

- 写作练习（包括摘要写作要点、摘要写作参考答案、作文参考答案与书信写作参考答案）；
- 语法、词汇练习（包括词汇、关键句型与难点练习参考答案）；
- 多项选择练习（包括理解、结构与词汇）。

我们确信这些补充材料将使各种起点的学习者从中受益，并顺利学完本课程。



L. G. 亚历山大

## 目 录

测试 1 答案	1
Lesson 1 A puma at large 逃遁的美洲狮	7
Lesson 2 Thirteen equals one 十三等于一	15
Lesson 3 An unknown goddess 无名女神	22
Lesson 4 The double life of Alfred Bloggs 阿尔弗雷德·布洛格斯的双重生活	30
Lesson 5 The facts 确切数字	38
Lesson 6 Smash-and-grab 砸橱窗抢劫	47
Lesson 7 Mutilated ladies 残钞鉴别组	56
Lesson 8 A famous monastery 著名的修道院	65
Lesson 9 Flying cats 飞猫	74
Lesson 10 The loss of the <i>Titanic</i> “泰坦尼克”号的 沉没	82
Lesson 11 Not guilty 无罪	90
Lesson 12 Life on a desert island 荒岛生活	98
Lesson 13 ‘It’s only me’ “是我,别害怕”	107
Lesson 14 A noble gangster 贵族歹徒	115
Lesson 15 Fifty pence worth of trouble 五十便士的 麻烦	124
Lesson 16 Mary had a little lamb 玛丽有一头小羔羊	132
Lesson 17 The longest suspension bridge in the world 世界上最长的吊桥	141
Lesson 18 Electric currents in modern art 现代艺术中 的电流	150

Lesson 19	A very dear cat 一只贵重的宝贝猫	158
Lesson 20	Pioneer pilots 飞行员的先驱	166
测试 2 答案		174
Lesson 21	Daniel Mendoza 丹尼尔·门多萨	179
Lesson 22	By heart 熟记台词	189
Lesson 23	One man's meat is another man's poison 各有所爱	198
Lesson 24	A skeleton in the cupboard “家丑”	207
Lesson 25	The <i>Cutty Sark</i> “卡蒂萨克”号帆船	216
Lesson 26	Wanted: a large biscuit tin 征购大饼干筒	225
Lesson 27	Nothing to sell and nothing to buy 不卖 也不买	234
Lesson 28	Five pounds too dear 五镑也太贵	243
Lesson 29	Funny or not? 是否可笑?	252
Lesson 30	The death of a ghost 幽灵之死	260
Lesson 31	A lovable eccentric 可爱的怪人	269
Lesson 32	A lost ship 一艘沉船	278
Lesson 33	A day to remember 难忘的一天	287
Lesson 34	A happy discovery 幸运的发现	295
Lesson 35	Justice was done 伸张正义	303
Lesson 36	A chance in a million 百万分之一的机遇	311
Lesson 37	The Westhaven Express 开往威斯特海温 的快车	319
Lesson 38	The first calendar 最早的日历	328
Lesson 39	Nothing to worry about 不必担心	336
Lesson 40	Who's who 真假难辨	344
Lesson 41	Illusions of pastoral peace 宁静田园生活的 遐想	353
Lesson 42	Modern cavemen 现代洞穴人	361

Lesson 43	Fully insured 全保險 .....	369
Lesson 44	Speed and comfort 又快捷又舒适 .....	378
Lesson 45	The power of the press 新闻报道的威力 .....	387
Lesson 46	Do it yourself 自己动手 .....	396
Lesson 47	Too high a price? 代价太高? .....	405
Lesson 48	The silent village 沉默的村庄 .....	414
Lesson 49	The ideal servant 理想的仆人 .....	423
Lesson 50	New Year resolutions 新年的决心 .....	432
Lesson 51	Predicting the future 预测未来 .....	441
Lesson 52	Mud is mud 实事求是 .....	450
Lesson 53	In the public interest 为了公众的利益 .....	459
Lesson 54	Instinct or cleverness? 是本能还是机智? .....	469
Lesson 55	From the earth: Greetings 来自地球的问候 .....	479
Lesson 56	Our neighbour, the river 河流, 我们的邻居 .....	488
Lesson 57	Back in the old country 重返故里 .....	497
Lesson 58	A spot of bother 一点儿小麻烦 .....	506
Lesson 59	Collecting 收藏 .....	516
Lesson 60	Too early and too late 太早和太晚 .....	525

## 测试1答案

### 关键句型练习答案

- A.
1. My hotel room overlooked a courtyard *in which* there was a fountain *and* several trees.
  2. *Though* Uncle Charles looked everywhere for his glasses, he could not find them.
  3. During Christmas, there was *so much* extra work at the post office *that* a great number of students were employed to help.
  4. I don't want to see that film *because* it had poor reviews.
  5. *Now that* wages have gone up, prices will rise *and* the cost of living will be higher than ever.
  6. *Although* the police searched everywhere, *neither* the missing boy *nor* his dog could be found.
  7. James Sullivan, *whose* book on the Antarctic was published recently, will give a lecture at the local library next week.
  8. *In spite of the fact that* fares have increased, the railway company is still losing money *because* the employces have demanded higher wages.
  9. He gave me *such* a fright *that* I knocked the teapot over.
  10. The climbers *not only* reached the top of the mountain *but* they spent the night there *as well*.
- B. We watched the circus act. A man was walking on a tightrope, and then he rode one-wheel bicycle across,

carrying two others on his shoulders. When he got to the other side, the crowd clapped his performance.

He returned to give a repeat performance and rode out onto the tightrope again. He looked very confident, as he had done the first time, but he was doing a hand-stand on the one-wheel bicycle when he lost his balance. The crowd gasped as he grabbed the tightrope. He seemed to hang there for ever, holding on to the bicycle. Then slowly he managed to climb on again and ride to the other side. There was a silence that you could almost hear (if you know what I mean) before the audience burst out clapping and cheering.

(140 words)

- C. a. died, has just had, were, have been trying, died, was, lasted, proved, removed, sent, found, did not show, have not decided, died, feared, cut, has not happened, survived
- b. used to travel, was, used to live *or* lived, used to fly *or* would fly, used to take *or* would take, had, were flying, gaining, turned, flew, were waiting, told
- c. will last, will continue, is reached/has been reached, will last, have offered/will offer/are offering, will relieve, lasts, drive, will have to
- d. will be retiring, will be sending, will sign, will be sent, will all remember, will be attending, will have been teaching, retires, will devote, will be
- e. waved, had been water skiing, had, were thrown, struck, continued, had just begun, noticed, came, had roared
- f. 1. found, had reached 2. have just moved, are

3. met, told, had just returned 4. will be set up  
5. went *or* used to go 6. will have been studying  
7. were arguing, stole

*g.* is now known, are sighted, are washed, are rarely caught, was caught, was carried, was eventually brought, was found, has since been sent, has been examined, is called, are rarely seen

*h.* The man told the court that at the time the murder was committed he was travelling on the 8 o'clock train to London.

When the inspector asked him if he always caught such an early train, the man answered that of course he did. He said he had to be at work at 10 o'clock and added that his employer would confirm that he was there on time.

When the inspector asked him if a later train would get him to work on time, he said that he supposed it would, but that he never caught a later train.

When the inspector asked him what time he arrived at the station, he said he had arrived at ten to eight, that he had bought a paper and waited for the train.

And when the inspector asked if he had noticed anything unusual, he said that he hadn't.

- i.* 1. are not brought 2. will cause 3. would have completed  
*j.* ringing, climbing *or* to climb, cleaning, answering, cleaning, interrupting, to interrupt, working, coming, to stay

D. *a.* 1. had to go 2. should have gone 3. should begin

- b. 1. 'I *shall have* the parcel *delivered*,' said the shop assistant.  
 2. Are you going to *have* this suit *cleaned*?  
 3. When will you *have* this jacket *dyed*?
- c. 1. *Can* you show me the way to the station, please?  
 2. I gave him a few lessons and he *was soon able to* swim.  
 3. They *were able to* jump into the sea before the boat sank.  
 4. You *cannot* leave this room until you get permission.

E. an, —, a, —, —, a, the, —, a, an, —, —, a, —

F. most, from, in, biggest, of, lot, different, many, range/  
 variety

G. 1. at 2. in, in 3. to / from, on 4. on, on 5. at  
 6. in(to), to 7. in 8. of 9. in 10. in 11. in  
 12. on 13. with 14. at/on 15. to

### 难点练习答案

A. 1. between 2. usual 3. headmaster 4. clothing  
 5. clothes 6. clear 7. clear 8. wash 9. mood  
 10. temper 11. too 12. fairly 13. old enough  
 14. petrol

B. 1. I always *get up* at 7 o'clock.

She is slowly *getting over* her illness.

The prisoners couldn't *get away*. The walls were too high.

*Get out!* You're annoying me.

2. Please *keep off* the grass.

They built the wall round the house to *keep* people *out*.

The teacher *kept* all the children *in* after school for misbehaving.

John found it difficult to *keep up*. The others were running too fast for him.

3. He has deceived a lot of people, but he can't *take me in*.

I think you should *take up* a new hobby.

The plane *took off* at 4 yesterday afternoon.

The girl's mother *took* her doll *away*.

4. I *ran into* a very old friend last weekend.

We have *run out of* bread. Can you get some?

Don't *run away*; I want to talk to you.

She *ran after* him as he cycled off down the road.

5. She didn't want to tell the truth, so she *made up* a silly story.

As soon as we reach the top of the hill, we'll turn round and *make for* home.

From this distance, I can't *make out* what they're doing.

In order to *make up for* what he had done before, he took them all out for a good meal.

- C. 1. The leaves of many trees *turn yellow* in autumn.  
2. If you leave milk out in the heat, it will *go sour*.  
3. In winter here it *grows dark* by 5 o'clock.  
4. If you *fall ill* while you're here, you must see a doctor.  
5. If all my dreams *come true*, I shall be a very happy man.  
6. Don't *get angry* with me; it wasn't my fault.
- D. 1. ... so do I.

2. . . . neither should I.
3. . . . so am I.
4. . . . so will I.
5. . . . so did I.
6. . . . neither have I.

# Lesson 1

## A puma at large

### 逃遁的美洲狮

#### 1 写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Reports—London Zoo—puma spotted—45 miles south of London
2. Similar in nature
3. Woman picking blackberries saw it first
4. Puma moved from place to place
5. Left trail of dead deer—small animals
6. Paw prints—puma fur found as well
7. 'Cat-like noises'—heard at night
8. Animal seen up a tree
9. Now experts convinced—really was a puma

#### 摘要写作参考答案

*The reports received by London Zoo that a puma had been spotted forty-five miles south of London were similar in nature. A woman picking blackberries saw it first, but the puma moved from place to place, leaving a trail of dead deer and small animals. Paw prints and puma fur were found as well. 'Cat-like noises' were heard at night and the animal was seen up a tree. Now experts were convinced that the animal really*

was a puma.

(79 words)

### 作文参考答案

Mrs. Stone had spent the whole morning *picking blackberries in the countryside near her home*. It was nearly lunch time, so she decided to *return home for lunch*. She was just *picking up her basket* when she heard a noise in *the bushes*. Then she saw an animal which *looked like a cat*. She knew it was not a cat because *it was so large*. The animal suddenly *turned round to look at her* and she thought it was going to *come towards her and perhaps attack her*. She dropped her basket and *screamed loudly*. Hearing the sound, the animal *disappeared into the bushes*, after which Mrs. Stone *picked up her basket* and ran all the way home. She told her neighbours that *she had seen a puma in the countryside*, but they did not believe her. She also telephoned the police but they *didn't believe her either*.

(148 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

<i>address :</i>	_____
	_____
	_____
	_____
<i>date :</i>	
<i>beginning of letter (Dear...)</i>	
<i>Introduction</i>	
<i>Purpose</i>	
<i>Conclusion</i>	
<i>ending (Yours...)</i>	
<i>signature</i>	
<i>Postscript (PS...)</i>	

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

spotted (1.2):

seen

accumulate (1.4):

pile up

obliged to (1.5):

bound to

claimed (1.6):

stated

extraordinarily similar (1.6):

surprisingly alike

immediately (1.8):

at once

convinced (1.14):

sure

### 难点练习答案

A. 1. at      2. to      3. to      4. in      5. on

B. 1. He is the man we have heard so much about.

2. The shelf you put those books on has collapsed.

3. Who(m) did you receive a letter from?

4. This is the road we came by.

5. Where is the pencil you were playing with?

## 3 多项选择练习

### Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

根据课文第1段最后一句中的并列连词 for(说明原因)引导的句子内容“for the description given by people ... were extraordinarily similar (因为凡是……的人们所描述的情况是出奇地相似)”,可以判断(d) because people's descriptions of the puma had a lot in common (因为人们对这只美洲狮的描述有许多共同点)为正确选项;(a) because they did not believe that pumas existed in England (因为他们不相信英格兰有美洲狮)并非最终使专家“决定调查”的原因;而(b) because they wanted a puma for the London Zoo (因为他们想为伦敦动物园找只美洲狮)与课文内容不符;(c) when a woman saw a puma in a small village (当一位妇女在一个小村子里看到一只美洲狮时)也并非专家“决定调查”的时间条件。

2. (a)

根据课文第2段第1句所述内容,可以判断(a) The puma

had not attacked the woman(美洲狮没有攻击这位妇女)为使专家们相信“a puma had been seen in the village(在村庄里发现了一只美洲狮)”的证据,即“... where a woman ... saw ‘a large cat’ only five yards away from her(……一位妇女……看见一只‘大猫’离她只有5码远)”,故为正确选项;由于“a large cat”和“had behaved like a cat”均为美洲狮的一般性特征以及“A puma had come very close to a human being(一只美洲狮离人很近)”这一事实均不足以使专家们相信“在那个村庄”见到了美洲狮,因此(b)、(c)和(d)均为错误选项。

### 3. (c)

从课文第15~16行“this one (指所述 puma) must have been in the possession of a private collector ... (那只美洲狮一定是某位私人收藏家豢养的……)”可以看出(c) Whom the puma had belonged to (那只美洲狮属于谁)为正确选项。句中“must have been”结构为对过去一件事情的肯定推测;根据课文内容,专家们想要解答但又无法解答的问题是美洲狮的来源(即“Where had it come from?”),而不是美洲狮“had managed to cover such great distances within a day(在一天里尽量走很长的路途)”、“had escaped from a zoo(从一动物园里逃出来的)”或“had climbed a tree(爬上了一棵树)”的方式,故(a)、(b)和(d)均为错误选项。

## Structure 结构

### 4. (c)

用动词“make”表达“使某人做某事”这一概念时,需使用“to make somebody do something”结构,即在动词 make 的宾语后使用“不带 to 的动词不定式”作宾语补足语,因此只有(c)为正确选项。

5. (d)

在动词“say(说)”后陈述所发生的一件事时,其后通常使用连词引导的宾语从句。宾语从句为陈述句时,引导该宾语从句的连词“that”可以省略。当该宾语从句中的谓语动词“see”的动作在主句谓语动词之前发生,而主句谓语动词动作又为过去时态时,需将从句中的谓语动词构成过去完成时形式。根据课文第5~6行“... by people who claimed to have seen the puma ... (……凡是声称见到过美洲狮的人们……)”,动词 see 的动作明显发生于主句动词“said”(过去式)之前,因此(d) they had seen 为正确选项;而(c) they saw 所用时态有误;只有在表示“让做某事”和将动词 say 用于复合结构时,其后方能使用动词不定式,如: She says to meet him at the station. (她说去车站接他。)An egg is said to be the equivalent of a pound of meat. (据说1个鸡蛋的营养相当于1磅肉。)由于本句“said”并非用于表示“让做某事”的含义,且本句中“said”并非用于复合结构中,因此(a)和(b)均为错误选项。

6. (b)

分词短语可用于表达时间状语,而且可用于 after、before、since、when、while、whenever、once、until、on 等词之后,但是该分词所示动作需由句子的主语做出,即句子中的主语既做出主要谓语动词表示的动作,又做出该分词表示的动作。就本题中的“observed”而言,它并非“it”(puma)做出的动作,而是被动语态形式。此外,在使用“on + 分词短语”结构时,可以表示出“一……就……”的含义,这与句子“immediately ran away”的关系相一致,因此(b) On being observed 为正确选项。而(a) Observing her 所用语态与人称有误;而在(c) Having been observed 中,“observe”所用时态表示与“ran away”有较长的时间间

隔,而与修饰“ran away”的副词“immediately(马上,立刻)”相矛盾;(d) On her being observed 中的 her 使用也有误(应为 its)。因此,(a)、(c)和(d)均为错误选项。

7. (d)

根据课文第9行“... a puma will not attack a human being unless it is cornered(……美洲狮除非逼得走投无路,是决不会伤人的)”中的“it is cornered(它被逼得走投无路)”,并非美洲狮做出“attack”动作的条件,而只有 except when they are cornered 可以用来表示这种条件;“except”表示“除……之外”,而“除……之外”的部分不包含在主体之内,因此(a)、(b)和(c)均为错误选项。

8. (d)

“could have done”即“could + 动词完成式”结构,除可如本题那样,用来表示“过去曾有能力或有可能去做某件事,但并未去做”外,还可以用来表示“对过去行为的肯定推测”,如:She could have gone off with some friends.(她可能同几个朋友出去了。)因此,本题的正确选项应为(d) could only have been。而(a) must be 和(c) can only be 只能用来表示“对现在行为的肯定推测”,因此为错误选项;“should have done”即“should + 动词现在完成式”,除可用来表示“过去的动作本应发生而实际却未发生”外,还可用来表示“对过去动作发生的可能性推测”。(b) should have been 选项所含的这一意义与本题中“were now fully convinced(此刻已完全证实)”相矛盾,因此是错误选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (c)

(c) no more than (或 not any more than) 可用来表示“只不过,仅仅”之意,如:There are no more than ten tickets

left. (只剩下 10 张票。)He is no more than a boy. (他只不过是个小孩。)因此能确切地表达文中含义;而(a) at least (至少)、(b) four or (四或)和(d) within (在……之内)均不能准确表达文中含义。

10. (b)

文中“unless it is cornered”为“除非它被逼得走投无路”之意。这里的“corner”不用于表示具体所处的方位,因此只有选项(b) in a trap (落入陷阱)能大致表达出该意义;而选项(a) in a corner (在角落里)、(c) at an angle (在交叉点)和(d) under cover (在隐蔽处)均指所处位置,不能表示出文中含义,故均为错误选项。

11. (b)

本题“A business man on a fishing trip ...”中的“on a fishing trip”为介词短语,作定语修饰“man”。此介词短语中的“fishing”为动名词,作定语修饰“trip”,整个短语意为“一位在去钓鱼途中的商人”,因此(b) fishes for pleasure (以钓鱼为乐的)为正确选项;而(a) sells fish (卖鱼的)、(c) nets fish (网鱼的)和(d) earns his living as a fisherman(以打鱼为生的)均为错误选项。

12. (a)

本题中“private collector (私人收藏家)”意即由于某类物品的稀少、漂亮或由于某人对某类物品的偏爱等而收藏该类物品的人,因此(a) on one's own benefit(为自己的利益)为正确选项;而(b) on one's own (自己、独自)不能确切表达“a private collector”的含义;此外(c) in private (秘密地)和(d) unknown to the public(非公开的)也均为错误选项。

## Lesson 2

### Thirteen equals one

### 十三等于一

#### 1 写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Church clock—striking hours woke vicar up
2. One o'clock
3. Clock struck thirteen times
4. Vicar —clock tower
5. Took torch with him
6. Saw Bill Wilkins—local grocer
7. Bill—trying to repair the bell
8. Had succeeded—repairing it—but one o'clock—  
thirteen times
9. Vicar—pleased
10. Offered grocer cup of tea

#### 摘要写作参考答案

*At one o'clock* in the morning, the church clock striking the hours woke the vicar up *as* it struck thirteen times. The vicar went into the clock tower, *taking* a torch with him. He saw Bill Wilkins, the local grocer there *and* Bill explained he was trying to repair the clock *but* hadn't succeeded *because* at one o'clock it struck thirteen times. However, the vicar was

pleased the bell was working *and* offered the grocer a cup of tea.

(79 words)

### 作文参考答案

#### A sticky business

We were used to hearing our church bell striking the hours in our small village. For as long as anyone could remember, the bell had struck the hours day and night. However, one night the church bell remained silent and the next morning we saw that the clock had stopped at exactly one a.m. Our clock was clearly damaged, but no one could explain how this had happened.

Armed with a torch, our vicar climbed into the church tower to see what was going on. He heard a loud buzz as he went towards the clock and in the torchlight he found it had been invaded by bees. He was lucky they didn't sting him! He shone his torch into the great bell and saw that it was full of wax and honey. No wonder it wasn't working!

A bee keeper was called in to deal with the situation. He immediately removed the queen bee to one of his bee hives and the other bees followed. The clock was cleaned and was soon working again. We not only enjoyed hearing it strike the hours day and night, but we enjoyed eating the honey as well.

(195 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

1. It was very nice to hear from you.
2. It's been a long time since I heard from you.

3. Forgive me for not answering your letter before now.
4. I am sorry you've been ill and hope you're feeling better now.
5. I have not written before as I had lost your address.
6. I hope you received my last letter.

## 2

## 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

vicar (1.1):	priest, pastor
repaired (1.3):	fixed
damaged (1.4):	broken
silent (1.4):	quiet
with a start (1.5):	in surprise
caught sight of (11.8-9):	saw

### 关键句型练习答案

1. Whatever *are you doing* up here, Bill? (l. 10)
2. *I'm trying* to repair *the bell*. (l. 11)
3. I'm glad *the bell is working* again. (l. 14)
4. *It's working* all right. (l. 15)

### 难点练习答案

- |                      |               |             |
|----------------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. in a hurry        | 2. in the end | 3. in sight |
| 4. in ink, in pencil | 5. in common  | 6. in tears |

## Comprehension 理解

## 1. (d)

从课文第3~4行“The big clock ... was damaged many years ago and has been silent ever since (这个大钟……在很多年前遭到毁坏,从此便无声无息了)”可以看出(d) the bell had been out of order for many years (那口钟已坏多年)为正确选项;而其他3个选项(a) it was too expensive to repair (修理它花费太大)、(b) it disturbed the vicar's sleep (它打搅了牧师的睡眠)和(c) Bill Wilkins only worked at night (比尔·威尔金斯只在夜里工作)均与课文意义不符。

## 2. (b)

从“‘Whatever are you doing up here Bill?’ asked the vicar in surprise(‘你究竟在这上面干什么,比尔?’牧师惊讶地问)”,可以看出(b) it was an unusual time and place to find him (在一个很不寻常的时间和地点发现他)为正确选项;而(a) Bill Wilkins had been hoping to surprise him (比尔·威尔金斯一直想使他吃惊)和(c) he had expected to find a figure (他料想会发现个人影)均与课文意义不符;(d) the clock had struck thirteen times (钟敲了13下)也不是使牧师感到惊奇的原因,钟的敲响只是惊醒了牧师,因此(a)、(c)和(d)均为错误选项。

## 3. (c)

从牧师的回答“Thirteen is not as good as one, but it's better than nothing”中可以看出,(c) he was grateful for the trouble Bill Wilkins had taken (他对比尔·威尔金斯所费的力气很感激)为正确选项;而(a) he thought that Bill

Wilkins was thirsty (他以为比尔·威尔金斯渴了)、(b) thanks to him, the clock would now strike once an hour (多亏了他,钟现在每小时能敲响一次了)和(d) he was pleased to have been woken up for nothing (他很高兴无缘无故地被吵醒了)都与课文所表达的意义不符,故均为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (b)

(b) always struck 为正确选项;(a) struck always 中的副词“always”的位置有误。在“主语+系动词+主语补语”的结构中,副词“always”通常应放在“be”动词之后修饰“be”动词,而在“主语+行为动词+宾语”等结构中,副词“always”应放在行为动词前修饰该行为动词;(c) was always striking 和 (d) has always been striking 选项中所用时态有误。(c) 中使用的过去正在进行时应表明过去正在进行的动作;(d) 中使用的现在完成进行时应表明动作发生在过去,一直延续到现在,而且还在发生。

#### 5. (d)

全句为“it is/was ... that ...”构成的强调句式结构。由否定句“The bell didn't stop until the thirteen stroke”变化而成。“it is/was”后为被强调部分,连词“that”后为非强调部分;用于引导时间状语从句的 before (在……之前)、when (在……时候)和用于引导结果状语从句的 so that (因而,结果)不能在此结构中作连词连接非强调部分,故(a)、(b)和(c)均为错误选项。

#### 6. (b)

在由 wh-(即由关系代词或关系副词 what、whatever、when、where、how 等)引导的宾语从句中需使用陈述语序,因此(b) what he was 为正确选项;而(a) what was

he 和 (d) whatever was he 为疑问语序, 因此是错误选项; (c) what he is 虽为陈述语序, 但是时态使用有误。应注意本句主句动词为过去式“asked”。

7. (c)

虽然根据语义, 动词“mend”这一动作发生在过去, 但是“but I'm afraid ...”说明了发生在过去的这一动作对说话人当时的影响, 因此 (c) have mended 为正确选项; 而 (a) shall mend, (b) am mending 和 (d) mended 所用时态均有误: (a) shall mend 为将来时, 说明“mend”这一动作还未做出, 因而不会产生现在的“担心”; (b) am mending 为现在正在进行时, 表明 mend 这一动作正在进行, 与表示状态的“all right”不符; (d) mended 只说明过去做出过“mend”这一动作, 而不强调对现在的影响, 因而同随后表明对现在影响的“担心 (afraid)”在时态搭配上不相符合。

8. (a)

“to get used to (doing) something”用来表示“习惯于(做)某事”。“to”为介词, 其后应使用名词、代词或动名词, 因此 (a) hearing 是正确选项; 其后不能直接使用原形动词, 因此 (b) hear 是错误选项; (c) the sound 与原句中的 that 搭配有误; (d) having heard 时态有误。动名词的完成时态表示已完成的动作, 与“We'll get used to”中所用将来时在时态上相矛盾。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (b)

选项 (b) a fund (基金) 为正确选项, 而 (a) cash (现金)、(c) a scholarship (奖学金) 和 (d) an investment (投资) 均不能作该类钱的解释, 因此都是错误选项。

10. (a)

(a) runs a shop (开商店的) 为正确选项, 是对“grocer (杂

货店老板)”的正确解释；而 (b) eats a lot (饭量很大的)、(c) sells bread (卖面包的) 和 (d) surprises people (使人惊奇的) 均与“grocer”一词的意义不符。

11. (a)

文中“night after night”表示“每天夜里”之意，因此 (a) every night (每天夜里) 为正确选项；而 (b) all night (整个晚上)、(c) the following night (第 2 天夜里) 和 (d) several nights (几个晚上) 除不能准确表达出文中“night after night”之意外，还存在动词与时间状语的搭配问题，如 (b) 和 (d)，或时态的使用问题，如 (c)。

12. (c)

选项 (c) Just the same (依然) 为正确选项，可以准确表达出文中“still”的含义；而 (a) Yet (然而，可是)、(b) Good (好的) 和 (d) Even now (即使此刻) 均不能表达出文中“still”的含义，因此为错误选项。

# Lesson 3

## An unknown goddess

### 无名女神

1

写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Archaeologists found clay fragments—most sacred room—ancient temple
2. Represented fifteen statues—goddesses
3. Had once been painted
4. Body of one statue found—remains—15th c. B. C.
5. Head found—remains—5th c. B. C.
6. Fragments reconstructed
7. Turned out to be statue—goddess—three feet high
8. Hands on hips
9. Full-length skirt
10. Identity not known

#### 摘要写作参考答案

Archaeologists found clay fragments in an ancient temple. These represented the fifteen statues of goddesses which had once been painted. The body of one statue was found among remains from the fifteenth century B.C. while its head was found among remains from the fifth century B.C. When the fragments were reconstructed, they turned out to be a goddess

which stood three feet high. Her hands rested on her hips and she was wearing a full-length skirt. Her identity is unknown.

(80 words)

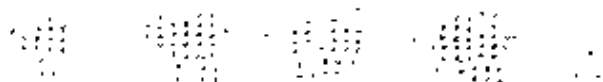
### 作文参考答案

After walking round the ancient city, the archaeologists discovered an ancient temple. This temple had obviously been a place of worship because it contained a sacred room. On entering the sacred room, the archaeologists found the clay fragments of fifteen statues, each of which was a goddess which had once been painted. After this, workmen began digging and soon discovered the head of a statue among remains dating from the fifth century B.C. They also found the body of this statue among remains from the fifteenth century B.C. The archaeologists carefully put the fragments together. They were astonished to find that the figure was a goddess. The goddess was a modern-looking woman. She had her hands on her hips and she was wearing a full-length skirt. Although the archaeologists tried very hard to identify her, they were unable to find out her name.

(143 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

1. I shall be looking forward to seeing you next week.
2. I am very sorry for any inconvenience I have caused you.
3. I hope you will accept my apologies.
4. I wish you every success in your new job.
5. Please give my regards to your parents.
6. I look forward to hearing from you soon.



### 词汇练习参考答案

explored (1.2):	examined
ancient (1.3):	very old
prosperous (1.4):	wealthy
storeys (1.5):	floors
beneath (1.7):	under
fragments (1.10):	pieces
remains (1.12):	surviving pieces

### 关键句型练习答案

Yesterday I ...

*left* home early, *laid* the table for breakfast, *lay* in bed till 10 a.m., *chose* to stay at home, *raised* an important question, *rose* at dawn, *beat* Tom at chess, *bit* my tongue, *caught* a cold, *heard* the sad news, *sang* in a concert, *thought* I would see you, *showed* Tom my stamp collection, *ran* a mile, *lost* my wallet, *began* my new job, *fell* down and hurt myself, *felt* really ill

### 难点练习答案

- A. 1. She happened *to mention that it is your birthday today.*  
 2. It happened *that I was abroad when I heard the news.*  
 3. Tell me what *happened.*  
 4. If you happen *to see Maggie, please ask her to phone me.*

- B. 1. Some hotels are more than thirty *storeys* high.  
 2. Children love hearing *stories* from their parents.  
 3. A church or a temple is a place of *worship*.  
 4. Many *warships* were sunk in World War II.

3

### 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

就本文的题目“An unknown goddess (无名女神)”而言,文章第1段的主题句,即“Some time ago, an interesting discovery was made by archaeologists on the Aegean island of Kea(不久之前,在爱琴海的基亚岛上,考古工作者有一项有趣的发现)”中所述“an interesting discovery (有趣的发现)”应与该女神的情况相关,而有关该女神身首异处的情况,而且其脑袋更在他们发现之前已被人发现这一事实,才使得他们的发现“有趣”,因此(d) that they were not the first to have found the head of the goddess (他们并不是最早发现女神脑袋的人)应为正确选项;而(a) that the city had once been prosperous (该城市曾一度很繁荣)、(b) that the temple had been used as a place of worship (这座庙宇一直是祭祀祈祷的场所)和(c) they found the fifteen statues had been painted (他们发现这15尊雕像一度上过色)虽为文中所表达的事实,但与该“interesting discovery”无直接关系,因此是错误选项。

2. (d)

文中第6~8行中“... large rooms with beautifully decorated walls(……里面房间很大,墙壁装饰华丽)”和“The city was even equipped with a drainage system ...

(城里甚至还敷设了排水系统……)”,清楚地表明 (d) advanced techniques had been employed in building and decorating (在建筑与装饰中已使用了先进的技术) 为正确选项;而 (a) some of the houses were built only one storey high (其中一些房子只建了一层高)、(b) a great number of fragments were found in the temple (在庙宇中发现了大量的碎片) 和 (c) the city had been built on clay (这座城市建在陶土上) 均与文中所述意义不符,而且构成不了“a high level of civilization (高度的文明)”。

### 3. (a)

题中“to establish the identity ...”作目的状语,为“为确定身份”之意,因此 (a) tried to determine which goddess it represented (试图确定它代表哪一位女神) 为正确选项;而 (b) pieced together the fragments they found (将他们发现的碎片拼凑起来)、(c) discovered that it was more modern than any of the other statues (发现它比其他雕像更摩登) 和 (d) wondered whether it belonged to the fifth or the fifteenth century (搞不清楚它属于第5世纪还是属于第15世纪) 均不能用于作为“确定被修复雕像的身份”的目的。

## Structure 结构

### 4. (d)

题中“know”用来表示“经历,体验”之意。名词 prosperity 一词为不可数名词,表示“繁荣”。文中并未特指哪一种繁荣,故 (d) prosperity 为正确选项;而 (a) a prosperity 错将“prosperity”一词作为可数名词;(b) the prosperous 中的“prosperous”为形容词,同其前的定冠词“the”搭配有误;(c) the prosperity 前使用了定冠词,通常用于特指某一种繁荣,而文中并未表明“特指”含义。

5. (b)

“since Roman times (自罗马时代起)”确定了本题应使用现在完成时结构,因此 (b) has not been 为正确选项;而 (a) was、(c) had been 和 (d) was not 均为使用时态有误。

6. (c)

文中第 14~15 行“... they were amazed to find that ... (……他们惊奇地发现……)”中的“amazed (惊奇的)”表示结果,即“发现……”后而产生的“amazed”这一结果。由于 (c) to their surprise, 即“to one's + 感情名词”结构,在句中作表示感情的结果状语,因此为正确选项;而 (a) surprisingly (使人惊奇地,而非 they 惊奇地) 用词有误; (b) with surprise 中用词搭配有误,应为 in surprise; (d) a surprise (令人惊奇的事物)与文中所表达的意义不符。

7. (b)

选项 (b) In spite of (尽管),为介词短语,其后可使用名词、代词或如文中的动名词结构,因此为正确选项;而 (a) Although 和 (d) Even though 均为连词,其后均应使用完整的句子,构成让步状语,不能使用动名词结构; (c) even (甚至,即使)为副词,仅用于语气强调,表示进一层的含义,其后所表达的语气强于同类的比较语气。

8. (b)

课文第 17 行“have been unable to”相当于“have not been able to (一直不能)”之意,因此 (b) have not been able 为正确选项。而在 (a) have been impossible 中,在使用形容词“impossible”时,句子主语通常为事物,指人时往往指其是“很难对付的”、“让人无法忍受的”; (c) cannot have

been 结构表示对现在事情的否定推测, 直接同其后的动词不定式“to discover her identity”搭配构成的“主语 + 系动词 + 主语补语”结构在逻辑上讲不通; (d) could not 除所用时态有误外, 全句缺少谓语动词。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (a)

只有 (a) holy (神圣的) 可表示文中“sacred”的含义; 而 (b) religious (宗教的)、(c) frightening (使人恐惧的) 和 (d) colourful (多彩的) 与“sacred”所表达的含义不同。

10. (d)

只有选项 (d) in good condition (完好) 与题干中的“was carefully preserved” (被精心地保护) 在语义上能衔接上, 由于精心保护它才完好无损; 而 (a) well done 指“某件事或工作干得好”、(b) conserved (节省, 节约) 和 (c) maintained (保养, 维护) 等都不能表达出所需含义, 故均为错误选项。

11. (b)

(b) proved to be ... 结构 (证明是……) 可用以表达“turned out to be ...”的意义, 因此为正确选项。虽然 (a) appeared 后也为“to be ...”这样的结构, 但表达“看起来像……, 似乎……”的含义, 缺少考古学家经过反复考证才证实的“过程”, 与文中所要表达的意义不符, 而 (c) resolved 和 (d) changed 作及物动词使用时含有“使变成……”的意义, 虽然有了“变化过程”的含义, 但是语态使用不当。

12. (b)

文中“so far”表示“至今, 到现在为止”的含义, 因此 (b) until now (至今, 直到现在) 为正确选项; 而

(a) beforehand (事先)、(c) for a long time (在很长时间里) 和 (d) at this distance (在此距离) 均不能表达出文中“so far”的含义, 因此为错误选项。

## Lesson 4

### The double life of Alfred Bloggs

#### 阿尔弗雷德·布洛格斯的双重生活

#### 1 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. Married—Alfred Bloggs—told wife—Corporation
2. Dressed—smart black suit
3. Changed—overalls
4. Spent day—dustman
5. Shower—changed back into suit at night
6. Lasted two years
7. Fellow dustmen—secret
8. Wife—never learn truth
9. Husband—office—future

##### 摘要写作参考答案

When he got married, Alfred Bloggs told his wife he worked for the Corporation. *Though* he dressed in a smart black suit every morning, he changed into overalls at work *and* spent the day working as a dustman. Then he took a shower and changed back into his suit at night. This lasted for two years *and* his fellow dustmen kept his secret. His wife will never learn the truth *because* her husband will be an office worker in future.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### Nearly caught

One morning Alf and three other dustmen were collecting rubbish in Merton Street and they stopped outside Mrs. Frost's house.

Though Alf didn't know it, his wife was visiting Mrs. Frost at the time. She and Mrs. Frost were old friends, though Mrs. Frost had never met Alf. Alf was just getting out of the dustcart to go into Mrs. Frost's backyard, when he saw his wife leaving Mrs. Frost's house. He quickly returned to the dustcart and hid in the driving cabin. While he was hiding, his fellow dustmen helped him by collecting Mrs. Frost's rubbish. Meanwhile, Alf's wife and Mrs. Frost talked on the doorstep. It looked as though their conversation would never end!

At last Mrs. Bloggs said goodbye to Mrs. Frost. She waved to one of the dustmen whom she recognized and she went towards the dustcart to greet him. The dustman waved back and gave her a big smile as the dustcart drove off. Mrs. Bloggs stood on the pavement and watched the dustcart disappear down the street. Then she began to walk home. 'It's all right, Alf,' his friend said. 'She can't see you now.'

'Thanks, Jim,' Alf said. 'That was a lucky escape!'

(200 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

*address*

*date*

Dear Mrs. Frost,

It was nice to meet you at Selena's party last week.

You mentioned you had a copy of *Who's Who*. I am writing to ask if I could borrow it for a couple of days. I'm doing some research on politicians and this book contains a lot of information. I promise I will take good care of it and return it to you as quickly as possible.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours sincerely,

*signature*

(80 words)

## 2

## 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

receive (1.1):	get
sacrifice (1.5):	give up
privilege (1.6):	special advantage, honour
curious (1.7):	strange
embarrassed (1.9):	shy
discovered (1.13):	found out
status (1.12):	social position

### 关键句型练习答案

A. 1. Alf's wife has never discovered ... (1. 13)

2. Alf has just found another job. (l. 13-14)
- B. 1. I've been living in this flat *since last April*.
2. How many postcards have you sent *up till now*?
3. Your mother has *just* phoned. Do you want to call her back?
4. Have you *ever* visited Xi'an?
5. I haven't been there *yet*, but I intend to go one of these days.

### 难点练习参考答案

- A. 1. John *described the film to his aunt*.
2. He *said nothing to her*.
3. She *explained the position to me*.
4. They *proposed the idea to us*.
- B. 1. *Is it worth five pounds?*
2. *Is it worth buying?*
3. Your car *is not worth* £5,000.
4. I don't think it's worth *going* to all that trouble.

3

### 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

文中第 4~6 行, 即“Such is human nature, that a great many people are often willing to sacrifice higher pay for the privilege of becoming white-collar workers(许多人常常情愿放弃较高的薪水以换取做白领工人的殊荣, 此乃人之常情)”, 正是作者想借 Alfred Bloggs 事例予以说明的事实, 即“人们经常比关心工资更关注工作的地位”。因此

(a) That people often care more about the status of a job than the salary 为正确选项;而 (b) That 'white-collar workers' usually wear a suit to go to work (“白领工人们”通常穿着西服去上班)、(c) That manual workers prefer to keep their job a secret (体力工人不喜欢让其他人知道他们的工作) 和 (d) That office workers usually earn less than manual workers (办公室人员通常比体力工人挣钱少) 仅为列出的一些社会现象,因此均为错误选项。

2. (c)

文中第 12 行 “Alf did this for over two years ... (两年多以来, 艾尔弗一直这样……)” 说明 (c) He led a double life (他过着双重生活) 为正确选项。该句中的指示代词 this 指前文中所述的 Alfred 的双重生活方式 “Every morning, he left home dressed in a smart black suit. He then changed into overalls and spent the next eight hours as a dustman. Before returning home at eight, he took a shower and changed back into his suit (每天早晨, 他穿上一身漂亮的黑色西装离家上班, 然后换上工作服, 当 8 个小时清洁工)”; 而 (a) He told his wife he worked for the Corporation, when in fact he did not (当他实际并未为那家公司工作时, 他告诉他妻子他在为那家公司干活)、(b) He disguised himself as a dustman (他扮作清洁工) 和 (d) He earned twice as much as he used to (他挣得比过去多一倍) 均与文中所表达的意思不符。

3. (d)

从文中第 15~16 行 “From now on, he will wear a suit all day and others will call him 'Mr. Bloggs', not 'Alf' (从此, 艾尔弗可以一天到晚穿西服了。别人将称呼他为‘布洛格斯先生’, 而不再叫他‘艾尔弗’了)”, 可以看出

(d) He feels that other people will respect him more (他觉得别人会更尊重他)为正确选项;而 (a) His new job is worth more than his previous one in every respect (他的新工作各方面都比他过去的工作更划算)、(b) He will no longer need a shower before returning home from work (他下班回家前再不用冲淋浴了)和 (c) He can now tell his wife about his previous job without embarrassment (现在他可以毫不尴尬地向他的妻子说起他从前的工作)则与文中所述意义不符。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (b)

(b) to work 为正确选项。“to”为介词,表示方位,work 为名词,to work 表示“去工作”之意,与“... they usually wear a collar and tie to go to work(……他们通常穿着硬领白衬衫、系着领带去上班)”意思相同,故为正确选项。而 (a) as they work (在他们工作时)和 (d) in order to work (为了工作)虽然语法上讲得通但与文中所表达的意义不符;(c) going to work (去工作)结构不对。

#### 5. (d)

就语言结构而言,不定代词“anything”应用于否定句或疑问句中,这样使用了肯定句形式的 (a) so embarrassed he said、(b) very embarrassed and said 和 (c) very embarrassed, so he said 均为错误选项;而 (d) so embarrassed he did not say 为正确选项。此外,在使用“so ... that ...”表示的“太……以至于……”结构中,连词 that 可以省略,(d) 就为省略了连词 that 的结构。在“so ... that ...”结构中,只能使用副词 so 来修饰其后的形容词/分词/副词,不能用 very 来修饰。

#### 6. (c)

文中第 9~10 行“*He simply told her that he worked for the Corporation*(他只说在埃尔斯米尔公司上班)”中的副词“*simply*”为“*just, merely*(仅仅)”之意,因此 (c) *and no more* (再没告诉她别的) 为正确选项;而 (a) *simply* (简单地)、(b) *in a simply way* (以简单的方式,简单地)和 (d) *only* (只,仅)用来修饰从句中的动词 *worked* 大意都是表示“他告诉她他只为那家公司工作”之意,显然与文中句子的“他只告诉她他为那家公司工作”的意义不符。

7. (b)

在时间连词后通常使用一般时态(即一般现在时或一般过去时)表示将来,因此 (b) *returned* 为正确选项;而 (a) *was returning*、(c) *had returned* 和 (d) *will return* 均在时态使用上有误。

8. (c)

“*used to do something*”用来表示过去存在的某种状态或某种经常性、习惯性的行为或动作,且这种情况目前已不复存在。“*used to*”后只能使用动词不定式。文中“*He will be earning only half as much as he used to*”的主句谓语动词为“*earn*”,由于上下文明确从句在“*only half*”之后的比较状语“*as much as he used to* (只有他从前挣得一半那样多)”之后省略了“*earn*”。在“*as ... as ...*”引导的从句中经常使用省略结构。当被修饰词为表示倍数(如 *twice, three times* 等)或数量(如 *half, a quarter* 等)的词时,其后通常使用“*as ... as ...*”结构,如: *You're not half as clever as you think you are.* (你还不如你所自认为的一半那样聪明。)因此 (a) *as they used to* 为错误选项;就结构而言, (b) *they used to*、(c) *they used to be* 和 (d) *they were used to*, 均作为其前省略了关系代词“*that*”的定语从句来使用。当“*used to*”后为 *be* 动词时,该 *be* 动

词通常不能省略,因此 (b) they used to 和 (d) they were used to 是错误选项。(d) 选项中使用的是“be used to”句型,该句型中的“used”为形容词,“to”为介词,其后只能使用名词、代词或动名词。这样本题的正确选项为 (c)。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

(d) wages (工钱) 为正确选项。“wage”通常用来指每周以现金方式付给体力工人的工资;而“gains”通常是“收益,获取的利益”;“fees”通常指“费用,酬金”,如为某种专业性服务付出的酬金;“payment”作为“为工作所付款项”解时通常作为不可数名词使用,而其复数形式“payments”通常用来指“偿付的钱”之意。

10. (b)

(b) workmates (同事,工友) 为正确选项,与文中 fellow dustmen 意义相符;而 (a) brothers (兄弟)、(c) companions (同伴,同伙——常用来指陪某人一同去某处或整日在一起消磨时间的人) 和 (d) comrades (同志,同事——尤指能同甘共苦的人),均不能准确表达文中“fellow dustmen”的含义。

11. (c)

(c) compensates for (补偿) 为正确选项,能够准确表达出文中“is well worth”的含义;而 (a) pays back (偿还,报答)、(b) rewards (报答,酬谢) 和 (d) values (评价,估价) 均不能用来表达文中“is well worth”的含义。

12. (a)

(a) addressed as (被称为),与文中所用动词“call”表达的意义相同,故为正确选项;而 (b) named (命名为)、(c) cried out (大声叫喊) 和 (d) shouted (叫喊) 均与文中意义不符,因而是错误选项。

## Lesson 5

### The facts

确切数字

1

写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Journalist immediately set out to get facts—  
instructions, editor
2. Did not send them at once
3. Editor getting impatient
4. Sent three faxes
5. Threatened to fire journalist
6. Last fax not answered
7. Article published—original form
8. Journalist—fax—week later
9. Imprisoned—counting steps—measuring height of  
wall

#### 摘要写作参考答案

*Though* the journalist immediately set out to get the facts after receiving instructions from his editor, he did not send them at once. *Meanwhile*, the editor was getting impatient, so he sent three faxes, finally *threatening* to fire the journalist.

*When* the last fax was unanswered, the article was published in its original form. The journalist sent the editor a fax a week

later *explaining* he had been imprisoned *after counting* the steps *and measuring* the height of the wall.

(80 words)

### 作文参考答案

The journalist counted the number of steps as he *wearily climbed up to the high wall surrounding the president's palace*. On arriving at the main gate, he *sat down to get his breath back*. He then *produced a tape measure* in order to measure the wall. While he was busy measuring the wall, a policeman *approached him and asked him what he was doing*. Though the journalist *explained he was a reporter and his editor had asked him to find out the exact height of the wall*, the policeman refused to believe him. He was arrested and sent to prison because the police thought that *he might be a spy or might even want to assassinate the president*. When the journalist *insisted he was innocent*, he made things worse for himself. This proved to the police that *the man certainly was guilty and deserved to stay in prison indefinitely*.

(149 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

*address*

*date*

Dear Jack,

Many congratulations on your recent marriage!

Quite by chance I happened to read about your wedding in our local newspaper and I was thrilled with the news. Your wife sounds really charming. I gather that you will both be

moving to our area, so we'll soon be neighbours. I hope you'll be very happy and I'll be able to see you soon.

I look forward to seeing you again and meeting your wife. My kindest regards to you both.

Yours sincerely,

*signature*

(79 words)

2

语法、词汇练习



词汇练习参考答案

journalist (1.3):	reporter
instructed (1.3):	ordered, commissioned
well-known (1.3):	famous
publish (1.6):	print, issue
surrounds (1.7):	encircles
fired (1.12):	sacked, dismissed
reluctantly (1.12):	unwillingly

关键句型练习答案

1. What's the name of the person who first sailed up *the Hudson River*?
2. I wonder if you could give me *some information* about train times.
3. Why don't we go to *the cinema* this evening?
4. Film-making in Hong Kong is an important *industry*.
5. I need *flour and milk* to make cakes.
6. When you're out, please get me *a newspaper*.

### 难点练习答案

1. Not only has he made this mistake before but he will make it again.
2. Only then did I realize what was happening.
3. Never will I trust him again.
4. Seldom do you find traffic wardens who are kind and helpful.

### 3 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

##### 1. (c)

文章第 1 段的最后一句 “The editor at once sent the journalist a fax instructing him to find out the exact number of steps and the height of the wall(编辑立即给那位记者发去传真,要求他核实一下台阶的确切数字和围墙的高度)”,说明了该编辑是由于不满意该记者所发稿件的内容,而让他去做具体的数字核实工作。因此 (c) he was dissatisfied with the factual content of the article (他对文章的事实性内容不满意)为正确选项;而 (a) he wanted an excuse to fire the journalist (他想找个理由解雇这个记者)、(b) he had not read the article beyond the first sentence (除头一句外,他并未读那篇文章)和 (d) he wanted to please the president of the new African republic (他想取悦那个新的非洲共和国的总统)均与文中内容意义不符。

##### 2. (b)

根据文中第 2 段最后一句 “However, he had at last been allowed to send a fax in which he ... (不过,他终于获准发

回了一份传真……)”可以看出,该记者之所以很长时间之后才能发回所需详情的传真,是因为不允许他用传真将所获得的信息发送回来,因此 (b) he had not been allowed to fax the information he had obtained (他未被允许传真回他所获信息) 是正确选项;而 (a) it took him a long time to count all the steps (数台阶用了他很长时间)、(c) he did not realize how soon the magazine would go to press (他并不知道该杂志多久就要付印) 和 (d) he had been arrested before he had time to obtain the facts (他还未来得及搞到具体数字就被逮捕了) 均与文中内容不符。这里应注意 (d) 之所以与文中内容不符,是因为该记者在遭逮捕之前已获得了确切数字。

### 3. (a)

选项 (a) 中的“must + 完成时结构”表达出对过去事件的肯定推测,用以说明该记者被逮捕的原因,故 (a) Because his activities must have appeared suspicious (因为他的举动肯定看起来很可疑) 为正确选项;而 (b) For having gone to extremes to provide unimportant facts (由于为提供不重要的事实而做得太过分了)、(c) For climbing the palace wall in order to measure its height (由于为了量总统府围墙的高度爬了总统府的围墙) 和 (d) Because the article was published in its original form (由于该文章以其初稿的形式发表了) 均与文中内容不符。此外,对 why 引导的问句通常以作为句子的主要信息内容的“because”来回答。

## Structure 结构

### 4. (h)

分词短语可用于表示句中的时间状语。一般式的分词短语常用来表示该分词动作与主句动词动作同时或几乎同

时发生;当分词动作与主句动词动作有明显的先后顺序时,通常需将该分词用完成式来表示,如文中“... the editor read the first sentence and then refused to publish it”中的“then”明确了两个动作的先后顺序,因此用分词短语表示时间状语时,应用其完成式。所以(b) Having read 为正确选项;而(a) Reading 是错误选项。就句子结构而言,(c) He read 为错误选项,该选项构成了两个完整的简单句形式,除标点、人称代词使用有误外,也不能准确说明文中所表明谓语的动词“refused”发生的时间;(d) Being read 选项的语态使用有误。在用分词短语作时间状语时,该分词的动作与主句谓语的动词的动作应为同一主语做出的动作,而在该选项中,分词短语“Being read”中“read”这一动作并非主语“editor”做出的动作。

5. (c)

只有(c) was about to go (to press) 这一选项能够表达出文中“(the magazine) would soon go to press(这本杂志即将付印)”这一含义,故为正确选项。“to be about to do ...”用来表示“即将或就要发生,而非长久的将来要发生的动作”,因此(c)为正确选项;而(a) was (to press) 中所用结构“to be to do ...”,虽可用于表示“按计划或安排而将要做的或打算要做的可近可远的事情”这一概念,但后面缺少表示“付印”的固定词组 go to press; (b) had gone (to press) 所用时态有误。用过去完成时态只能表示出“过去的过去”这一概念,即“在过去某一时刻或动作之前发生的动作”这一概念;(d) was due (to press) 中所用“to be due to do ...”可用来表示“按计划或到期应做……”之意,但与(a)一样,缺少了 go to press 这个词组,因此也不是正确的选项。

6. (d)

文中第 10 ~ 11 行中 “He sent the journalist two more faxes, but received no reply (他给记者先后发去两份传真, 但对方毫无反应)” 中的 “no reply” 相当于 “not any reply”, 是一种非限定用法, 即非特指的 “reply”, 因此 (d) a reply 为正确选项; 正因为如此, (a) the replies 和 (b) the reply 含特指意义的选项是错误的; 如文中那样 (c) no reply 这种否定形式应用于肯定句式之中表达否定内容, 而第 6 题中的 “... but did not receive ...” 结构本身已为否定句形式。

7. (b)

第 7 题中的连词 “unless (除非)” 引导一个条件状语从句, 其本身即含否定的含义, 相当于 “if not” (但语气要强), 因此 (b) replied 这一肯定形式为正确选项; 而 (a) was replied 的语态使用有误, 即 “reply” 是主语 “he” 做出的动作, 因此要使用主动语态形式; (c) would reply 的时态有误: 在条件状语从句中, 需使用一般时态, 即根据上下文, 使用一般现在时或一般过去时表示将来时; (d) did not reply 之所以有误, 如前所述, “unless” 连词本身含有否定意义, 使用双重否定而形成的肯定语义与文中所述意义不符。

8. (c)

本题涉及动词 “inform” 的使用方法。用动词 “inform” 表示 “通知, 告诉” 时, 需构成 “to inform somebody of something” 结构, 因此 (c) the editor of his arrest 为正确选项; 使用该动词不能像使用 “give” 动词那样, 构成诸如 “to give somebody something” 或 “to give something to somebody” 这样的双宾语结构, 因此 (a) his arrest to the editor 和 (b) the editor his arrest 是错误选项; 此外, 虽然

动词“inform”可以用于“to inform somebody that 从句”结构中（如文中那样），但在（d）the editor that his arrest had been 这一答案中，that 从句所表达的内容不成立。

### Vocabulary 词汇

#### 9. (c)

(c) public（公众，大众，读者）为正确选项；而（a）audience 虽然在非严谨使用中也可作“读者”解，但多用来指“听众、观众”；（b）lectures（演讲，讲课）显然与文中所用“readers”的意义不符；（d）common（普通，共同；公地）作名词使用时，通常不用来指人。

#### 10. (b)

(b) printed（被印刷/印制）为正确选项；而（a）pressing 用词有误。虽然“to go to press”为“付印，开印，出版”，但是短语中的 press 为名词，“press”作动词使用时无上述含义；在构成“主语 + 系动词 + 补语”结构时即把“pressing”视为形容词时，其含义为“紧迫的；热切的”；（c）typed（用打字机打出）表达不出“go to press”的含义；（d）impressed（被压印、盖印邮戳于；给……留下印象）用词不当。

#### 11. (d)

本题中“The poor man ...”中的“poor”作定语时，如文中那样，可表达“可怜的，倒霉的”之意，因此选项（d）unfortunate（不幸的，倒霉的）可以表达出题中“poor”的含义；而（a）poor 作主语补语时，通常表示“贫穷的，穷苦的”；（b）stupid（愚蠢的，笨的）和（c）innocent（清白的，无辜的）均不能用来表达出文中“poor”的含义。

#### 12. (d)

文章第 14~15 行“However, he had at last been allowed to send a fax ...（不过，他终于获准发回了一份传真

……)”中使用的“to be allowed to do . . .”表达出“被允许做……”之意,因此可以表达出此意的 (d) given permission (to send a fax) 为正确选项;而 (a) admitted 虽然可以被用来表达“被允许……”之意,但是其后需使用动词的-ing 形式;(b) let 虽然也可以用来表达此意,但是该词通常不用于被动语态结构中;(c) left 这里只能表达出“被留下来”之意,显然与句中意义不符。

# Lesson 6

## Smash-and-grab

### 砸橱窗抢劫

#### 1 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. Large car—entered—arcade—Piccadilly
2. Stopped outside jeweller's
3. Two thieves—out of car
4. Smashed windows—iron bars
5. Owner of shop—upstairs
6. Threw furniture—thieves
7. Hit one of thieves—heavy statue
8. Raid—three minutes
9. Thieves drove away
10. Owner ran after car
11. Threw ashtrays, vases
12. Thieves got away
13. Thousands of pounds—diamonds

##### 摘要写作参考答案

A large car entered an arcade near Piccadilly *and* stopped outside a jeweller's. Two thieves got out *and* smashed the shop window. The owner of the shop was upstairs at the time, *so* he threw furniture at the thieves *hitting* one of them with a heavy

statue. The raid lasted only three minutes *and* the thieves drove away. *Running* after them, the owner threw ashtrays and vases, *but* the thieves got away, *stealing* thousands of pounds worth of diamonds.

(79 words)

### 作文参考答案

#### They got away

Seeing the thieves' car join the traffic on Piccadilly, Mr. Taylor took a taxi and followed them. The taxi driver drove at full speed when Mr. Taylor told him what had happened.

There wasn't too much traffic at this time of the morning so there was a mad chase through the streets of London. For a short time, the thieves' car was on the wrong side of the road and hit another car, but it did not stop. Two policemen in a police car watched in amazement as the two vehicles went past, both breaking the speed limit. Lights on and horn blaring, the police car chased both the speeding cars. Mr. Taylor's taxi stopped when the traffic lights turned red. The thieves ignored the traffic lights and got away. Meanwhile, the police caught up with the taxi at the traffic lights and the taxi driver was charged with speeding. They refused to let the driver off, even though Mr. Taylor carefully explained the situation.

However, the police informed another police car of the chase and ten minutes later the thieves' car was found abandoned in a side street. The thieves had escaped on foot and disappeared among the crowd.

(200 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

You won't believe what happened to me on Tuesday morning!

I was walking down a busy street near Piccadilly when I saw a man smash the window of an antique shop and run off with an expensive vase. Other passers-by saw him, too, and we all chased the man down the street, shouting 'Stop! Thief! Stop! Thief!' We managed to catch the man, but unfortunately the vase got broken.

I'll tell you the full story when we meet next week.

(80 words)

## 2

## 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

expensive (1.1):	dear
almost (1.2):	nearly
assistants (1.4):	helpers (in a shop)
gazing (1.7):	looking
several (1.7):	a few, a number of
stayed (1.10):	remained
smashed (1.11):	broke to pieces

### 关键句型练习答案

A. See text.

B. 1. *Just as* Mr. Taylor was opening the door of his shop, two men appeared and asked for money.

2. Mr. Taylor *used to* own a shop in Hatton Gardens before

he moved to Piccadilly.

3. *While* I was waiting for a bus yesterday, a friend saw me and offered me a lift in his car.

### 难点练习参考答案

- |               |             |              |
|---------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. impolite   | 2. disagree | 3. illegible |
| 4. inaccurate | 5. unlocked | 6. irregular |

## 3

### 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

文中第 4~5 行 “Two of his assistants had been working busily since eight o'clock and had only just finished (他手下两名店员从早上 8 点就开始忙碌, 这时刚刚布置完毕)” 说明, 泰勒先生的店员 “刚布置完” 橱窗, 因此选项 (a) his two assistants were arranging jewellery in the window (他的两个店员正在陈列橱窗里的珠宝) 表明的时态是错误的; 文中第 7~8 行 “After gazing at the display for several minutes, Mr. Taylor went back into his shop (泰勒先生站在橱窗外凝神欣赏了几分钟就回到店里)” 说明, 当 “Mr. Taylor was admiring the new window display” 时, 他是在店外, 因此 (c) he was standing inside his shop (他正站在店内) 是错误的; 根据文中第 4~5 行所述, 表明泰勒的店员刚完成了他们的布置工作, 而非全天的工作, 因此 (d) his staff were finishing their work for the day (他的店员刚完成他们那天的工作) 是错误的; 根据文中 “for several minutes” 和 “suddenly” 等表明时间的副词 (短语) 的使用, 可以判断 (b) some thieves were on

their way to raid his shop (几个窃贼正在去偷袭泰勒先生商店的路上) 为正确选项。

2. (a)

选项 (a) as the thieves wanted to warn people out of their way (由于窃贼们想警告人们让开路) 为正确选项。连词 as 引导一个原因状语从句, 从逻辑上说明“那辆大轿车亮着前灯, 响着喇叭”的原因; 而在 (b) as a special signal to the assistant (作为向店员发出的信号) 中“as”为介词, 引导一个介词短语, 作方式状语, 从逻辑上讲不通; 在 (c) so the thieves could see where they were going (这样窃贼们就可以看清要去的地方) 中, 连词“so”引导一个目的状语, 根据上下文意义, 同样在逻辑上讲不通; (d) to break the early morning silence (以打破清晨的宁静) 为动词不定式短语, 作目的状语, 不能说明“大轿车亮着前灯, 响着喇叭”的目的。

3. (c)

根据文中所述, (c) it usually had a great deal of valuable jewellery on display (它通常总陈列着许多贵重的珠宝) 为正确选项; (a) it was early in the morning and not many shops were open (那正是清晨, 没有多少家商店开始营业)、(b) they did not expect Mr. Taylor and his staff to try and stop them (他们没有料到泰勒先生和他的店员会试图阻止他们) 和 (d) they had a very fast car to get away in (他们有一辆跑得很快的车, 可供逃跑时乘坐) 均不能从逻辑上说明“The thieves chose to raid Mr. Taylor's shop (这些窃贼选择偷袭泰勒先生的珠宝店)”的原因。

**Structure 结构**

4. (c)

本题有关形容词的词序和冠词的使用问题。就文中第

1~2 行 “The expensive shops in a famous arcade near Piccadilly were just opening(皮卡迪利大街附近的一条著名拱廊街上,几家高档商店刚刚开始营业)”,“arcade”为文中第一次提到,且为可数名词,需用不定冠词对其进行修饰。这样在本题选项中,(a) Piccadilly’s famous arcade 缺少不定冠词;(d) the famous arcade off Piccadilly 的定冠词使用不当,且介词“off”表示“离开”之意,与文中意义不符。当名词词组中既有形容词(如 famous),又有作定语使用的名词(如 Piccadilly)时,形容词应放在该作定语使用的名词之前,据此 (a) Piccadilly’s famous arcade 和 (b) a Piccadilly famous arcade 的形容词词序有误。因此,本题 (c) a famous Piccadilly arcade 为正确选项。

5. (b)

本题主要涉及时态的使用问题。在 “After gazing at the display for several minutes, Mr. Taylor went back into his shop” 中,动名词 “gazing at” 形式为动名词的一般式,通常表示一般性动作。此外,在表述两个紧接着发生的动作时,发生在另一个过去动作之前的动作通常用一般过去式表达即可,尤其在含有已明确表示出时间顺序的连词或介词 before 和 after 的句子之中,因此本题 (b) gazed at 为正确选项;而 (a) was gazing at (表示过去正在进行的动作)、(c) had gazed at (表示在过去某一时刻或某一动作发生之前已在做的动作) 和 (d) had been gazing at (表示在过去某一时刻或某一动作发生之前已在做但仍持续在做的动作),就上述分析来看均不妥。

6. (a)

(a) of 为正确选项。文中第 11 行 “... smashed the window of the shop with iron bars (……用铁棒把商店橱窗玻璃砸碎)” 中的 “iron bars (铁棒)” 能看出制成该棒的

原材料,因此应使用“(to be) made of ...”这一结构形式表达;而(b) from 所构成的“(to be) made from ...”结构,虽然也表示出“由……原材料制成”的含义,但通常当制成品看不出所使用的原材料时才使用;(c) by 所构成的“(to be) made by ...”为被动语态结构,介词后应为做出“made”这一动作的执行者;(d) with 构成的“(to be) made with ...”往往含有“和……材料一起制成的”这一含义。因此(b)、(c)和(d)均为错误选项。

7. (a)

本题有关动词“begin”的使用方法问题。当表示“开始做……”时,“begin”通常可用于两种结构形式之中。一种如文中第12行那样,构成“to begin doing ...”结构,而另一种为“to begin to do ...”结构。就语义而言,两者没有太大的差别。据此,(a) to throw 为正确选项;而(b) by throwing、(c) and threw 和(d) the throwing of,虽然就语义而言看似成立,但是不符合动词“begin”的使用方法。

8. (d)

本题是“had”引出的非真实性条件状语从句,以过去一件事为假定条件,其主句部分的谓语动词需使用“would + 动词现在完成时形式”,因此(d) would have felt 为正确选项;而(a) would feel 这一结构用于对现在一件事情的非真实性条件句中,而(b) had been feeling (过去完成进行时)和(c) had felt (过去完成时)均未将本句视为过去非真实性条件状语从句,因此(a)、(b)和(c)均为错误选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (a)

题中“To make the car ‘roar down the arcade’ (要使那辆轿车‘呼啸冲进拱廊’)”使用了动词不定式短语作目的状

语,其后的“must have + 动词的过去分词”形式,用以表示对过去一件事情的肯定推测。(a) accelerated (加速)为正确选项,即“该司机肯定要给轿车加速”;而(b) sped (飞快前进,飞奔)作不及物动词使用,即“该司机肯定飞快前进”,与前提“要使那辆轿车‘呼啸冲进拱廊’”在逻辑上不符,用“speed”一词表示“加速”意义时,需构成“speed up”;(c) run (快速前进)作不及物动词使用,就语义而言,与所给前提在逻辑上不符;(d) reversed (倒退),语义讲不通。

10. (a)

(a) covered with 为正确选项,同其上下文构成独立主格结构。“to cover with ...”为“用……蒙着,用……遮盖着”之意;(b) overdressed with 表示“过多或过于讲究地穿着”之意;(c) overlooked by (被……所忽略/宽容);(c) made up in(穿……改变相貌)。就语义而言,(b)、(c)和(d)均为错误选项。

11. (b)

文中第11~12行“While this was going on, Mr. Taylor ... (这一切发生时,泰勒先生……)”中,“while”引导一个时间状语从句,表示“这一切发生时,泰勒先生……”,能够准确表达出此意义的是选项(b) Meanwhile (与此同时),故为正确选项。而(a) For the time being (眼下,暂时)、(c) As it happened (碰巧,偶然)和(d) For a while (一会儿)均不能用来表达文中所要表达的含义。

12. (c)

文中第12~13行“Chairs and tables went flying into the arcade (椅子、桌子飞落到拱廊街上)”,根据上下文可以清楚看出桌椅是被扔出。因此,用被动语态形式表示出的(c) hurled (掷,扔)为正确选项;而用被动语态形式表

示出的 (a) flown (乘运)、(b) emptied (搬, 移) 和 (d) projected (发射, 喷射) 等所表达的基本词义均不能用来表示出文中所表达的含义, 因此为错误选项。

# Lesson 7

## Mutilated ladies

### 残钞鉴别组

#### 1 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. John Butlin—successful furniture business
2. After very good day—put wallet—£ 3,000 into microwave oven
3. He and fiancée Jane—horse-riding
4. Got home—Jane cooked dinner—microwave oven
5. Dismayed—find—money destroyed
6. John—bank manager
7. Bank manager—remains to—Mutilated Ladies
8. Identified remains—returned the money

##### 摘要写作参考答案

John Butlin runs a successful furniture business *and* after a very good day, he put his wallet containing £ 3,000 into the microwave oven for safekeeping. *Then* he and his fiancée, Jane, went horseriding, *after which* Jane cooked their dinner in the microwave oven *only to* find to their dismay that the money had been destroyed. John went to see his bank manager *who* sent the remains to the Mutilated Ladies department *who* identified the remains and returned the money.

(79 words)

### 作文参考答案

Jane opened the oven door and saw that her meal was *ready to serve*. She took the food out of the oven and *in doing so, noticed something strange inside the oven which she couldn't recognize*. So she went to find John and told him about it. In dismay, John quickly explained that he had put his wallet containing the day's takings into the oven for safekeeping. They both rushed to the oven and saw that the money had been destroyed. At first, they didn't know what to do. John wanted to *throw the money away*, but Jane wouldn't let him. 'It's best not to *disturb the wallet*,' Jane said. 'You can see all the money is there, even if it has been destroyed.' Jane told John to go and see his bank manager for advice, so the next day John took the wallet and the ashes to the bank.

(150 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

Thank you again for your wonderful hospitality!

It was a real pleasure to see you again after such a long time. I'll never forget your kindness during my stay. I particularly enjoyed our visit to the local market and our long walks in the countryside. I also enjoyed your company and the excellent food and wine. You're a perfect host!

I hope you will be able to visit me before long and look forward to seeing you soon.

(78 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

happened (1.1):	occurred
remembered (1.2):	recalled
fortunately (1.6):	luckily
concerns (1.9):	is about
dismay (1.12):	sadness
the remains (1.13):	what was left
department (1.14):	section

### 关键句型练习答案

A. See text.

- B. 1. Firemen *rescued* the little boy who had climbed a tree and couldn't get down.
2. Jane *went* to find John and told him what had happened.
3. Jane *cooked* the next meal in an ordinary oven after her experience with the microwave.
4. The bank manager *sent* the remains of John's wallet to Newcastle.
5. The ladies at the bank *examined* the remains and found they could be identified.
6. The bank *paid* John all his money, so he was very pleased.

### 难点练习答案

- |             |              |          |
|-------------|--------------|----------|
| 1. painless | 2. beautiful | 3. daily |
| 4. childish | 5. athletic  |          |

### 3 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

##### 1. (b)

文中第 6~8 行 "... the bank of England has a team called Mutilated Ladies which deals with claims from people who fed their money to a machine or to their dog (……值得庆幸的是英国银行有一个残钞鉴别组,负责处理那些把钱塞进机器或塞给狗的人提出的索赔要求)"清楚说明被称之为"Mutilated Ladies"组的工作。因此 (b) their job is to identify pictures of the Queen on mutilated bank notes (他们的工作是鉴别残钞上的女王头像),为正确选项;而 (a) their job involves mutilating bank notes (他们的工作是有关弄残纸币)与文中表达的意义不符、(c) ladies are always mutilating bank notes by accident in the wash (妇女们总是在洗衣时不小心弄残纸币)和 (d) only ladies have the patience for this difficult job (只有妇女们才有耐心做这种难差使),均将该组名称"Mutilated Ladies"误解为做某事的具体人,故为错误选项。

##### 2. (d)

根据对文章题目的注释及第 15~16 行 "So long as there's something to identify, we will give people their money back (只要有东西可供识别,我们会把钱还给人家的)",可以确定 (d) have damaged but identifiable bank notes (毁坏了但仍可辨识的纸币)为正确选项;而 (a) feed their money to the dog (把他们的钱喂了狗)、(b) try to wash large bank notes (想洗大额纸币)和 (c) mutilate bank notes on purpose (有意想毁坏纸币)均与文中所表

示的意义不符。

3. (b)

根据文中第 15 ~ 16 “So long as there’s something to identify, we will give people their money back (只要有东西可供识别, 我们会把钱还给人家的)”可以看出, (b) there is enough evidence to prove your claim (有足够的证据证明你的索赔要求)为正确选项, 即只要有可识别的东西(作为证据), 即可拿回你的钱。因此能否取回钱的条件是提供足够可用来识别的证据; 而就文中所述, (a) you go to Newcastle and see the Mutilated Ladies (你去纽卡斯尔见残钞鉴别组)、(c) your bank manager agrees to help you (银行经理同意帮助你)和 (d) you have done this sort of thing before (你以前曾干过这类事情)均不可能作为取回钱的基本条件。

**Structure 结构**

4. (a)

本题有关可数名词单复数的使用问题。在非特指情况下, 单数可数名词前通常需使用不定冠词 a 或 an, 而用复数时其后需加“-s”构成。题中“note”为可数名词, 据此, 本题 (a) a large note 为正确选项; 而 (b) large bank note 前少了不定冠词“a”; (c) any large bank note 的“note”一词应为“notes”; (d) some large bank note 同 (c)。此外, 就句子结构而言, 由于句子为疑问句, 表示“一些”概念的词“some”多用“any”形式。

5. (c)

本题有关一般现在时态的使用问题。文中第 4 ~ 5 行 “People who live in Britain needn’t despair ... (在英国犯这种错误时, 不必感到绝望……)”表示“经常和习惯性动作”, 并无强调含义。因此, 本题 (c) live 为正确选项; 而

(a) do live 为强调式用法, 语气使用有误; (b) are living 为现在正在进行时, 只有在表示“现在正在进行的动作”概念时使用; (d) were living 为过去正在进行时, 只有在表示“过去正在进行的动作”概念时使用, 因此 (c)、(b) 和 (d) 均为错误选项。

6. (b)

本题有关名词所属格结构的使用问题。当该名词为人时, 其所属格的构成通常为在该名词后加“-’s”构成, 如: the teacher’s notebooks (老师的笔记本); 当该名词为物时, 其所属格形式通常为“被修饰词 + of + 该名词”形式, 如: the desks and chairs of the classroom (教室的桌椅)。因此, (b) Jane Butlin’s fiancé 为正确选项; 而 (a) fiancé of Jane Butlin 使用不当。此外, 在使用“... of ...”这一结构时, 被修饰词 (即介词 of 前的词) 前通常需使用冠词; (c) Jane Butlin who’s fiancé 和 (d) Jane Butlin whose fiancé 的语义和结构均有误。就语义而言, John 并非 Jane Butlin; 就结构而言, Jane Butlin 后所用的定语从句的指代关系有误或所用定语从句缺少成分 (如 whose fiancé 中无谓语动词), 故均为错误选项。

7. (c)

本题有关句子的主语和谓语动词“contain”的使用问题。就本题结构而言, 全句缺少谓语动词。(a) containing 用于该句时, 只能作为现在分词, 同其后内容构成分词短语, 作定语来修饰主语“The wallet”, 全句仍无谓语动词; (b) was containing 为过去正在进行时结构, 虽然使全句有了谓语动词, 但“contain”一词通常不能用于进行时态, 因此本选项所用时态有误; (d) content (使满意) 无论用词和时态均有误。因此, 本题 (c) contained 为正确选项。

8. (a)

本题有关作目的状语的动词不定式短语和动词“keep (保存, 保留)”的使用方法。(a) to keep it safe 为正确选项。此动词不定式在句中作目的状语。此外, 动词“keep”作“保管, 保存”使用时为及物动词, 用其表示文中之意时, 需使用“to keep + 宾语 + 宾语补语”结构;(b) for keeping safe 中的“keeping”为动名词, 但仍保留其原动词的特征, 所以这样使用时, “keeping”后仍需使用宾语“it”。不使用宾语 it, 只能表达出“约翰把钱夹放进微波炉中以保证(自己)安全”之意;(c) for the safety 含类似(b)的含义, 可以构成“for its safety”或“for the safety of it”; (d) to be safe keeping 结构错误。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (a)

本题有关“charge”的使用问题。用其表示“主管, 负责”之意时, 通常构成“in charge of ...”结构, 介词 of 后常使用表示某个单位、部门或某项工作等的名词, 因此 (a) is in charge of 为正确选项; 构成(b) in the charge of ... (即在 charge 前使用定冠词 the) 后, 含有被动含义, 即表示“由……主管/负责”之意, 其主语通常为表示某个单位、部门或某项工作等的名词, 本题主语为“He”, 因此是错误选项;(c) charges 是将 charge 作动词用, 但只能将其作及物动词, 表示“使承担责任/任务”等, 即只有在其后需跟随表明人的名词或表示人的反身代词时才能这样使用, 因此, 本选项是错误的;(d) bears the charge of ... 表示“承担……的费用”之意, 与原意不符。

10. (d)

文中“... when they found a beautifully-cooked wallet and notes turned to ash!”所用的“turn to/into”为短语动词, 多

用来表示“变成”，即“become”的意思，并且通常作为系动词词组看待，因此 (d) become 为正确选项；仅使用 (a) turned 不能表示此意义，或如文中那样，将其用在“turned to/into”或构成“had been turned to/into”才可成立；在 (b) grown 中，“grow”一词作不及物动词和系动词使用时，通常表示出“体积……的增长”和用来表示“生物的成长/长大”之意，因此与文中意义不符；(c) made 语态与结构有误。用动词“make”表示时，应构成被动语态的“been made into”这一结构形式。

11. (b)

(b) dispatched 为正确选项。“dispatch”一词通常用于正式场合，“to dispatch something to some place/somebody”含“(为一特定目的)将某物送至某地或某人”之意；在 (a) conveyed 中，动词“convey”通常也用于较正式场合，“to convey something to some place”含“(用某种运载工具或手段)将某物送至某地”之意。如“to convey something to somebody”时，通常含“将某件事转述/传达给某人”之意；在 (c) carried 中，动词“carry”通常含“随身携带”之意，且不说明固定方向。在表达“把某物带给某人”时，通常不使用“to carry something to somebody”这样的表达形式，而用其他动词如“take”来表示；在 (d) fetched 中，动词“fetch”含“(到它处将某物)取来”之意，因此在表达“给某人取回某物”这一概念时，通常表达为“to fetch something for somebody”这一表达形式。

12. (b)

由于本句后半部分，即“there is something to identify”为一个句子，因此其前所用的这一个词应为能起到连词作用的词。在本题的4个选项中，只有 (b) provided 可以直接作连词，表示“除非，如果”之意，因此为正确选项；而在

(a) depending 中,“depend”需同介词“on/upon”连用后再加名词、动名词、代词等,其后为句子时,还需根据句子的意义,在“depend on”后使用相应的关系代词、副词,如: What kind of a house we can offer you depends on what you are willing to pay. (我们能提供什么样的房子要看你愿意出什么样的价钱。)将“depend”变为“depending”形式时,其后的搭配方式不变;“suppose”和“supposing”形式均可作连词,但 (c) supposed 本身不能这样使用; (d) allowing 不能作连词使用,其后为一个句子时可以构成“to allow that ...”结构,表示“承认(某件事情为事实)”之意。

## Lesson 8

### A famous monastery

#### 著名的修道院

#### 1 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. St. Bernard's Pass—visited—thousands of people—  
summer
2. People cross Pass in cars
3. Dogs—special enclosure—so many people about
4. Temperature in winter  $-30^{\circ}$
5. Few visitors
6. Monks prefer winter season
7. Dogs free to wander—outside enclosure
8. Young skiers regularly visit monastery in winter
9. Christmas and Easter
10. Warmly welcomed

##### 摘要写作参考答案

The St. Bernard's Pass is visited by thousands of people in summer, *who* cross the Pass in cars. *Because* there are so many people about, the dogs are kept in a special enclosure. As the temperature in winter falls to  $-30^{\circ}$ , there are few visitors, so the monks prefer this season. The dogs are *also* free to wander outside their enclosure. Parties of young skiers

regularly visit the monastery in winter, *during* Christmas and Easter *when* they are warmly welcomed.

(80 words)

### 作文参考答案

#### Rescue

One very cold morning, a monk took two St. Bernard's dogs out for exercise. He immediately noticed that the dogs were very restless. Suspecting a traveller might be in difficulty, the monk returned to the monastery to organize a search party.

The two dogs led four monks through the snow. Two of the monks pulled a sledge behind them, in case they needed it. There had been very high winds the previous night, but now everything was still and visibility was bad because there was a heavy fog. Moreover, the temperature had fallen to  $-20^{\circ}$ . The dogs led the monks towards the Pass and as the monks got near, they heard cries in the distance. The dogs soon found a man who was trapped under the snow and immediately dragged him out. The man was alive, but frozen stiff. The monks strapped him to the sledge and took him back to the monastery.

The man was unconscious, but he soon recovered in the warm atmosphere of the monastery where he was given plenty of hot drinks and food. When the traveller was able to speak, the monks listened with interest as he told them what had happened the previous night.

(200 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

I hear you'll be taking a holiday in the Alps, which I'm

sure you'll enjoy!

I went there last year and stayed in the Berg Hotel high in the mountains not far from Zermatt. The hotel has fine views across the valley and I warmly recommend it. You'll love the healthy mountain air and enjoy every comfort at moderate prices. I'm going there again this year.

I look forward to hearing all about your holiday when you get back.

(79 words)

2

## 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

famous (1.2):

well-known

founded (1.3):

established

lies (1.4):

is

now that (1.7):

since, because

rashly attempt (11.9-10):

unthinkingly try

quite (1.13):

entirely

drops (1.13):

falls

### 关键句型练习答案

A. See text.

B. 1. I first met Harry fourteen years *ago*.

2. I once stayed in Zurich *for six months* when I was a student.

3. *When* I got home, I found an urgent message on my answering machine.

4. I haven't seen Harry *since* 1988.

### 难点练习答案

1. *whatever*

2. *Whenever*

3. *Whoever*

3

### 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

文中相关的论述均与 St. Bernard dogs 有关。“St. Bernard dogs have saved the lives of travellers crossing the dangerous Pass (圣伯纳德修道院驯养的狗拯救了许多翻越这道山口的旅游者的生命)”和“... but each year, the dogs are still sent out into the snow whenever a traveller is in difficulty (……但每年,还要派狗到雪地里去帮助那些遇到困难旅游者)”,说明选项 (c) being able to search people out who have been trapped in the snow (能够发现被陷在雪中的人们) 为正确选项;从文中第 12 行中“As there are so many people about, the dogs have to be kept in a special enclosure (由于来人太多,狗被关在专门的围栏里)”,可以看出 (a) being a great summer tourist attraction (是夏季极吸引游客的景致) 是错误选项; (b) having saved people's lives before the new tunnel was built (在建成这条新隧道前已救过人的生命) 虽然是事实,但是论述得并不完全,因为“... but each year, the dogs are still sent out into the snow whenever a traveller is in difficulty”则说明了“the new tunnel has been built”之后的事实。根据文中所述,这两个论述放在一起才能表述完全。虽然第 14~15 行“The dogs have greater freedom,

too, for they are allowed to wander outside their enclosure (狗也比较自由, 被放出围栏, 四处溜达)”有关于选项 (d) 的论述, 但那并非 “St. Bernard dogs are best known” 的原因。

2. (c)

文中第 7~8 行 “Now that a tunnel has been built through the mountains, the Pass is less dangerous (尽管修通了隧道, 但仍有一些人想冒险徒步跨越圣伯纳德山口)”, 说明 (c) It provides a fast and safe communication across the Swiss-Italian border (它为穿越瑞士和意大利边境提供了快捷和安全的交通方式) 为正确选项; 而 (a) It prevents people from endangering their lives by climbing the Pass (它避免了人们冒着生命危险攀越山口) 对新修通隧道的 “advantage” 的论述不完全, 未论及所带来的 “便捷”; 作者仅就该 monastery 作一客观的描述, 而并未对新修通隧道的 “advantage” 作主观上的评价, 而 (b) It brings thousands of tourists to the monastery each summer (它每年夏季为这一修道院吸引来成千上万的游客) 和 (d) It brings the St. Bernard monks into greater contact with the world (它使圣伯纳德的修道士们同世界有了更广泛的联系) 则含有主观评价意义, 如就 St. Bernard monks 而言, 或许他们并不将 (b) 和 (d) 视为 advantage, 文中第 14 行 “The monks prefer winter to summer for they have more privacy (修道士们喜欢冬天, 而不太喜欢夏天, 因为冬天他们可以更多地过上无人打扰的生活)” 即为证明。

3. (d)

文中第 14 行 “The monks prefer winter to summer for they have more privacy (修道士们喜欢冬天, 而不太喜欢夏天, 因为冬天, 他们可以更多地过上无人打扰的生

活)”,说明 (d) The monks can pursue their occupation relatively undisturbed (修道士们能够在相对不受打搅的情况下干自己的事情) 为正确选项;而 (a) The great number of visitors must come to the monastery on skis (大量的来访者们肯定来修道院滑雪)、(b) The dogs are free to save the lives of people lost in the snow (这些狗可以随时拯救陷进雪里的人们) 和 (c) The monks are more welcoming to their visitors (修道士们更受来访者的欢迎) 均与文中第 2 段所述内容不符。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (d)

形容词同表示度量的词连用时,需将该形容词置于表示度量的名词之后,因此 (d) 2,473 metres high 为正确选项;在 be 动词后使用“of + 名词”结构时,通常该名词需为表示“特征”的名词,如: The meeting is of great importance (= very important). (这个会议极为重要。) 因为 (a) of 2,473 metres 中的“2,473 metres”并非表示特征的名词,因此为错误选项;在表达某物的高度、长度等时,通常将表示该具体高度或长度的词用于 be 动词之后即可,其前不用介词,因此 (b) at 2,473 metres high 为错误选项;如上文对 (d) 正确选项的解释, (c) high 2,473 metres high 的位置使用有误。

#### 5. (a)

通常“形容词 + enough + 动词不定式”结构表示“太……以至于……”概念,因此 (a) rash enough 为正确选项;“so + 形容词 + as to ...”或“so + 形容词 + that 从句”结构形式可用来表达“太……以至于……”概念,因此 (b) so rash 为错误选项;“too + 形容词 + 动词不定式”结构形式用来表达“太……以至于不能……”概念,显然与文中第

9~10行所表达的意义不符;不能使用“very + 形容词 + 动词不定式”结构表达上述意义,因此(d) very rash 为错误选项。

6. (a)

(a) With 为正确选项。由介词“with”引导的短语在句子中起到原因状语的作用,表示“由于,因为”之意;  
(b) Being和(d) Having 均为分词。虽然分词短语可被用来作表示原因的状语,但该分词的逻辑主语需与句中的主语相一致,即为同一主语。显而易见,在本题中,无论是使用(b) Being 还是使用(d) Having 构成的原因状语,其逻辑主语均与句子中的主语“the dogs”不一致,不能说明是指主语“the dogs”所处的状态或所做出的动作;  
(c) Because为连词,用来引导原因状语从句,即其后必须为一完整的句子形式,而“Because so many people about”并非完整的从句形式,从句中缺少动词,因此为错误选项。

7. (c)

本题有关动词“let”的使用方法。用动词“let”表示“让某人做某事”这一概念时,用“to let somebody do something”形式,即在其宾语后需使用“不带to的动词不定式”作宾语补语。因此,本题(c) them wander 为正确选项,而其他3项均为错误选项。

8. (c)

本题是有关时态和动词“visit”的使用。首先,就文中第15~16行而言,全句为一般现在时的句子。这样,就时态而言,可以不考虑(b) are visiting at 和(d) are visiting 这两个现在进行时的结构形式;其次,动词“visit”为及物动词,其后应直接跟随宾语,因此(c) visit 为正确选项;而(a) visit to 混淆了“visit”作为动词和名词的用法。“visit”

为名词时,其后通常需用介词 to 来表示,如:He paid a visit to that country last year.(去年他访问了那个国家。)

### Vocabulary 词汇

#### 9. (b)

本题有关介词的用法。就文中第 1 句“The Great St. Bernard Pass connects Switzerland to Italy (圣伯纳德大山口连接着瑞士与意大利)”中的“to connect ... to ...”表示“把……同……连接在一起”之意。因此,就此而言,(b) between (在……两者之间)为正确选项;而(a) within(在……之内)、(c) about (在……周围)和 along (沿着)这 3 个选项均不能正确表达出文中所表述的圣伯纳德山口的地理位置。

#### 10. (a)

本题有关连词的使用。进行本题选项时,必须考虑到对文中有关句子的理解。文中“... the dogs are still sent out into the snow whenever a traveller is in difficulty (……还要派狗到雪地里去帮助那些遇到困难的旅游者)”,以连词 whenever 连接主句与从句。在此 4 个选项中,能够最准确表达出连词“whenever”含义的(a) if ever (只要,一旦)为正确选项,这里用来表示一般发生的情况。“if ever”为 if 的强调形式,用于指发生事情的结果或后果;而(b) in case (如果,万一)这一连词通常用来指将来可能出现的条件、情况或应预防的事情,比较:You should insure your house in case there's a fire.(你应当给房子保险,以防发生火灾。)You should telephone 999 if there's a fire.(如果失火,你应当拨打 999。)在上述比较中,用“in case”表达出“在失火前给房子上保险”;而用“if”则表达出“在失火后挂电话”之意;(c) all the time (经常,始终)为副词短语,不能作连词使用,因此为错误选项;

(d) while用于引导时间状语,表示主句与从句中两个动作同时进行,而句子中的 whenever 则用来引导条件状语从句,表示所给定的条件。

11. (d)

就文中 "... for it is visited by thousands of people who cross the Pass in cars (……因为有成千上万的人驾车通过山口)",表明为“驾车通过山口”,因此 (d) drive (驾车) 为正确选项;而 (a) trip 作不及物动词使用时可以表示“(较近距离)旅行”之意,其后跟宾语时通常需与 to 连用,而“to trip over”常用来表示“绊倒;犯错误”之意;(b) voyage 用来指“航海;航空旅行”;(c) conduct 可用来表示“通至……”之意,与句中意义完全不符。

12. (c)

文中 "... for they are allowed to wander outside their enclosure (……被放出围栏,四处溜达)”的“wander”一词为“漫步,溜达”之意,因此 (c) roam (漫步,游逛) 为正确选项;而 (a) graze (吃草)、(b) drift (漂流) 和 (d) wonder (感到惊异) 均为错误选项。

# Lesson 9

## Flying cats

### 飞猫

#### 1 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. New York Animal Medical Centre—132 cats
2. All fallen off high buildings
3. Eight died—shock or injuries
4. Sabrina—32 storeys—broken tooth
5. When falling at speeds—60 miles—stretch—legs
6. Increases—air-resistance—reduces shock of impact—ground

##### 摘要写作参考答案

The New York Animal Medical Centre recently made a study of 132 cats. All these cats had one thing in common: they had fallen off high buildings, *yet* only eight of them had died from shock or injuries. One cat, Sabrina, had fallen 32 storeys *but* only suffered from a broken tooth. *When* falling at speeds up to 60 miles per hour, cats stretch their legs *which* increases their air-resistance and reduces the shock of impact on hitting the ground.

(80 words)

### 作文参考答案

Human beings like to keep dogs and *cats*. Dogs are *submissive and faithful to their masters*, but cats like to *be independent*. Cats are especially lovable when they are still kittens. As kittens they *like to play by chasing anything that moves*. That's how they learn to *hunt mice, birds, insects and other small creatures*. A lot of people keep cats so they *can have a pet*. As kittens grow into cats, they like to *stay indoors*. They like regular meals and enjoy *sleeping in front of a nice fire*. However, they also *like going out*. During the day time and at night they like to *go hunting*. Sometimes during the night *they have fights with other cats*. Cats are very clean animals. You often see them *washing themselves*. Human beings are *fascinated by their behaviour because cats are domestic animals, while at the same time they enjoy their independence*.

(150 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

I'm afraid I have to report a little accident: my baby tore some of the pages from the book you kindly lent me.

I am very sorry that this happened. I had left the book on a low table, but the baby got hold of it and tore several pages. However, I was able to buy another copy and I'm sending it to you by separate post. Please let me know when it arrives.

My kindest regards to you all.

(80 words)

## 词汇练习参考答案

affectionate (1.2):	loving
as a result (1.4):	consequently
remain (1.5):	continue to be
there is not shortage of (11.11-12):	there are plenty of
behave (1.13):	act
injure (1.14):	harm
increases (1.16):	raises
reduces (1.16):	cuts down

## 关键句型练习答案

A. See text.

B. See text.

## 难点练习答案

1. so      2. such      3. such an      4. so      5. such a

## Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

就文中“endlessly (总能, 不断地)”一词的使用和文中第2~3行“... but they lead mysterious lives of their own ... (……它们又有自己神秘的生活方式……)”, 说明猫在多方面引起人们的兴趣, 而其原因是“它们有其自己神秘的生活方式”, 即由于人们缺少对其的认识所产生的“神秘感”, 引起人们对其的兴趣, 这样 (a) we feel there is

a good deal we do not know about their lives (我们感到我们对其生活知之甚少) 是 “We find cats endlessly fascinating (我们发现猫总能引起人们兴趣)” 的原因, 因此为正确选项; 而 (b) we believe that cats have nine lives (我们相信猫有 9 条命), 仅是引起人们对猫感兴趣的许多原因中的一个原因, 作为“猫总引起人们兴趣”的原因是不全面的; (c) they are different from dogs and horses (它们与狗、马不同)。就文中意义而言, 其不同表现在对人“顺从”与否这一点上, 可视为猫的特征之一, 但并非引起人们兴趣的原因; (d) they can reach a speed of 60 miles an hour while falling (跌落中, 它们可达到每小时 60 英里的速度), 所陈述的是一个事实, 并不能作为引起人们兴趣的原因。

2. (d)

文中第 10~11 行 “... they had fallen off high buildings, yet only eight of them died from shock or injuries (……它们都曾从高层建筑上摔下来过, 但只有其中的 8 只猫死于震荡或跌伤)”, 表明了“最近在纽约对 132 只猫进行研究”后得出的结论是 (就比例而言) (d) that cats falling from great heights are seldom killed (从高处跌落下的猫极少死亡), 因此为正确选项; 而 (a) that it is true that cats have nine lives (猫真的有 9 条命)、(b) that cats are related to flying squirrels (猫与飞行中的松鼠有亲缘关系) 和 (c) they are different from dogs and horses (它们与狗、马不同) 并非最近对 132 只猫研究之后的结论, 因此均为错误选项。

3. (a)

文中第 13~14 行告诉我们猫从高处跌落而不死主要是因为 (a) the further they fall, the less likely they are to

injure themselves (它们跌落的距离越长,就越不会伤害自己)。而 (b) a cat's ability to survive is based on fact (猫的逃生能力建立在事实的基础上),此点并不能作为“猫从高处跌落而不死”的原因。(c) a falling cat relaxes its legs and so increased its air-resistance (正在跌落的猫放松四肢并以此增加其空气阻力)并不完全。文中第 15 行“... falling cats have time to relax (……猫有时间放松自己)”,这里指全身的放松,而非仅仅指“四肢的放松”。(d) they are unlikely to exceed a speed of about 60 miles an hour (它们不可能超过每小时大约 60 英里的速度)与文中意义不符:文中第 14~15 行“In a long drop, they reach speeds of 60 miles an hour and more (在长长的跌落过程中,它们可以达到每小时 60 英里甚至更快的速度)”,因此不能作为正确选项。

#### Structure 结构

##### 4. (c)

(c) for 为正确选项。用“fascination”表达“对……有吸引力”这一概念时,通常构成“to have a fascination for ...”这一结构,故 (a) with、(b) to 和 (c) at 均为错误选项。

##### 5. (b)

文中第 3 行“They never become submissive like dogs and horses (它们从不像狗和马一样变得那么顺从)”中的“like”为介词,表示“像……一样”之意。这样,在 (b) in the way that dogs and horses do 中,“in the way that ...”表示“以……方式,像……那样”之意,因此为正确选项;而在 (a) as dogs and horses 中,“as”作“像……一样”解时只能作连词,其后应为一个句子;在 (c) as far as dogs and horses 中,“as far as”也为连词,用来引导限制性状语从句,表示“就……而论”;(d) as for dogs and horses 中的“as

for”虽为短语介词,但表示“就……而论”之意,故均为错误选项。

6. (d)

本题有关先行词“it”作形式主语的使用方法。(d) It is 为正确选项。题中“that cats have nine lives”作句子的主语,即本句可构成“That cats have nine lives is popularly believed”这样的句子结构形式。为避免句子显得头重尾轻,通常将此类句子的主语置于句尾,以作形式主语的先行词“it”取代它的位置,因而构成“It is popularly believed that ...”这样的结构形式。这样,(a) There is、(b) Is 和 (c) That is 均为错误选项。

7. (b)

“because of ”短语介词表示“因为,由于”之意,“the number of ...”为“……的数量”之意,因此 (b) of the number of 为正确选项;由于“high-rise buildings”为复数,这样应使用“there are plenty of ”而非 (a) there is plenty of。(c) it has plenty 后缺少介词 of。用 plenty 表达“许多,大量的”意义时,应构成“plenty of”结构形式;(d) the number 之所以为错误选项是因为在单独使用“because”时,它为连词,引导原因状语从句,此外用“number”表示“……的数量”时,应构成“the number of”这样的结构形式。

8. (a)

(a) a study (一项/次研究) 为正确选项。在“there was”结构的句子中作主语。(b) studied 和 (d) studying 均为错误选项,无论使用 (b) 还是 (d),句中均无主语 (there 为副词,在句中不能作主语);(c) some studies 为“a study”的复数形式,虽可作句子的主语,但“there be”结构需用复数形式“there were”。

## Vocabulary 词汇

### 9. (b)

文中“Most cats remain suspicious of humans all their lives (在它们的一生中,大多数猫都对人存有戒心)”中的“all their lives”表示“在它们的一生中”之意。用(b) throughout构成的“throughout their lives (在它们整个一生中)”,可以完整地表达出文中“all their lives”的含义,因此(b)为正确选项;用(c) through不能完全表达出句中“all their lives”的语气,需使用其他词共同表达出句中的语气(如 through the whole of their lives);同样,选项(a) during也没有表达出这种强调的意思;而(d) while为连词,用于引导时间状语从句。

### 10. (c)

句中第7行中的“apparently”为“显然”之意。用(c) It would seem可表明其意义,故为正确选项;而(c) As matter of fact(事实上)、(b) In the event(结果)和(d) Surprisingly enough(令人十分吃惊地)均与句中“apparently”所要表达的意义不符,因此均为错误选项。

### 11. (c)

文中第7~8行“A cat's ability to survive falls is based on fact (猫在跌落时能够大难不死是有事实作为依据的)”中的“to be based on ...”为“以……为基础/依据”之意,可用“to be supported by ... (以……来支持)”表达出此含义,因此(c) supported为正确选项;而(a) explained(被说明)、(b) tested(被检验)和(d) born(经受)均不能表达出“to be based on ...”的含义,因此均为错误选项。

### 12. (a)

(a) Even so(尽管如此)为正确选项,可以较好地表达出

文中“yet only”的含义。(b) Although (虽然, 尽管) 为连词, 用来引导让步状语从句。除该句无主语外, 它只能用于表达出让步语义, 而不能用来表达结果语义。(c) Moreover (此外) 应为对前面所述意义的进一步阐述或强调。(d) In spite of (尽管), 短语介词, 其后只能使用名词、代词等词类, 不能用来引导一个句子。此外, 同(b) 一样, 只能用来表达让步语义, 而不能用来表达结果。

## Lesson 10

### The loss of the *Titanic*

#### “泰坦尼克”号的沉没

#### 1 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. *Titanic*—sailing icy water, N. Atlantic
2. Iceberg—lookout
3. Alarm given—ship turned sharply
4. Sailed alongside iceberg
5. Faint noise—heard from below
6. Captain—down to investigate
7. Found five of sixteen compartments flooded
8. Order—abandon ship—people overboard
9. 1,500 people drowned—not enough lifeboats

##### 摘要写作参考答案

The *Titanic* was sailing across the icy waters of the North Atlantic when an iceberg was spotted by a lookout. After the alarm was given, the ship turned sharply and sailed alongside it. Suddenly, a faint noise was heard from below, so the captain went down to investigate, only to find that five of the sixteen compartments had been flooded. On hearing the order to abandon ship, people jumped overboard, but 1,500 drowned because there were not enough lifeboats.

(79 words)

## 作文参考答案

### Abandon ship

The *Titanic* began to sink, slowly at first. The order to abandon ship was unexpected, so passengers and crew were completely unprepared. It was the middle of the night. Some people were asleep in their cabins. Others were on deck admiring the brilliant night sky and the giant icebergs rising above them. Others were eating and dancing in the wonderful ballrooms on the ship.

The immediate effect was panic and confusion. People began rushing in all directions, wondering what to do next. The cold was indescribable and many passengers were still in their night clothes. Members of the crew came up from below and began to lower the lifeboats. It was a case of women and children first, but it soon became obvious that there weren't enough lifeboats for everyone, so people jumped overboard into the freezing water in order to save their lives. Some of those swimming in the water struggled to get into the lifeboats, but most of them were already full.

The *Titanic* sank rapidly, carrying many people down with it. There were cries of despair from people in the water as they watched the lifeboats moving away and were left to drown in the icy ocean.

(200 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

The middle address is correct.

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

colossal (1.4):	immense, huge
regarded (1.5):	considered, thought to be
compartments (1.6):	sections, divisions
flooded (1.7):	filled with water
float (1.7):	stay on the surface of the water
avoid (1.11):	escape, miss
narrowly (1.11):	only just

### 关键句型练习答案

A. See text.

B. 1. At that time, she was the largest ship that *had* ever *been built*.

2. After the alarm *had been given*, the great ship *turned* sharply to avoid a direct collision.

### 难点练习答案

- |               |                |             |
|---------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. physicist  | 2. miner       | 3. humanity |
| 4. impression | 5. originality |             |

## 3 多项选择练习

### Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

(d) She was sailing on her maiden voyage (它在进行其首航) 为正确选项。此点在文中第 7 ~ 8 行 “The tragic

sinking of this great liner will always be remembered, for she went down on her first voyage with heavy loss of life”中已清楚说明；而(a) she was carrying a very large cargo (它正载着大批货物) 和 (b) she was making a voyage which is only attempted by very large ships (它正在进行只有巨轮才进行尝试的航行) 这两个意义在文中并未交代, 因此为错误选项；(c) only two of her watertight compartments were flooded (它的密封舱中只有两个进了水), 与文中意义不符。文中第 6~7 行 “Even if two of these were flooded, she would still be able to float (即使有两个密封舱进水, 它仍可漂浮在水面上)” 为虚拟语气, 并非事实, 因此 (c) 也为错误选项。

2. (c)

根据文中第 10~11 行 “After the alarm had been given, the great ship turned sharply to avoid a direct collision (警报响过不久, 巨轮急转弯, 以免与冰山正而相撞)”, 可以看出 (c) The *Titanic* quickly changed her course (“泰坦尼克”号立即改变了航向) 为正确选项；而 (a) The *Titanic* got lost in the icy waters of the North Atlantic (“泰坦尼克”号在北大西洋冰冷的海面上迷失了航向), 显然与文中意义不符；(h) The alarm was given that there was a collision ahead (警告前面发生了相撞的警报响起)。根据第 2 段前两句内容可以看出, 警报响起是因为看到了冰山, 以使巨轮避免与之相撞；(d) The *Titanic* turned just as the iceberg rose steeply out of water (“泰坦尼克”号转弯时冰山正直冲出水面) 这一意义明显在时间上与本题所提问题意义不符。

3. (a)

(a) she had been badly damaged by an iceberg (它被冰山

严重毁坏)是“泰坦尼克”号沉没的原因,因此为正确选项;(b) the captain was slow to realize the true nature of the damage (船长很长时间后才意识到毁坏的真实程度)对此文中并未提及,而且意识到毁坏的真实程度的早晚并非“泰坦尼克”号沉没的原因;(c) no more than five of her watertight compartments had been flooded (它的密封舱中只有5个进了水)与文中“... for five of her sixteen watertight compartments had already been flooded! (……它的16个密封舱已有5个进了水!)”的意义不符;(d) instead of trying to save her, people plunged into the water (人们没尽力去拯救它,而是跳进了海水中)与文中表达意义不符,且“泰坦尼克”号的沉没非人力所能挽救。

#### Structure 结构

##### 4. (b)

本题有关“on board”的使用方法。“on board”泛指“在船上”,指船的名词、代词或指船的名称、型号等的词需置于其后,如 on board the Dongfeng (在东风号上)、on board a liner (在油轮上)等,因此(b) On board her 为正确选项;而(a) On her board 据上所述词序有误;(c) Boarding her 和(d) On boarding her 中所用的均为动词“board”的-ing形式,在句中只能起到时间状语的作用,这样其后的词序有误或句子缺少主语。此外,用正确选项构成的句子为倒装语序,正常语序为:“1,316 passengers and a crew of 891 were on board her.”

##### 5. (d)

文中第5行“... but was regarded as unsinkable (……而且也认为是不会沉没的)”表达出一种可能性。(d) could possibly 可用来表达这种可能性,因此为正确选项;就结

构而言,在使用形容词“possible”时,通常需使用“it is / was possible for + 逻辑主语 + 动词不定式”结构,因此(a) would be possible to 是错误选项;在(b) would be able to 中,形容词“able”后需使用动词不定式表示“能/有能力”之意,因此在此句中不能这样使用;(c) should 表示“应该”之意,此外还常用于表示“命令、建议、要求”等含虚拟语气概念的宾语从句中,在本句中使用“should”显然是错误的。

6. (d)

本题有关时态的使用。文中第9~10行“Four days after setting out, while the *Titanic* was sailing across the icy waters of the North Atlantic, a huge ... (‘泰坦尼克’起航后的第4天,它正行驶在北大西洋冰冷的海面上……)”中的“while”表示发现一座冰山时,“泰坦尼克”号正在行驶,即表明发生在4天前的“sail”这一动作,在发现冰山时仍在进行,因此应使用过去完成进行时态,即(d) had been sailing 为正确选项;而(a) sailed、(b) was sailing 和(c) has sailed 在时态使用上均有误。

7. (b)

本题有关“so ... that ...”结构的倒装使用。文中第13~14行“The noise had been so faint that ...”为正常语序结构。在想进一步强调“so”后的形容词时,可将“so”提至句首,但需构成“so + 形容词 + be 动词(或助动词、情态助动词) + 主语”这样的倒装语序结构,因此(b) had been the noise 为正确选项;而(a) the noise was、(c) it was the noise 和(d) it had been the noise 均未构成倒装语序,因而是错误选项。但这种将“so + 形容词”置于句首构成的倒装语序形式,通常只用于书面或广播之中,而在谈话中一般不这样使用。

8. (d)

由于“lifeboats”为可数名词,因此不能用 little 来修饰它表示“少”的含义,故 (a) as little 和 (b) so little 均为错误选项;文中第 16~17 行中“*As there were not enough lifeboats for everybody...* (由于没有足够的救生艇运载所有乘客……)”中的“not enough lifeboats”的强调点为不够,因此 (d) too few 为正确选项。“too few”含有“太少而不够”的含义;(c) very few 用于表达基本否定的含义,即“几乎根本没有什么”之意,因此与文中所表达意义不符。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (a)

文中第 10~11 行“... the great ship turned sharply to ... (……巨轮急转弯……)”中的“turned”一词表示“转弯,改变航行”之意,因此 (a) veered 为正确选项;而 (b) changed (改变,多用来表示自身的变化)、(c) went back (返回) 和 (d) cornered (转弯,通常用来指拐弯性能) 与文中意义不符,故均为错误选项。

10. (c)

文中第 11 行“*The Titanic turned just in time...* (‘泰坦尼克’号拐弯及时……)”中的“just in time”表示“刚好,及时”之意。(c) with no time to spare 可用来表示此意,因此为正确选项;而 (a) in next to no time (几乎无时间)、(b) on a sudden impulse (凭一时冲动地) 和 (d) nearly on time (几乎正好) 不能用来表达文中“just in time”之意,故均为错误选项。

11. (b)

(b) investigate (查看) 可用来表达文中第 13 行“to see what had happened”之意,因此为正确选项;而 (a) explore (勘察,探测)、(c) examine (检查) 和

(d) inquire (打听, 查问) 均与句中表达的意义不符, 因此为错误选项。

12. (a)

(a) room (地方, 空间) 为正确选项, 用“room”表达此义时为不可数名词; (b) place (地方) 为可数名词, 此处应用其复数形式 places; (c) volume (体积, 容量) 表达此义时为单数名词, 语义不符; (d) area (地区, 面积; 室内等特定区域) 与文中所表达意义不符。

# Lesson 11

## Not guilty

### 无罪

#### 1 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. Writer—nothing to declare
2. Customs Officer made him—unlock his case
3. Searched the case carefully
4. Found a small bottle
5. Thought it was perfume
6. Writer told him—hair gel
7. Writer had made it
8. Customs Officer did not believe him
9. Writer encouraged—try it
10. Unpleasant smell—convinced Officer—truth
11. Let writer pass through Customs

##### 摘要写作参考答案

*Though* the writer had nothing to declare, the Customs Officer made him unlock his case. *Searching* the case carefully, the Officer found a small bottle, *which* he thought was perfume. The writer told the Customs Officer that it was hair gel, *which* he had made himself. *As* the Officer did not believe this, the writer encouraged him to try it. The

unpleasant smell convinced him the writer was telling the truth, so he let him pass through Customs.

(78 words)

### 作文参考答案

When the Customs Officer *asked the traveller if he was carrying anything valuable*, the man said that he had nothing to declare. The Officer asked the man to *open his suitcase*. Although the case contained only *a suit and some dirty clothes*, it was very heavy. This made the Customs Officer suspicious, so he *removed all the clothes from the case*. The case was soon empty and when the Officer *lifted it*, he found that *it was still very heavy*. The Officer examined the case carefully and saw that *the bottom was very shallow*. He *pressed the base hard* and removed the bottom part of the case which contained *a quantity of emeralds and other precious stones*. While the Officer was looking at *an emerald*, the man tried to *escape*. For a moment the man disappeared *among the passing holiday travellers*, but he was soon *caught* and placed under arrest.

(150 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

Thank you for your letter asking me to lend you some money to start a new business.

I'm very sorry that I can't help you at the moment. I not only have a great many expenses of my own, but I'm in debt myself. Why don't you ask our friend Jim Clark? I know Jim is keen to invest in business and might be able to lend you some money.

I wish you every success in your new business venture.

(80 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

troubled (1.5):	upset, concerned
clearly (1.7):	obviously
packed (1.13):	put in
dreadful (1.14):	terrible
cap (1.22):	top
nostrils (1.22):	nose
convinced (1.23):	persuaded

### 关键句型练习答案

ll. 16-17: The Customs Officer told the writer he should have declared the perfume because it was not exempt from import duty.

ll. 18-19: The writer told the Customs Officer that it wasn't perfume, but it was hair gel. He said it was a strange mixture he made himself.

ll. 21: He told the Customs Officer to try it.

### 难点练习答案

Because Tim Jones cannot speak French or German, he never enjoys travelling abroad. Last March, however, he went to Denmark and stayed in Copenhagen. He said he spent most of his time at the Tivoli, which is one of the biggest funfairs in

the world. At the Tivoli, you can enjoy yourself very much, even if you don't speak Danish.

### 3 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

##### 1. (c)

文中第 1~4 行 "... but they can still stop you when you are going through the Green Channel and have nothing to declare. Even really honest people are often made to feel guilty (……但是,当你通过绿色通道,没有任何东西需要申报时,他们仍可以拦住你)",说明 (c) The fact that they are treated as potential smugglers(他们被视为可能的走私犯这一事实)为正确选项;而 (a) Having five hundred gold watches hidden in their suitcases (手提箱里藏着 500 只金表)、(b) The particularly officious way Customs Officers always ask questions (海关官员一个劲儿提各类问题时的那种方式)和 (d) Carrying things which are not exempt from import duty (携带要上进口税的物品)显然与本题所提问题不符。

##### 2. (c)

文中第 14~16 行 "Suddenly, I saw the Officer's face light up ... and he pounced on it with delight. 'Perfume, eh?' he asked sarcastically (突然,我看到官员脸上露出了得意的神色……高兴地一把抓了起来。‘香水,嗯?’他讥讽地说道)",说明 (c) The idea of having found something which should have been declared (以为发现了应该申报物品的想法)为正确选项;而 (a) Knowing how difficult it would be for the writer to close his case (知道这位作者要

关上他的手提箱会有多难)与文中要表达的意思相差甚远;(b) Seeing the bottle of hair gel which he could charge duty on (看到了那瓶他能够征税的发胶)问题是就文中表述而言发胶是不用上税的;(d) Discovering an unopened bottle of perfume at the bottom of the case (在手提箱底部发现了一瓶没打开的香水)此选项不完全,并非“发现一瓶未打开的香水”使这位海关官员“露出得意的神情”,这里表述的应是“发现了应上税而未上税的物品”。

### 3. (a)

本题中的连词“because”引导原因状语从句,说明作者“匆匆离去”的原因。显而易见,(a) he had grown impatient at having taken so long to get through Customs (过海关花费了那么长时间使他不耐烦)为正确选项;而(b) he was anxious to get away from the unpleasant smell (他急切地想摆脱那股怪味)、(c) he was afraid he might still be stopped for smuggling (他担心还会因为走私物品而被拦住)和(d) he was trying to escape with precious chalk marks (他试图带着宝贵的粉笔记号逃逸)显然不能作为“该作者匆匆离去”的原因。

## Structure 结构

### 4. (d)

文中第9行“‘Have you anything to declare?’ he asked...”为直接引语的一般疑问句形式,将其变为间接引语时,在主句与从句间需使用连词“whether”说明其关系,因此(d) whether为正确选项;当直接引语为陈述句时,使用连词“that”说明主句与从句间的关系;当直接引语为以疑问代词“what”引导的特殊疑问句时,在主句与从句间使用该疑问代词说明其关系;“for”为并列连词,用

来引导两个并列句,可用以说明原因。因此,(a) that、(b) what 和 (c) for 均为错误选项。

5. (c)

文中第 9 行 "... looking me in the eye" 中的 "to look somebody in the eye" 为固定搭配形式 (注意该表达形式中的动词 look 后没有介词 at), 用来表示 "直直地盯着某人的眼睛" 之意。通常用动词 "look" 表示 "盯视, 注视" 之意时, 其后需使用介词 "at", 因此 (c) (looking) directly at me (直直地〈盯〉着我) 为正确选项; 而在 (a) (looking) direct to me 中, 需用副词 "directly" 修饰现在分词 "looking", 而且介词需使用 "at"; 在 (b) (looking) me directly 中, 需在现在分词 "looking" 和代词 "me" 之间使用介词 "at"; (d) (looking) in my direction (〈注视着〉我这边) 与文中意义不符。

6. (b)

本题是有关表示方式的副词 (kindly) 在句子中的位置问题。一般说来, 用于句中的副词应置于除 "be" 动词 (如 is、am、are 等) 以外的动词之前, 不用于动词和宾语之间。为能起到强调动词动作的作用, 这类动词一般也不用于句末。因此, 本题 (b) kindly unlock this suitcase 为正确选项; 而 (a) unlock kindly this suitcase 和 (c) unlock this suitcase kindly 中的副词 "kindly" 的位置均使用不当; "kindly" 一词在句中用来修饰动词 "unlock", 但在 (d) be kind to unlock this suitcase 中, 形容词 "kind" 则用来修饰主语 "you", 此外用形容词 "kind" 表达 "请……做某事行吗?" 这一概念时, 通常用 "Will somebody be kind enough to do something?" 这样的句式结构。

7. (a)

文中第 16 行 "You should have declared that. ..." 中的

“should + 现在完成时”结构表示出“本来应该做但实际未做”这一概念,因此 (a) ought to have declared 为正确选项。而 (b) must have declared 中的“must + 现在完成时”结构则表明肯定推测的概念,即表示出“肯定已做”的含义;(c) had to declare 中的“to have to do something”表示出“不得不/必须做某事”的概念;(d) needed to declare 中的“to need to do something”表示出“需要/应该做某事”的概念。

8. (a)

本题有关分词短语作时间状语的使用方法。分词短语可用来表示时间状语。当分词所表示的动作明显先于谓语动词所表示的动作时,需用“having + 动词的过去分词”形式,且该分词所表示的动作与谓语动词所表示的动作均为同一主语做出的动作。因此, (a) Having unscrewed 为正确选项。而在 (b) Unscrewed 为过去分词,只能用来表示被动概念;(c) Being unscrewed 为分词“unscrew”的被动语态形式;(d) With unscrewed 中的 with 为介词,其后只能使用名词或代词,这样“unscrewed”只能被视为形容词,表示“被打开的”含义,而介词“with”则表示“带着”的含义。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (c)

本题有关对形容词“tolerant (容忍的,宽容的)”词义的理解。(c) easy-going (心平气和的,脾气随和的)为正确选项;而 (a) tolerable (可忍受的,可容忍的)、(b) placid (宁静的,平和的)和 (d) negligent (疏忽的,粗心大意的)均不能用来表达出“tolerant”的含义。

10. (a)

文中第 4~5 行 “The hardened professional smuggler, on

the other hand, is never troubled by such feelings ... (而老练的职业走私犯却从来不为这样的感觉所困扰……)”中,“to be never troubled by ...”为“从不为……所困扰”之意。(a) (feels) unashamed of 可用来表示“对……感到泰然”之意,因此为正确选项;而 (b) (feels) unwronged by 可用来表示“感到未被……不公正地对待/冤枉”之意;(c) (feels) unshocked by 可用来表示“感到未受……震动/震惊”之意;(d) (feels) guiltless of 可用来表示“对……感到无罪”之意,均与文中所要表达的意义不符,因此为错误选项。

11. (d)

本题就文中“*As I expected, he did not believe me* (果不出所料,他并不相信我)”测试对4个选项中所给词汇的认知能力。(d) *sceptical* (〈充满怀疑而〉不相信的)为正确选项;而 (a) *incomprehensible* (不可理解的,难于领悟的)、(b) *incredible* (不能相信的,不可信的)和 (c) *incredulous* (〈由于太令人惊奇、震惊等而〉不能相信的)均为错误选项。

12. (b)

(b) *luggage* (行李)可用来替换文中最后一个单词“*baggage*”,故为正确选项;而 (a) *handbags* (手提包)、(c) *casement* (窗扉)和 (d) *equipment* (设备)均与文中所要表达的意义不符。

# Lesson 12

## Life on a desert island

### 荒岛生活

#### 1 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. Two men's boat damaged ]
2. Taking it to Miami ]
3. On the way—began to sink ]
4. Men loaded food, matches, beer—rubber dinghy ]
5. Rowed—few miles—Caribbean ]
6. Arrived—tiny coral island ]
7. Collected rainwater—rubber dinghy ]
8. Caught fish and lobster—spear gun ]
9. 'Ate like kings'—five days ]
10. Rescued—passing tanker ]

##### 摘要写作参考答案

As the two men's boat was damaged, they were taking it to Miami *when* on the way it began to sink. *After loading* a rubber dinghy with food, matches and beer, the two men rowed a few miles across the Caribbean *until* they arrived at a tiny coral island. *There* they collected rainwater in the dinghy *and* caught fish and lobster with a spear gun. For five days, they 'ate like kings' *until* they were rescued by a passing

tanker.

(80 words)

### 作文参考答案

#### Shipwrecked

The ship went down and everyone was drowned. I was the only one who managed to jump into the sea. I clung to a plank in the water for several hours till I was washed up on a desert island.

I slept on the beach for a very long time—I can't remember how long. When I woke up, I was hungry and thirsty, so I decided to explore the island. It was uninhabited, but I found plenty of fruit which had fallen from the trees. I lived on coconuts and pineapples and there was plenty of fresh spring water. I tried to hunt wild animals with my bare hands (small pigs and other creatures), but I failed to catch anything. So I spent my days swimming in the warm clear water and lying in the sun.

One afternoon while I was lying on the beach as usual, I saw a boat on the horizon. I signalled with my white shirt and shouted as loudly as I could. Fortunately, someone on the boat saw me and I was rescued. Of course, I was pleased to get back to civilization, but I was very sorry to leave this island paradise.

(200 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

We have a wonderful view from our hotel window. Just below us is a beach which stretches for a couple of miles and

beyond its clear blue water. We can be sure of brilliant sunshine every day. We look forward to spending our holiday swimming, eating and sleeping!

We all keep thinking of you and wish you were with us.

(60 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

picture (1.1):	image
wretched (1.6):	miserable
starve to death (1.6):	die of hunger
opportunity (1.8):	chance
repaired (1.10):	fixed, mended
loaded (1.11):	filled, stacked
dinghy (1.11):	small boat

### 关键句型练习答案

- A. 1. *If you had told me earlier, I would have telephoned you.*  
2. *If I were you, I wouldn't do that.*  
3. *You will be disappointed if it rains tomorrow.*  
4. *You would change your mind if you could speak to him.*

### 难点练习答案

- |        |             |                   |
|--------|-------------|-------------------|
| 1. had | 2. wouldn't | 3. weren't/wasn't |
| 4. did | 5. had      | 6. hadn't         |

### 3 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

##### 1. (c)

文中第2-7行“*We sometimes imagine a desert to be a sort of paradise where the sun always shines. Life there is simple and good. Ripe fruit falls from the trees and you never have to work. The other side of the picture is quite the opposite. Life on a desert island is wretched. You either starve to death or live like Robison Crusoe, waiting for a boat which never comes* (我们有时想像荒岛是阳光终日普照的天堂。在那里,生活简单又美好。成熟的水果从树上掉下来,人们根本无需劳动。另一种想法恰恰相反,认为荒岛生活很可怕,要么饿死,要么像鲁滨逊那样,天天盼船来,却总不见船影)”,给出了对荒岛生活的两种不切实际即过分乐观和过分悲观的想法。因此,(c) *They are either unduly optimistic or unduly pessimistic* (它们不是过分地乐观就是过分地悲观)为正确选项;而其他3个选项或是不全面,如(a) *They fail to present the wretchedness of such a situation* (他们不能描述出这种条件下的可怕情景)和(b) *We forget that we would be too weak to work and only imagine the pleasure of idleness* (我们忘记了我们会过分地软弱而无法劳动,并且只想像到无所事事时的欢乐),或是与作者所要表达的意义不符,如(d) *They lack any truth at all as most of us have never visited one* (由于我们中的大多数人从未去过这样的一个荒岛,因此根本不能用事实来说明)。

##### 2. (d)

就本题所提问题而言,它所问及的是“他们所带的证明对

他们的生存至关重要的是什么设备?”,因此就“设备(equipment)”来说,(d) A spear gun and a rubber dinghy (一支捕鱼枪和一条橡胶救生筏)为正确选项;而(a) Tools with which they had been going to repair their boat (他们准备用来修理小船的工具)在文中并未论及;(b) Food, matches and tins of beer (食物、火柴和罐装啤酒)和(c) Rainwater, lobster and fish (雨水、龙虾和鱼)均不属于设备范畴。

3. (a)

就文中第2段后半部分所述,本题“What made the men wish to stay on the desert island(什么使这两个人想呆在这座荒岛上)?”的正确选项为(a) Discovering how pleasant life can be fending for oneself (发现能为自己谋取到极为愉快的生活);而(b) Having seen very few trees and not rainwater on the coral island (在珊瑚岛上看不到多少树,并且没有雨水),并不能作为他们想呆在荒岛上的理由;文中第15行“... and, as one of them put it ‘ate like kings’(……并且正如其中一位所说,吃得‘像国王一样好’)”,为一种夸张的说法,并非事实,因此(c) The fact that they were able to eat the same food as kings eat (他们能够吃到与国王所吃到的同样的食物这一事实)为错误选项;文中并没有对(d) Knowing they no longer needed to take their boat to Miami for repair (知道他们再无需驾船去迈阿密修理)这一点的说明,因此为错误选项。

**Structure 结构**

4. (b)

本题有关动词“think”在使用中的结构问题。在表达“认为,以为”这一概念时,通常使用下述几种形式: to think

+ 宾语 + 宾语补语; to think + 宾语 + to be + 补语; to think of + 宾语 + as + 介词 + 介词宾语。由于本题使用了“to think of + 宾语”结构,因此其后应使用“as + 介词宾语”形式。这样,本题 (b) as being 为正确选项,而 (a) to be、(c) is 和 (d) be 均为错误选项。

5. (d)

本题有关“few”和“many”、主语单复数与动词的搭配问题和可数名词的修饰问题。few = not many, 虽然“few”在句子中可作代词,但通常不能如 (a) we few 那样作同位语,而应将其如文中那样用于“few of”结构之中;(b) hardly anybody 中的“anybody”为单数形式,作主语时动词需用单数形式,而题中的动词“have”为复数动词,因此搭配有误;(c) little people 中的“little”为形容词,只能用于修饰不可数名词,而“people”则为复数名词;因而本题 (d) not many 为正确选项,也可将其视为 not many of us 的省略结构。

6. (c)

本题有关动词“-ing”形式的使用问题。由于文中第 11~12 行 “They ... rowed for a few miles across the Caribbean until they arrived at a tiny coral island (他们……在加勒比海划行了几英里,到了一座珊瑚岛上)”中使用的是叙事结构,因此按动词“row”和“arrive”动作发生顺序的先后,分别使用了它们的过去式“rowed”和“arrived”。当使用题中“After ...”来表达文中语义时,由于“after”明确表明其后的动词动作发生在上句谓语动词动作“arrived”之前,应将其构成过去完成时,即“had rowed”结构形式,因此 (a) they rowed 所用时态不当;此外,在“after”后使用动词时,只能使用动词的“-ing”形式,而且该“-ing”形式动词的逻辑主语应同主句谓语动词的

主语相一致,这样,(c) rowing 为正确选项;而 (b) rowed (过去式或过去分词) 和 (c) to row (动词不定式) 则均为错误选项。

7. (b)

本题有关定冠词及形容词“scarce”在句中的使用问题。文中第 12~13 行 “There were hardly any trees on the island and ... (在岛上几乎没有一棵树……)” 中的 “hardly any” 为 “几乎没有” 之意,用来表示基本的否定,而 “trees” 在句中作泛指名词,即对该名词未作任何限定。这样,(b) Trees 为正确选项。本题中 “scarce (难得的,罕见的)” 表示出基本否定的含义,本选项中的 “trees” 表示泛指;(a) The trees 中的 “trees” 前使用了定冠词,即含有 “特指” 意义,因此为错误选项;当用 “any” 修饰某一作主语的名词时,其后不能使用否定语。由于 “scarce” 表示基本否定的含义,因此 (c) Any trees 为错误选项,如前所述,文中 “trees” 一词表示泛指,而在 (d) Trees on the island 中,虽然在 “trees” 前未使用定冠词或其他限定词,但介词短语 “on the island (在这个岛上的)” 为后置定语,同样起到对 “trees” 一词的限定作用,从而产生语义上的差异。文中表明 “任何种类的树”, 而题中表明 “岛上的任何种类的树” 之意。

8. (c)

本题有关动词 “regret” 的使用方法。通常在动词 “regret” 之后可以使用名词、动名词、动词不定式或 that 从句结构形式,即构成 to regret something、to regret doing something、to regret to do something 或 to regret + that 从句这样的结构形式。文中第 16 行 “... both men were genuinely sorry that they had to leave (……这两人对不得不离开那个荒岛还真都感到非常遗憾)” 用 “to be sorry +

that 从句”表示“对……感到遗憾”。在本题中用动词“regret”取代文中的形容词“sorry”表达同一概念。虽然在动词“regret”后可以使用上述的 4 种形式,但其语义略有不同。如 (a) their leave 中使用了“to regret something”,表示“对某事感到后悔、遗憾”。就语义而言,并未表达出“to have to do something (不得不做某事)”的含义,因此为错误选项;(b) to have to leave 中虽然表达出了“不得不做”这一概念,但“to regret to do something”用来表达“遗憾地去做某事”,即对一件“还未做但得要去做的事情感到遗憾”这一概念,这与文中所表达的意义有所不同,因此也为错误选项;(d) they must have left 中使用了“must + 完成式”结构,表示对“过去所做某事的肯定推测”,显然与文中所表达的意义不符;(c) having to leave 中使用的“to regret doing something”表达出“对做了某事而感到遗憾、后悔”之意,为本题的正确选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

#### 9. (b)

本题有关对“desert”(形容词)一词的理解。(b) an uninhabited (无人居住的,杳无人迹的)为正确选项;而(a) an unpopular (不流行的,不得人心的)、(c) a deserted (被遗弃的)和(d) a barren (贫瘠的,荒芜的)均非该词所表达的含义。

#### 10. (d)

本题有关对文中第 5 行“quite the opposite (完全相反)”的语义理解。(d) entirely (完全地,整个地)为正确选项;而(a) naturally (自然地)、(b) rather (相当地,特别地)和(c) really (真正地,确实地)同“different”连用后均非该短语的含义。

11. (d)

文中第 13 行“..., but this did not prove to be a problem (……但这也不算什么问题)”中的“prove”直译为“被见到, 发现是”, 因此 (d) found 为正确选项; 而 (a) demonstrated (被证明/说明)、(b) thought (被认为) 和 (c) shown (被展示/显示为), 均不能确切表达文中含义, 因此为错误选项。

12. (a)

文中第 15 行“..., as one of them put it ...”中的“put”为“说, 表达”之意, 因此 (a) expressed (表达) 为正确选项; (b) placed (放, 置) 不能用来表达此意; (c) told (说, 告诉) 一词后通常使用人称代词作其宾语, 而且除个别情况其后可使用单宾语(如 to tell the truth / a lie / a story 等) 外, 其后通常需使用双宾语结构; (d) said (说) 一词后虽然可以作及物动词, 但其后通常接所说的内容或诸如“something”、“anything”这类的不定代词, 而不能使用人称代词直接作其宾语。

# Lesson 13

## 'It's only me'

### “是我，别害怕”

#### 1 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. Mrs. Richards—dressed as ghost
2. Going to dining room—knock on the door
3. Thought it was—baker
4. Hid in storeroom under the stairs
5. Heard footsteps in hall
6. Man from Electricity Board—opened storeroom door
7. Said—‘It's only me’
8. He got a bad fright
9. She walked towards him
10. Fled
11. Slammed front door

##### 摘要写作参考答案

Mrs. Richards had dressed up as a ghost *and* was just going into the dining room *when* there was a knock on the door. *Thinking* it was the baker, she hid in the storeroom under the stairs. She heard footsteps in the hall *and then* the man from the Electricity Board opened the storeroom door. *Though* she said ‘It's only me’, he got a bad fright. *When*

she walked towards him, he fled, *slamming* the front door behind him.

(79 words)

### 作文参考答案

Mrs. Richards immediately went upstairs and *took off her costume*. She felt sorry for the poor man from *the Electricity Board*, but at the same time *she was rather amused*. Suddenly, there was a knock at the front door and Mrs. Richards *opened it at once*. The electricity man had returned, accompanied *by a policeman*, so she *invited both in*. The man told Mrs. Richards that *he had tried to read her metre* and that *there was a ghost in the storeroom*. Though Mrs. Richards explained that *she had dressed up as a ghost*, he refused to believe her. She told him to open the storeroom door, but he *was too frightened*, so she *opened it herself*. While the electricity man and the policeman *were looking for the ghost in the storeroom*, Mrs. Richards fetched *her costume*. She showed it to *both men* and *only then did they believe her*.

(150 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

You can't imagine what happened to me the other day when I was checking the electricity metres in Ormond Road!

I went to check the metre of one of our customers and got a terrible shock. I'm convinced the house is haunted because a ghost lives in the storeroom. As soon as it saw me, it came towards me and I fled!

This is really a true story and I'll tell you all about it when

we meet.

(78 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

intended (1.4):	planned
impatient (1.6):	eager
try it on (1.6):	put it on to see what it was like
whether (1.8):	if
failed to (1.10):	didn't (do something you were normally expected to do)
fled (1.16):	ran away
slamming (1.16):	banging

### 关键句型练习答案

A. See text.

B. 1. I'm late already so I *must go* now. I *must be* at the office by nine. (necessity)

Compare: John is late. He *must be* in a traffic jam. (deduction)

2. You *mustn't speak* to your father like that.

I've written to you but you *needn't answer* my letter.

3. I was late for work because I *had to go* to the bank.

I *ought to have told you*, but I forgot.

### 难点练习答案

A. 1. glad to hear      2. sorry to have      3. sad to hear

- B. 1. I'm *pleased to* tell you that you have been promoted.  
2. We're *proud to* announce that we've just have a son.  
3. I'm *delighted to* be here again.  
4. I was *shocked to* learn that she is in hospital.

### 3 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

文中第4~6行“*She intended to dress up as a ghost and as she had made her costume the night before, she was impatient to try it on* (她打算装扮成鬼的模样。头天晚上她已把化装服做好,这时她急于想试试)”和第7~8行“*After putting it on, Mrs. Richards went downstairs* (理查兹夫人穿上化装服后下了楼)”,不仅说明了理查兹夫人要试试化装服的原因,而且说明了她试化装服的地点。因此(d) (because) she wanted to change into her fancy-dress costume (〈因为〉她想试试化装服)为正确选项;文中第2~3行“*She was too excited to do any housework that morning ...* (那天上午,她兴奋得什么家务活都不想做……)”,说明(a) (because) she did not need to do any housework (〈因为〉她不用做什么家务活)与文中意义不符;文中第5行“*... as she had made her costume the night before ...* (……前一天晚上她已把化装服做好……)”,说明(b) (because) she still had to finish the costume she was going to wear (〈因为〉她还得做完她准备穿的化装服)与文中意义不符;而文中第2~3行所述也说明(c) (because) she wanted to change her clothes before doing the housework (〈因为〉她想在干家务活之前

换衣服)为错误选项。

2. (c)

如文中第 11~12 所述 “Not wanting to frighten the poor man, Mrs. Richards quickly hid in the small storeroom under the stairs (理查兹夫人不想吓唬这个可怜的人, 便赶紧躲到了楼梯下的小储藏室里)”, 表明本题 (c) she thought the baker might be taken in by her disguise (她想那个面包师会被她的伪装所蒙蔽) 为正确选项; 而 (a) she was upstairs changing her clothes (她正在楼上换衣服)、(b) she did not want to make a bad impression on the baker (她不想给面包师留下坏印象) 和 (d) the baker had already left the bread on the kitchen table (那个面包师已把面包放在了厨房的桌上) 显然与文中所述意义不符, 因此均为错误选项。

3. (c)

通过文中第 2 段所述, 可以看出本题 (c) the man would recognise her (那个人会认出她来) 为正确选项; 而 (a) the man would realize she was alone (那个人会意识到只有她独自一人)、(b) to persuade the man he was seeing a ghost (使那个人相信他见到的是个鬼) 和 (d) the man would not close the door of the storeroom (那个人不会把储藏室的门关上) 均非文中所述含义。

### Structure 结构

4. (c)

本题有关时态和语态的使用问题。因为从句中的动词动作明显发生在用过去时态表示的主句谓语动词动作之前, 因此本题应用过去完成时态。其实, 从句的前半部分 her husband had gone to work 已对时态作了提示。就她的孩子而言, 是“被送去”上学, 因此本题应使用被动语

态。这样, (c) had been sent 为正确选项。而 (a) had sent 所用语态不当; (b) were sent 所用时态不当和 (d) were sending 所用语态和时态均不当。

5. (b)

本题有关时态和连接副词“how”的使用方法。由于宾语从句中的动词 (wear) 动作发生在用过去时态表达的主句动词 (wanted to find out) 动作之后, 因此宾语从句中需用过去将来时态表示。连接副词“how”可用于强调程度, 如 (a) 和 (b) 中那样, 表示“多么”含义, 也可用于强调方式, 如 (c) 和 (d) 中那样, 表示“如何”含义。就文中第 1 段最后一句的意义而言, 使用强调程度的“how”能够表达出该句的含义, 因此用过去将来时表达的 (b) comfortable it would be 为正确选项, 而其他均为错误选项。

6. (b)

本题有关形容词“anxious”在否定结构中的使用。可以使用“to be anxious to do something”表达“急切/渴望做某事”之意, 但要表达“急切/渴望不去做某事”时, 需使用“to be anxious not to do something”这样的结构, 即将否定词 not 置于其后的动词不定式之前。在表达原因状语从句时, 如果该从句的主语与主句的主语相一致, 并且从句中为“be 动词 + 形容词 + 补语”的形式, 可以省略该从句的连词和“be”动词, 直接用形容词引导出这一原因状语从句。因此, 本题 (b) Anxious not 为正确选项; 在使用分词短语作原因状语表达本句意义时, 应构成“being anxious not to do something”这样的形式。同样, 否定词 not 需置于动词不定式之前, 因此 (c) Being not anxious 和 (d) Not being anxious for 均为错误选项。

7. (b)

本题有关时态的使用。题中的分词短语“Trying to explain the situation . . .”作原因状语,该分词表示的动作发生在主句谓语动词“say”动作之前,而动词“say”动作发生在过去,因此应使用(b) said,即“say”的一般过去时形式;而(a) was saying 用于过去正在进行时;(c) had said 用于过去完成时,即当该动词动作发生在一个表示过去时间的状语或过去的动作之前时使用;(d) has been saying 用于现在完成进行时,即当该动词动作发生在过去而一直持续到现在仍在进行时使用。

8. (c)

本题有关使用动词“see”时的句子结构问题。当表达“看到某人做某事”这一概念时,通常使用“to see somebody do something”或“to see somebody doing something”这样的结构形式。据此,可以看出(c) walk 为正确选项;而(a) to walk、(b) having walked 和(d) walked均与上述用法不符,因此为错误选项。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (a)

文中第9行“Just as Mrs. Richards was entering the dining room . . . (理查兹夫人刚刚走进餐厅……)”中的短语“just as”为“刚刚,正当,就在”之意,因此只有(a) At the very moment (正当,就在那一刻)可作为正确选项;而(b) So long as (只要)、(c) Only when (只有当,在……时)和(d) During the time(在……期间)均不能表达出原句中“just as”的含义,因此为错误选项。

10. (d)

文中第10~11行“. . . if ever she failed to open the door . . . (……如果她不去开门……)”中的“to fail to do

something”表示“(可能由于客观原因而)不或未能做某事”的含义,并不含有“由于做了某件事而不或未能做某事”的含义,因此(d) happened not to open (刚巧未能去开)为正确选项;而(a) missed opening (错过了打开)、(b) forgot to open (忘记了打开)和(c) did not succeed in opening (未能成功地打开)均为错误选项。

11. (a)

文中第13~14行“... it must be the man from the Electricity Board who had come to read the metre (……一定是供电局来人查电表了)”中的“read the metre”为“查电表”之意,题中使用了复合名词“metre-reading”,同动词“take”搭配使用,表达出与“to read the metre”相同的意义,因此,(a)为正确选项;而(b) measurement (测量)、(c) regulation (管理,调节)和(d) study (调查)均与文中表达意义不符。

12. (b)

“to give a cry”为“大喊,大叫一声”之意,与文中第15行“The man let out a cry ...”意义相同,因此(b)为正确选项;而(a) escaped (由……发出)使用时其主语应为事物,如:A cry escaped him. (他不由地喊叫一声。)(c) left (留下)和(d) shouted (喊叫)与其后的“a cry”语义重叠,故均为错误选项。

# Lesson 14

## A noble gangster

### 贵族歹徒

#### 1 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. Sir John Hawkwood—settled near Florence—600 years ago
2. Hired soldiers to princes—city-states—in times of war
3. Threaten to destroy a city-state—times of peace
4. Protection money paid
5. Italians regarded him—sort of hero
6. Eighty—when died
7. Florentines—state funeral
8. Had picture painted
9. Dedicated—memory

##### 摘要写作参考答案

After Sir John Hawkwood settled near Florence six hundred years ago, he hired soldiers to the princes of city-states in times of war. In times of peace he threatened to destroy a city state *unless* protection money was paid. In spite of this, the Italians regarded him as a sort of hero. Sir John was eighty when he died *and* the Florentines *not only* gave him a state funeral *but* had a picture painted of him, *dedicated* to his

memory .

(79 words)

### 作文参考答案

#### Hawkwood defeated

News that Hawkwood and his men were approaching caused panic among villagers who prepared to defend their farms. Hawkwood had a bad reputation among farmers because they knew he would not hesitate to kill them and to burn their farms.

The farmers fought very hard, even though they were poorly armed. With their sticks and spades, they were no match for Hawkwood's well-armed soldiers who had horses, swords and bows and arrows. During the battle, a great many farmers were killed. After Hawkwood destroyed their farms, he sent a message to the prince of the city-state demanding a large amount of protection money. He said that if this money was paid, he would go away and cause no more trouble. However, if it wasn't paid, he would invade the city. To Hawkwood's amazement, this demand was refused, so he and his men invaded the city. As a result, many buildings were destroyed and thousands of people were killed, including quite a few of Hawkwood's soldiers.

The city people fought very hard until Hawkwood and his men were finally driven off. Because the city people defended themselves so well, Hawkwood never attacked them again. He and the prince even became friends.

(200 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

I am writing to you about the talk I agreed to give at the local library in two weeks' time.

I regret I have to cancel this talk. I apologize for the inconvenience, but I am being sent abroad by my firm and will be away for three weeks. I'll be back on June 24th. I will be happy to give my talk on a later occasion.

I look forward to hearing from you and to arranging a new date.

(80 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

sums (1.2):	amounts
promptly (1.3):	immediately, without delay
obtaining (1.5):	getting, acquiring
remarkable (1.7):	notable, amazing
settled (1.9):	went to live
hire (1.11):	make them available in return for money, rent
demanded (1.12):	asked for

### 关键句型练习答案

A. See text.

- B. 1. He leaves the room any time he wants to *have a smoke*.  
2. If you *have got a headache* (you *have a headache*), you should take an aspirin.

3. I had some damage to my car, but I *have now had it repaired*.

### 难点练习答案

- |              |            |                 |
|--------------|------------|-----------------|
| 1. go        | 2. left    | 3. didn't speak |
| 4. not speak | 5. settled | 6. didn't tell  |

## 3 多项选择练习

### Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

就文中第3~4行“If the money was not paid promptly, the gangsters would quickly put a man out of business by destroying his shop (如果交款不及时,歹徒们就会很快捣毁他的商店,让他破产)”可以看出,本题(b) They left those people's business premises unharmed (他们完好无损地保留下那些人的产业)为正确选项;而(a) They saved those people's businesses from destruction (他们保护那些人的商行免遭破坏)、(c) They protected those people against criminals like Sir John Hawkwood (他们保护那些人不受像约翰·霍克伍德那样的罪犯的侵犯)和(d) They did not take those people's lives (他们不杀掉那些人)均与文中所述意义不符,因此为错误选项。

2. (b)

文中第11~14行“Whenever the Italian city-states were ... made large sums of money in this way”可视为对其前一句“He soon made a name for himself and came to be known to Italians as Giovanni Acuto (他很快就出了名,意大利人叫他乔凡尼·阿库托)”的说明,因此本题(b) he

earned through his sharp practice of selling his “protection” (他通过推行其严厉的‘保护’而得到的〈名字〉), 为正确选项; 而 (a) he gave himself in order to become better known to the Italians (他为了在意大利人中更有名气而给自己起的〈名字〉)、(c) he needed in order to hire his soldiers to Italian princes (他为了能把他的士兵雇给意大利的君主们而需要〈这样一个名字〉) 和 (d) was given him in recognition of his services to the Italian states (给予他〈这个名字〉以认可他向意大利诸国提供的服务) 均与文中意义不符, 因此为错误选项。

3. (a)

从文中最后一句 “When he died at the age of eighty, the Florentines gave him a state funeral and had a picture painted which was dedicated to the memory of the most valiant soldier and most notable leader, Signor Giovanni Haukodue (他 80 岁那年死去时, 佛罗伦萨人为他举行了国葬, 并为他画像以纪念这位‘骁勇无比的战士、杰出的领袖乔凡尼·阿库托先生’)”, 可以视为对其前一句 “In spite of this, the Italians regarded him as a sort of hero (尽管如此, 意大利人还是把他视作某种英雄)” 的说明, 因此本题 (a) in that they could not help admiring his boldness and bravery (因为他们不能不钦佩他的勇敢和无畏精神) 为正确选项; 而 (b) as he helped the citizens in peacetime when business was bad for them (由于在和平时期生意萧条时他帮助老百姓)、(c) despite the protection money he offered to those whose farms he burnt (尽管他提供给那些被他烧毁农场的人们保护金) 和 (d) for he lived so long and was given a state funeral by the Florentines (因为他活得岁数很大, 并且佛罗伦萨人为他

举行了国葬) 均与文中意义不符, 因此为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (a)

本题有关时态的使用。本题为一般现在时, 并且定语从句中使用了表示有延续性时间概念的时间状语“for a long time”, 因此 (a) has been 为正确选项; 而 (b) is、(c) was 和 (d) is being 的时态均使用有误。

#### 5. (c)

本题有关动词“prefer”的使用结构问题。在用“prefer”表达“喜欢……而不喜欢……”这一概念时, 通常使用“to prefer something to something”这一结构形式; 在用其表达“宁愿做……而不愿做……”这一概念时, 通常使用“to prefer doing something to doing something”这一结构形式, 因此本题 (c) to having 为正确选项; 而 (a) than have、(b) to have 和 (d) than they have 均为错误选项。这里需注意两点: 首先, 不要将动词“prefer”表达的“宁愿做……也不愿意做……”结构同短语“would rather ... than ...”结构混淆; 其次, 在“to prefer (doing) something to (doing) something”结构中, 中间的“to”为介词, 因此其后的动词需构成“-ing”形式。

#### 6. (b)

本题有关动词“hire (租出, 雇给)”的使用方法。在表达“把……租给某人”这一概念时, 应如文中那样, 使用“to hire ... to somebody”结构形式; 在表达“向某人租用……”这一概念时, 使用“to hire ... from somebody”结构形式, 因此本题 (b) soldiers from 为正确选项; 而 (a) his soldiers from, 虽然使用了上述结构, 但物主代词“his”使用有误; (c) soldiers of 和 (d) some soldiers of 均为错误选项。

7. (a)

文中第 13 ~ 14 行 “... would offer to go away if protection money was paid to them (……如向他们缴纳保护金,他们便主动撤离)” 中的 “would offer to go away” 使用了表示肯定意义的动词 “offer”, 同用连词 “if” 引导的条件状语从句一起构成文中含义。但本题中 “would refuse to go away (便拒绝撤离)” 中的动词 “refuse” 则含有否定意义, 因此需使用含有否定意义的连词方能表达出文中所要表达的意义。(a) unless (除非) 相当于 “if ... not”, 这样同主动词 “refuse” 一起构成双重否定的句子结构形式, 表达出文中所表达的含义, 因此为正确选项; (b) provided that (如果, 只要) 在从句中规定一个主句必须倚恃的 “条件”, 语气较 “if” 强, 但用法大体相同, 本身并不含有否定意义; (c) except that (除去, 除了) 为复合连词, 所引导的从句主要用来对主句所表述内容进行理由或细节上的修正, 因此语义与文中不符; (d) without (没有, 不) 为介词, 虽然含有否定意义, 但其后不能使用从句。

8. (c)

文中第 15 行 “When he died at the age of eighty ... (他 80 岁那年死去时……)” 所用动词 “die” 为短暂时间概念动词。本题 (c) On his death (在他死去时) 为正确选项。而 (a) On dying 中所用 “die” 的 “-ing” 形式, 则表示出 “正在死去” 的概念, 因此表示出的含义与文中意义不符。(b) Having died 中使用的完成时态表达出延续的时间概念, 与其后所使用的表示短暂时间概念的时间状语 “at the age of eighty” 搭配有误。(d) dead 为动词 “die” 的形容词形式, 表状态。形容词短语构成的状语多用来表示原因状语或方式状语, 通常不用来表示时间状语。可以

将这里的“dead”视为“being dead”的省略形式,这样就更清楚地看出其语义上的不妥之处。

### Vocabulary 词汇

#### 9. (b)

本题的从句部分是由连词“since”引导的时间状语从句,主句应使用完成时态。(b) passed (过去)为正确选项,全句直译为“自……,已过去了600年”表达出了文中“600年前,……”这一句子的含义。(a) past (过去)可作名词、副词、形容词或介词,但如前所述,本题的主句应为完成时态,即其谓语部分应由动词“have + 动词的过去分词”构成,而“past”并非动词。(c) been,这样构成的主句缺少主语补语,不完整,因此为错误选项。但如在其后使用形容词“past”作补语,即构成“(have) been past”,也可以表达出文中的语义。(d) departed (离开)虽为动词但语义不符,而且使用该动词时其主语通常为具有生命的名词或表示动态含义的名词。

#### 10. (d)

文中第11~12行“... princes who were willing to pay the high price he demanded (……愿意给他出高价的君主)”中的“to be willing to do something”表示“愿意做某事”。(d) prepared为正确选项,所构成的“to be prepared to do something”表示“准备好做某事”可以表达出文中意义;而(a) agreeable (同意的)、(b) accepting (接受)和(c) desirable (值得向往的,可取的)均不能用来表达出文中的含义,故为错误选项。

#### 11. (d)

文中第14行“Hawkwood made large sums of money in this way (霍克伍德用这种方法挣了大笔钱)”中的“in this way”为“用这种方法/方式”之意。根据文中上下文

含义, (d) like this (像这样, 就这样) 为正确选项; 而 (a) by the way (在路旁, 顺便说说)、(b) with such manners (以这样的举止) 和 (c) on this road (在这条路上) 均不能用来表达出文中的含义。

12. (c)

文中第 16~17 行 “... the most valiant soldier and most notable leader ... (……骁勇无比的战士、杰出的领袖……)” 中的 valiant 表示“英勇的”, 因此 (c) brave (英勇的, 勇敢的) 为正确选项; 而 (a) valuable (有价值的)、(b) worthy (值得的) 和 (d) hardy (坚强的, 强壮的) 均不能表达出文中“valiant”一词的含义, 因此为错误选项。

## Lesson 15

### Fifty pence worth of trouble

#### 五十便士的麻烦

#### 1 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. George—going to sweet shop
2. Lost fifty pence—drain
3. Took off his jacket
4. Arm through drain cover
5. Failed to find fifty pence
6. Could not get his arm out
7. Crowd of people gathered round him
8. Lady—rubbed arm—soap and butter
9. Failed to free George
10. Firemen—freed George—special type of grease
11. Owner of sweet shop—presented him—large box of chocolates

##### 摘要写作参考答案

George was going to the sweet shop *when* he lost fifty pence down a drain. *After* removing his jacket, he put his arm through the drain cover. He *couldn't* find his money *and* *couldn't* get his arm out. A crowd of people gathered round him *and* a lady rubbed his arm with soap and butter. She failed to

free him, but two firemen succeeded with a special type of grease. The sweet shop owner presented George with a large box of chocolates.

(80 words)

### 作文参考答案

I was walking along the street when *I saw a crowd ahead of me*. I could hear people shouting and *making a noise*. On arriving at the scene, *I saw a small boy on the pavement with his arm in a drain cover*. A lady carrying a large bar of soap and a saucepan of water *knelt down beside the boy*. She asked the boy if *he was in pain and he said he wasn't*. Then she rubbed his arm with butter, but *he couldn't get it free*. Meanwhile, someone had telephoned *the fire brigade*. The boy had begun to cry, but when *he saw the firemen, he cheered up*. At first, the firemen decided to *cut through the drain cover*, but they changed their minds and *rubbed the boy's arm with a special type of grease*. The boy was soon free and though his arm hurt, *he was smiling*.

(150 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

I know you're going to be eight years old in ten days' time!

I'm not quite sure any more what boys of your age like these days. I'd like to get you something you really like. For example, perhaps you'd like a computer game, or a model car, or a pair of rollerblades, or something else. Let me know what you like best and I'll post it to you so it arrives on your

birthday.

Write to me soon.

(79 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

appreciate (1.1):

are pleased with

gifts (1.1):

presents

extra income (1.3):

additional money

rattle (1.5):

make a noise

price (1.7):

sum, amount

gathered (1.13):

collected

was firmly stuck (1.14):

could not be moved

### 关键句型练习答案

A. See text.

B. 1. John is very busy, but I *was able* to speak to him on the phone yesterday.

2. *Could* you help me with this suitcase please?

3. I got a taxi and just *managed to* catch the last train home.

### 难点练习答案

1. save

2. sailed

3. buttoned/did

4. Eat

5. went

6. wrapped

7. wind

8. do

**Comprehension 理解**

## 1. (c)

文中第 1 段的最后两句 “Only very thrifty children manage to fill up a money box. For most of them, fifty pence is a small price to pay for a nice big bar of chocolate (但是能把储蓄罐装满的只有屈指可数的几个特别节俭的孩子。对大部分孩子来说,用 50 便士来买一大块好的巧克力,是算不了什么的)”,清楚说明 (c) They go straight to a sweet shop and spend it (他们直接去糖果店花掉它) 为正确选项;而 (a) They put it in their pockets (他们把钱放进他们的口袋里)、(b) They wait until their money boxes are full before spending it (待储钱罐放满后他们再花掉它) 和 (d) They spend a little of it on chocolate (他们花掉其中一小部分去买巧克力) 均与文中所表达意义不符,因此为错误选项。

## 2. (d)

文中第 10~11 行 “Instead he bought himself fifty pence worth of trouble. On his way to the sweet shop, he dropped his fifty pence and it bounced along the pavement and then disappeared down a drain (他却拿这钱给自己买了 50 便士的麻烦。在他去糖果店的路上,50 便士掉在地上,在人行道上跳了几下,掉进了阴沟里)”,清楚说明 (d) set out for the sweet shop, but lost it on his way (想去糖果店,但在路上把钱丢掉了) 为正确选项;而 (a) did not hear the writer's advice (并没有听作者的劝告)、(b) decided that saving it was more trouble than it was worth (认为把钱存起来太麻烦,不值得) 和 (c) waited

until the next day before deciding to spend it on sweets (等到第 2 天再决定用它去买糖果) 均与文中所表达意义不符, 因此为错误选项。

3. (a)

文中第 14 ~ 15 行 “The fire brigade was called and two fire fighters freed George using a special type of grease (有人打电话叫来消防队, 两位消防队员使用了一种特殊的润滑剂才使乔治得以解脱)”, 清楚说明 (a) George had his arm greased and was able to get it out of the drain (乔治的胳膊上被抹上润滑剂后, 他才能把胳膊从阴沟中抽出来) 为正确选项; 而 (b) George took his fire fighters and got some chocolate at the sweet shop (乔治领着消防队员, 在糖果店买了些巧克力)、(c) the lady who had failed to rescue George gave him a box of chocolate (未能救助乔治的那位太太给了他一盒巧克力) 和 (d) George was rewarded by the owner of the sweet shop for his trouble (由于乔治遇到的麻烦, 糖果店的老板娘奖赏了他) 均与文中意义不符, 因此为错误选项。

**Structure 结构**

4. (b)

文中第 6 ~ 7 行 “For most of them, fifty pence is a small price to pay for a nice big bar of chocolate (对大部分孩子来说, 用 50 便士来买一大块好的巧克力, 是算不了什么的)” 中的 “a small price” 为 “不多的钱”, 即表达出 “很划算, 算不了什么” 之意。本题 “not” 后表达出 “钱” 的概念, 而 “钱 (money)” 为不可数名词, 因此本题 (b) much 在此作代词, 为正确选项, 可视为其后省略了 “money” 一词; 而 (a) many 虽然也可作代词, 但只能用来修饰可数名词; (c) plenty 在此作形容词, 同其上下文所构成的 “is not

plenty to pay ...”表达出“不足以去买……”之意,显然与文中意义不符;(d) big 为形容词,其后缺少必要成分,如 (a big) amount of money 或 (big) enough,不足以表达出文中意义,因此为错误选项。

5. (b)

本题有关动词“advise”的使用。在“to advise (somebody) + that 从句”结构中,“that 从句”里通常需使用虚拟语气结构形式,即“(should) + 动词原形”形式,因此本题 (b) should save 为正确选项;由此 (a) saves、(c) would save 和 (d) was saving 均为错误选项。

6. (d)

文中第 10~11 行“On his way to the sweet shop, he dropped his fifty pence and ... (在他去糖果店的路上,50 便士掉在地上……)”中的“on one's way to some place”表达“在某人去某地的路上”之意。本题中的连词“when”可视倒装使用,即按正常的句子结构形式应将“when”用于本题主句“He \_\_\_\_\_ to the sweet shop ...”之前,这样可以清楚地看出 (d) was going 可用来表达出文中该句意义,因此为正确选项;而 (a) had gone 为过去完成时,用于表达过去某一时间或动作之前已完成的动作,本选项的时态使用有误;(b) was going to go 表示“本打算,准备做”之意,与文中该句意义不符;(c) went 为一般过去时,通常用来表示过去发生过的动作,不能表达出文中该句所表达出的“在,正在”的含义,因此为错误选项。

7. (a)

本题有关使用“nor (也不)”和“neither (也不)”时的句子结构问题。使用“nor”和“neither”时,其后需使用倒装形式,因此本题 (a) nor could he 为正确选项;而 (b) nor he could、(c) neither he could 和 (d) either he could not 均为

错误选项。

8. (c)

文中第 14 行 “... and a lady rubbed his arm with soap and butter ... (……一位女士在乔治胳膊上抹了肥皂、黄油……)” 中的 “to rub ... with ...” 表示 “用……涂抹……” 之意。用动词 “put” 表达此意时, 通常将其构成 “to put ... on ... (把……放在……上)” 的结构形式, 因此本题 (c) soap and butter on his arm 为正确选项; 这样, (a) on his arm soap and butter、(b) his arm on soap and butter 和 (d) on his arm with soap and butter 有误, 故均为错误选项。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (a)

文中第 3~4 行 “With some children, small sums go a long way (对于有些孩子来说, 少量的钱可以花很长一段时间)” 中的 “to go a long way” 为 “可以花很长一段时间” 之意, 因此 (a) last a long time (延续很长一段时间) 为正确选项; 而 (b) are very durable (非常经久耐用) 通常用来表示 “某物由于非常结实而经久耐用” 之意, (c) have far to go 表示 “还有很长的路要走”, (d) gain in value 表示 “增值”, 均不能用于表达文中该句意义, 因此为错误选项。

10. (c)

文中第 13~14 行 “A crowd of people gathered round him ... (在他周围围上了许多人……)” 中的 “to gather round ...” 意为 “在……周围聚集”, 因此本题 (c) in a circle (环绕一周地) 为正确选项; 而 (a) on a tour (在旅行中)、(b) in turn (轮流地, 反过来地) 和 (d) in a cycle (以一个周期地) 均不能表达出文中该句的含义, 因此为

错误选项。

11. (b)

据文中第 14 行 "... but George was firmly stuck(……但乔治的胳膊仍然卡得紧紧的)", (b) well and truly (的确, 真的) 为正确选项; 而 (a) strictly (严格地, 严厉地)、(c) hardly (几乎不, 不十分) 和 (d) by no means (根本不, 决不) 显然均不能用来表达文中该句含义, 因此为错误选项。

12. (b)

就文中第 15 ~ 16 行 "George was not too upset by his experience ... (此事并没使乔治过于伤心……)" 中 "upset (使伤心)" 这一意义而言, (b) distressed (伤心的) 为正确选项; 而 (a) moved (感动的)、(c) excited (激动的) 和 (d) embarrassed (困惑的, 尴尬的) 均不能用来表达文中该句含义, 因此为错误选项。

# Lesson 16

## Mary had a little lamb

### 玛丽有一头小羔羊

1

写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Mary told Dimitri—came home—lamb stolen
2. Dimitri learned, neighbour Aleko—a new lamb
3. Dimitri—to Aleko's house
4. Accused Aleko—stealing lamb
5. Aleko showed Dimitri new lamb
6. Black
7. Dimitri—apologized
8. Stayed in Aleko's house—rain
9. Surprise—went outside—lamb almost white
10. Lamb—dyed black

#### 摘要写作参考答案

*When* Dimitri came home, Mary told him that her white lamb had been stolen. *On* learning that his neighbour, Aleko, had acquired a lamb, Dimitri went to Aleko's house *and* accused him of stealing it. *When* Aleko showed his lamb, Dimitri saw it was black, *so* he apologized. *After* staying in Aleko's house for a while because it had begun to rain, Dimitri got a surprise outside *when* he found the lamb was almost

white. It had been dyed black!

(80 words)

### 作文参考答案

#### Not so black

Dimitri was surprised to find that the lamb had turned white. He took a close look at it and recognized it as his own.

This discovery immediately led to an angry scene between Dimitri and Aleko. Dimitri repeated his accusation that Aleko had stolen the lamb, but Aleko still denied any theft. During the violent argument, Dimitri said the rain had proved that the lamb had been dyed black and he recognized it immediately as the one he had given to his wife. When Aleko finally admitted he had stolen the lamb, Dimitri called the police. Aleko was arrested and Dimitri took his lamb home.

The story caused a lot of excitement in the village. The villagers didn't often have the opportunity to talk about such an important event and they were greatly amused by what had happened. Some thought Aleko had been very clever. Others thought he had been extremely stupid. Others said God had sent the rain to punish Aleko for his crime and to prove he was a thief. They discussed the event at great length for a long time, as there wasn't much else to talk about in a village where nothing much ever happened.

(199 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

1. *A prize you have won*: You know I entered a competition some time ago and I'm sure you will be really pleased to

share my good news.

(22 words)

2. *An examination you have passed*: Yesterday the postman delivered a large brown envelope containing my exam results and I was very nervous when I opened it. The agony is over!

(25 words)

2

### 词汇练习参考答案

tiny (1.1):	very small
fetch (1.4):	get
missing (1.5):	gone
acquired (1.10):	got, obtained
denied (1.11):	said it wasn't true
apologized (1.13):	said he was sorry
dyed (1.16):	coloured

### 关键句型练习答案

A. See text.

B. 1. *We continued asking/We continued* to ask questions about what had happened.

2. *Let's go* swimming this afternoon.

3. *This shirt needs* ironing.

4. *Excuse my asking*, but how much did you pay for those shoes?

## 难点练习答案

1. We'd better have lunch.
2. She'd better renew her passport.
3. You'd better not ask so many questions.
4. We'd better not stay any longer.
5. The children had better get an early night.
6. I'd better consult my solicitor.

## 8

### 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

##### 1. (c)

文中第3~4行“*She kept it tied to a tree in a field during the day and went to fetch it every evening* (白天, 玛丽把羔羊拴在地里的一棵树上, 每天晚上把它牵回来)”, 表明本题(c) *bring her lamb back home for the night* (把羔羊牵回家过夜) 为正确选项; 而(a) *cut the lamb from the rope it had been tied on* (剪断捆绑羔羊的绳子上而放开羔羊)、(b) *untie the lamb so it could wander in the field at night* (解下羔羊, 这样它晚上就可以在地里四处溜达) 和(d) *make sure that her lamb was not missing* (查看她的羔羊是不是丢了) 均与文中所述意义不符, 因此为错误选项。

##### 2. (b)

文中第8~9行“*He knew it would not prove difficult in such a small village* (他知道在这样一个小村庄里抓住小偷并不困难)”, 表明(b) *news travels fast in a small village* (消息很快就会在一个小村子里传开) 可以作为“抓住小偷并不难 (*It would not be difficult to find the*

thief)”的原因,因此可视为本题的正确选项;而(a) the lamb had been one of Mary's prize possessions (这只羔羊一直是玛丽最珍贵的财产之一)并不能视为“抓住小偷并不难”的原因;而对(c) Dimitri had a lot of friends in the village (迪米特里在村子里有许多朋友)文中并没有说明;因为在丢失羔羊后,迪米特里并不知道要下雨,因此(d) the rain would soon wash the black dye off the lamb (这场雨很快就会冲去羔羊身上的黑颜色)也不能视为“抓住小偷并不难”的原因。

### 3. (b)

文中第13行“Ashamed of having acted so rashly, Dimitri apologized to Aleko for having accused him (迪米特里为自己的卤莽而感到不好意思,向阿列科道了歉,说是错怪了他)”,说明本题(b) Dimitri admitted that the lamb could not be his wife's (迪米特里承认那只羔羊不会是他妻子的)为正确选项;而(a) he was truthful about how he had acquired the lamb but not about its colour (他对如何搞到那只羔羊讲了实话,但对它的颜色说了谎)、(c) it was clear that the lamb had been dyed black (显然那只羔羊被染上了颜色)和(d) it started to rain before Dimitri had time to identify the lamb as his (迪米特里还没认出那只羔羊是他的羊时就开始下起了雨)均非“最初阿列科让迪米特里在他的院子里看到那只羔羊时(When Aleko first showed Dimitri the lamb in his backyard)”所发生的情况。

## Structure 结构

### 4. (d)

本题有关同位语的使用方法问题。就本题而言,即对表示地点的名词“Perachora (波拉考拉)”作进一步的说明。

由于该词在文中第一次提到,因此需使用非限定性冠词“a”,即本题的(d) a 为正确选项;同位语是用一个名词或名词性短语对另一个名词或名词性短语作出的进一步说明,因此用介词短语表达的(a) in a 和(c) in the 均为错误选项;表示限定意义的定冠词“the”通常用于说话人与听话人均明了的名词前,在文中通常用于再一次提到的名词之前,因此(b) the 也为错误选项。

5. (d)

本题有关动词同介词的搭配使用以及定语从句与先行词之间的关系问题。(a) present 为形容词,用来表示“出席的,在场的”之意;(b) presented 在题中作过去分词的被动语态,其后应使用介词“by”;(c) presenting 在题中作现在分词的主动语态,即表示出该动词“present”动作由表示“a little white lamb”的“which”做出,因此(a)、(b)和(c)均为错误选项。(d) a present 中的“present”作名词用表示“礼物”之意,“a present from somebody”表示“由某人送的礼物”,因此本题(d)为正确选项。

6. (c)

本题有关形容词性物主代词在相关句子结构中的使用问题。在使用此类代词时需有具体所指,表示出“某人的”含义。一般情况下,当给予一个人的具体名称之后,如在下文表达“该人的……”这一含义时,应使用形容词性物主代词,即 my (我的)、your (你的,你们的)、his (他的)、her (她的) 等来表示。但在本题这样的句子结构中,应注意这样的形容词性物主代词需用于所指的具体人名之前,因此本题(c) Mary told him 为正确选项,而不能说 On Mary's husband's return, she told him what had happened;而(a) his wife told him、(b) she told Dimitri 和(d) Dimitri was told 中主语同介词短语中的形容词性物

主代词“her”间的关系指代不明。

7. (d)

本题有关副词与形容词和形容词与名词的结构搭配问题。“such”为形容词词性,用其修饰前面附有形容词修饰的可数名词时,需构成“such a + 形容词 + 名词”这样的结构,因此(a) a such small 的结构有误;本题中的“size”为可数名词,使用时需在其前加不定冠词,(b) so small 选项中缺少不定冠词,因此为错误选项;(c) the smallest (size) 最(小),与文中语义不符;“so”为副词词性,用其修饰后面附有可数名词的形容词时,需构成“so + 形容词 + a + 名词”结构,因此(d) so small a 为正确选项。

8. (b)

本题有关条件状语从句中的时态的使用问题。题中的“if”为从属连词,引导条件状语从句,其前省略了引导宾语从句的连词“that”,勿将此“if”视为引导间接引语、表示“是否”意义的连词。在条件状语从句中,通常使用一般时态表达将来时含义,即在表达一般将来时态时,使用一般现在时;在表达过去将来时态时,使用一般过去时,因此本题(b) did not return 为正确选项;而(a) was not returning、(c) has not returned 和(d) had not returned 均在时态使用上有误。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (a)

文中第2行“One of Mary’s prize possessions was . . . (玛丽最珍贵的财产之一……)”中的“prize”作形容词,表示“珍贵的,宝贵的”之意,因此本题(a) valued (珍贵的)为正确选项;而(b) worthwhile (值得的)、(c) worthy (可

钦佩的,高尚的)和(d) expensive (昂贵的)均不能确切表达出文中“prize”的含义。

10. (b)

文中第9行“After telling several of his friends about the theft ... (他把失窃的事告诉几个朋友后……)”用动词“tell”表达“告诉某人某事”之意时,通常使用“to tell somebody about something”这样的结构。此外,在动词“tell”后,通常需接所告诉的人,因此(a) telling为错误选项;用动词“express”时,其后的宾语通常不能使用表示具体事物/行为的名词,如所告之的内容为具体事物/行为,则通常需使用“to express oneself to somebody on something”这样的结构形式,因此(c) expressing为错误选项;动词“count”多用来表达“数,计算;认为”等含义,与文中意义不符,因此(d) counting为错误选项;用动词“report”表达上述意义时,使用“to report something/somebody to somebody”这一结构形式,因此本题(b) reporting为正确选项。

11. (c)

文中第13~14行“While they were talking ...”为“就在他俩说话的时候……”之意。除(c) conversation (谈话)能表达出该含义外,(a) chat (聊天,闲谈)、(b) argument (争论,辩论)和(d) speech (演讲,演说)均不能用来确切表达文中所述意义,故(a)、(b)和(d)均为错误选项。

12. (a)

文中第14~15行“When he went outside half an hour later ...”为“半小时后,当他从屋里出来时……”之意。本题只有(a) (went) out of doors (〈走〉出去)能用来表

达文中意义;而 (b) (went) into the open (〈走〉到户外)、(c) (went) in the open air (在户外〈走动〉) 和 (d) inside out (里面朝外地, 翻面地) 均不能用来表达文中意义, 故均为错误选项。

# Lesson 17

## The longest suspension bridge in the world

### 世界上最长的吊桥

#### 1 写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Verrazano Bridge—Brooklyn—Staten Island
2. 4,260 feet span
3. Two great towers
4. Support four huge cables
5. Built on platforms—steel and concrete
6. Over 100 feet under the sea
7. Nearly 700 feet above surface
8. Bridge—suspended from—four cables
9. Each cable—26,108 lengths of wire
10. Very strong
11. Simple and elegant

#### 摘要写作参考答案

The Verrazano Bridge, *which* joins Brooklyn to Staten Island, has a span of 4,260 feet. *Its* two great towers support four huge cables. The towers are built on platforms made of steel and concrete, *extending* over 100 feet under the sea *and rising* nearly 700 feet above the surface of the water. The

bridge is suspended from four huge cables, *each of which* contains 26,108 lengths of wire. It is *not only* very strong, *but* simple and elegant *as well*.

(80 words)

### 作文参考答案

The bridge I know best is called the *Sydney Harbour Bridge*. It joins *either side of Sydney Harbour*. From far away it looks like *a great arch*, but when you get near, *you can see a great deck under the arch*. It is made of steel and supported by *two towers*. If you stand on the bridge early in the morning, you can see *the Parramatta River to the west and the open sea to the east*. At this time everything is quiet. During the day, however, *the harbour becomes busy with small boats and large ships moving in all directions*. I enjoy standing on the bridge at night when *you see the magnificent Opera House looking like a great sailing ship*. In the darkness you can see *the city lights*. In the stillness *the traffic and the movement of the sea* are the only sounds that can be heard.

(150 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

Here are a few directions ahead of your visit next week.

To be here for lunch, take the 12.15 train from the main station and get off at West Hill. From there you can get a 27 bus just outside the station and get off at Park Avenue. When you come out of the station, take the first road on your left. My house is number 36 which is clearly marked.

I look forward to seeing you next week.

(79 words)

## 词汇练习参考答案

agreeable situation (1.3):	nice location
in the midst (11.3-4):	in the middle of, between which
considered (1.5):	thought
remain immortal (1.6):	never die
span (1.9):	extent, arch
taken into account (1.9):	taken into consideration, con- sidered
support (1.10):	hold

## 关键句型练习答案

See text.

## 难点练习答案

1. He is believed to have owned...
2. The Minister declared the treaty to be...
3. I know him to be...
4. I guess him to be...
5. We estimated this picture to be...

## Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

就文中第 4~7 行 “Though Verrazano is by no means considered to be a great explorer, his name will probably

remain immortal, for on November 21st, 1964, the longest suspension bridge in the world was named after him (虽然维拉萨诺绝对算不上一个伟大的探险家,但他的名字将流芳百世,因为1964年11月21日建成的一座世界上最长的吊桥是以他的名字命名的)”,清楚说明本题 (d) it has been given to the world's longest suspension bridge (世界上最长的吊桥以其命名)为正确选项;而 (a) it was after he discovered New York Harbour that a bridge was built (在他发现了纽约港之后才建成一座大桥)、(b) he named the river that the new bridge crosses (他为这座新大桥所跨越的河流命名)和 (c) he was an explorer of considerable means (他是一个非常有名的探险家)均与文中意义不符,并且不能作为本题“Verrazano's name will probably remain immortal (维拉萨诺的名字很可能将流芳百世)”的原因,因此均为错误选项。

2. (a)

(a) it had to cover a wide stretch of water (它必须得横跨过宽宽的河水)为本题“The Verrazano Bridge was built with so wide a span (维拉萨诺大桥的跨度非常大)”的原因,因此为正确选项;而 (b) of the unusual shape of the earth around Brooklyn and Staten Island (〈因为〉布鲁克林与斯塔顿岛周围异常的地表形状)、(c) the water that lies between Brooklyn and Staten Island is very deep (布鲁克林与斯塔顿岛间的河水非常深)和 (d) the number of wires in each cable is so great (每一根钢缆的钢绳数量非常多)均不能作为该桥跨度之大的原因,因此为错误选项。

3. (a)

文中第9~10行“The bridge is so long that the shape of

the earth had to be taken into account by its designer (由于桥身太长,设计者不得不考虑地表的形状)”,清楚说明 (a) had to account for the curvature of the earth's surface (不得不考虑地表的曲度)为本题的正确选项;而 (b) spent over a year building the platforms that form the bridge's base (用了一年多的时间修建构成桥基的平台)、(c) had to consider the number of vehicles that might cross the bridge at any one time (不得不考虑每一刻可能穿过大桥的汽车数量)和 (d) wished to reduce the size of the bridge as much as possible (希望尽可能使大桥小一些)均与文中所表述的意义不符,因此为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (a)

如文中第2~3行“He described it as ‘a very agreeable situation located . . .’ (他对该港作了这样的描述:‘地理位置十分适宜……’)”中的动词“describe”一词的使用方法那样,在用该词表达“把……形容为/说成是……”这一概念时,需构成“to describe . . . as . . .”这一形式。由于“as”为介词,因此其后的动词需构成该动词的“-ing”形式。这样,本题 (a) as being very agreeably 为正确选项;而 (b) was very agreeable to be、(c) very agreeably having been 和 (d) very agreeably as being 结构均使用不当,因此为错误选项。

#### 5. (a)

文中第8行“The Verrazano Bridge, which was designed by Othmar Ammann . . . (维拉萨诺大桥由奥斯马·阿曼设计……)”中的“was designed”为对过去一个动作的描述,因此使用了一般过去时。但本题为陈述一个事实,因此需使用一般现在时来表达。这样,(a) is 为正确选项;

而 (b) was、(c) were 和 (d) has been 的时态以及选项 (c) 的单复数形式均使用有误。

6. (b)

本题 (b) such that 为正确选项。文中第 9~10 行 “The bridge is so long that the shape of the earth had to be taken into account by its designer (由于桥身太长, 设计者不得不考虑地表的形状)” 中的 “so ... that ...” 结构同本题中的 “such ... that ...” 结构含有 “太……以至于……” 这样的含义。用 “such ... that ...” 结构表达文中意义时, 可将该句变为 “It is such a long bridge that the shape of the earth ...”。表达此意义的 “such ... that ...” 多用于较正式的文体中; (a) so that 中的副词 “so” 后缺少必须的被修饰成分, 即句子的主语补语部分, 将其构成如 “so great that” 后方完整; (c) that which 构成的定语从句, 不能表达出文中 “太……以至于……” 这样的含义; (d) thus 一词为副词, 不能用来引导一个完整的句子。

7. (d)

本题有关若干个形容词置于一名词前使用时的顺序问题。由于本题中使用的两个形容词 “immense (巨大的)” 和 “ferro-concrete (钢筋混凝土的)” 分别说明被修饰名词的 “制作原料” 和 “大小”, 按一般形容词排列顺序, (d) immense ferro-concrete platforms 为正确选项。而 (a) ferro-concrete immense platforms 中的两个形容词的排列顺序有误。(b) immense made of ferro-concrete platforms 和 (c) and made of ferro-concrete immense platforms 则是基本的句子构成有误, 如在本题 “built on” 之后只能使用名词或名词性短语, 而 (b) 中的 “immense” 为形容词, (c) 中的 “and” 则为连词。这两个选项的正确

排列形式均为:immense platforms made of ferro-concrete。

8. (d)

文中第 14~15 行 “It has been estimated that if the bridge were packed with cars, it would still only be carrying a third of its total capacity (据估计,若桥上摆满了汽车,也只不过是〈在承载〉桥的总承载力的 1/3)” 中的主语从句为虚拟条件状语从句,“were packed with”和“would be carrying”为该虚拟从句所使用的动词结构形式。本题的连词“even if (即使)”用来引导让步状语从句。虽然从句中的“were packed”和主句中的“could + 动词形式”也可用来构成虚拟结构,但是本题中的“could”用来表示“能够”含义,其后不能如 (a) be carrying 那样,使用动词的进行时结构形式;由于“can (could)”不能与“be able to”一起使用,因此 (b) be able to carry 为错误选项;就语义而言,(c) only carry 中的副词“only (仅仅)”与连词“even if (即使)”相矛盾,因此也为错误选项;这样,只有用选项 (d) carry 构成的句子结构形式能够用来表达出文中该句的意义,因此为正确选项。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (a)

文中第 3~4 行为 “a very agreeable situation located within two small hills (地理位置十分适宜,位于两座小山的中间)”,这样 (a) on either side (在每一边有一座小山) 能够确切表达出文中该句所要表达的意义,因此为正确选项;而 (b) on every side 表达出在每一边有两座小山”的含义,显然与文中所要表达的意义不符,因此为错误选项;(c) besides (而且,此外) 和 (d) side by side (肩并肩,一起) 均属于用词、短语不当,故也为错误选项。

10. (c)

本题有关若干动词的使用问题。文中第 8 行 “The Verrazano Bridge, which was designed by Othmar Ammann, joins Brooklyn to Staten Island (维拉萨诺大桥由奥斯马·阿曼设计, 连接着布鲁克林与斯塔顿岛)” 中的 “to join ... to ...” 表示 “将……同……相连接” 之意。本题 (c) links 为正确选项。使用动词 “link” 表达上述含义时, 如题中那样, 需构成 “to link ... with ...” 这样的结构形式; 使用选项 (a) 中的动词 “attaches” 也可以表达出上述含义, 但需构成 “to attach ... to ...” 这样的结构形式; (b) unifies (把……合为一体), 使用该动词时, 通常用有生命的名词作主语, 其后直接连接被合为一体的人或物; (d) relates (使……联系在一起), 通常构成 “to relate ... to ...” 这样的结构形式。将此动词同介词 “with” 搭配使用时, 通常表示 “符合, 相一致” 之意。

11. (c)

本题 (c) suspension 为正确选项。虽然就语义而言, (a) 中的 “suspended (垂悬的, 被吊起的)” 能够讲通, 但不符合习惯用法。“suspension bridge” 专用来表示 “悬索桥, 吊桥” 之意; (b) 中的 “suspense” 作形容词时表示 “令人担心的, 产生悬念的”, 因此为错误选项; (d) 中的 “suspender” 用来修饰名词时, 通常表示 “吊袜带的”。

12. (d)

文中第 14 行 “It has been estimated that if the bridge were packed with cars ...” 中的 “to be packed with cars” 表示 “摆满汽车” 之意。本题 (d) take 为正确选项。“take” 在这里表示 “容纳” 之意, 即 (直译) “如果这座大桥尽其所能地承载汽车”; 而 (a) sustain (支撑, 承受) 所表达出的 “所能承受的最大的汽车数量” 之意, 显然与文中要表达

的“摆满汽车”之意不符；(b) endure (忍耐, 忍受) 和 (c) receive (接收) 所表达的语义明显有误, 故均为错误选项。

## Lesson 18

### Electric currents in modern art

#### 现代艺术中的电流

#### 1 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. Writer entered art gallery—saw notice }
2. Forbade—people touch exhibits—dangerous }
3. Exhibition—consisted—moving sculpture }
4. Writer saw—long thin wires—metal spheres against wall }
5. Spheres attracted—repelled each other }
6. Tall structures—centre of hall—contained coloured lights }
7. On and off }
8. Sparks emitted—black boxes }
9. Red lamps—on and off }

##### 摘要写作参考答案

On entering the art gallery, the writer saw a notice *which* forbade people to touch the exhibits *because* they were dangerous. The exhibition consisted of pieces of moving sculpture. Against a wall, the writer saw long thin wires attached to metal spheres *which* attracted and repelled each other. In the centre of the hall were tall structures *containing*

coloured lights *which* went on and off. Sparks were emitted from small black boxes *and* red lamps flashed on and off.

(79 words)

### 作文参考答案

#### An interesting exhibition

Recently I went to the Royal Academy in London to see the summer exhibition. The work of many artists was on display and the exhibition aroused a lot of public interest. Crowds of people filled the galleries.

The pictures were, with a few exceptions, mainly by relatively unknown artists. Many of them were traditional pictures of landscapes and portraits. I particularly liked a picture of an old farmhouse by a stream with a few sheep in a field. The strangest picture I saw was an untitled abstract painting by a well-known modern artist. It consisted of swirls of different colours which had been rubbed into the canvas with the artist's fingers. The picture looked a mess, but was also very effective, attracting a lot of comment.

I couldn't help overhearing what people said, things like 'I could paint a picture like that with my eyes shut' or 'Look how perfect the sunset is in that painting. I'd love to own a picture like that', and so on. There is no doubt it was an excellent exhibition because there were so many different styles on display. There was something to suit everyone, but only if you could afford the high prices!

(200 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

Thank you so much for your kind invitation to the exhibition, 'Ancient Xi'an and the Terracotta Army', now on at the British Museum in London. I'd love to join you and look forward to seeing you again. I'm particularly interested in this exhibition because it has been so well received and I've heard so much about it. It's a unique opportunity to see it. I'll meet you at the entrance to the exhibition at 2.15 on Thursday, 24th.

(78 words)

2

## 词汇练习参考答案

on display (1.4):	exhibited, on view
oddly (1.10):	peculiarly, strangely
suspended (1.11):	hung
response (1.11):	answer
familiar (1.11):	well-known
attached (1.12):	connected to
flickered continuously (1.15):	shone unsteadily all the time

## 关键句型练习答案

See text.

## 难点练习答案

ladies, supplies, valleys, qualifies, stories, days, says, replies, marries, ways, chimneys, hurries, stays, enjoys, buys, bodies, buries, fries

**Comprehension 理解**

## 1. (d)

文中第 6~7 行 “Some so-called ‘modern’ pieces have been on display for nearly eighty years (有些所谓的‘现代’艺术品在那里已经陈列了近八十年了)”, 清楚说明本题 (d) museums have been exhibiting it for nearly eighty years (博物馆展出现代雕塑已近八十年了) 为正确选项, 即正是由于其年代的久远而几乎不再使我们感到惊讶; 而 (a) even if not in museums, we see it in and around other public places (即使不在博物馆, 我们可以在其他公共场所里及其周围见到现代雕塑)、(b) despite people’s lack of interest in art, it is put on display (即便人们对艺术不感兴趣, 现代雕塑仍向人们展出) 和 (c) people not only display it in their houses but in their gardens also (人们不仅在他们的住所里而且在他们的花园中展示现代雕塑), 均为错误的或不完全的选项, 未能完全、准确地说明作者想要说明的现代雕塑几乎不再使我们感到惊讶的原因。

## 2. (c)

本题有关对文中所述内容的综合性理解和概述。(c) The way in which electrical energy was used to produce mobile effects (电能被用来产生移动效果的方式) 为正确选项。而 (a) The fact that people were forbidden to touch the exhibits (人们被禁止触摸展品这一事实) 和 (b) The oddly shaped forms that were suspended from the ceiling (悬挂在天花板上的奇特造型), 仅是使作者感到惊奇的个别细节, 不全面。(d) The prehistoric electronic

equipment used to activate the exhibits (被用来启动展品的古老的电子设备) 与文中意义完全不符。文中第 16 行 “It was rather like an exhibition of prehistoric electronic equipment (这儿倒像是在展览古老的电子设备)” 中所使用的明喻手法说明 “prehistoric electronic equipment (古老的电子设备)” 并非事实。

3. (d)

如上一题那样, 本题也是有关对文中所述内容的综合性理解和概述。(d) such that one could not pass them unnoticed though it seemed wiser to pass them untouched (那些虽然经过它们时最好不要触摸但又使人在经过时不能不注意到的雕塑品) 为正确选项; 而 (a) noticed because they were dangerous (为人所注意, 因为它们很危险)、(b) either hung on wires or built into the middle of the hall (不是挂在电线上就是建在大厅的中央) 和 (c) flickering continuously with different coloured lights (装着彩色的灯泡, 在不停地闪烁) 均表述得不全面。

**Structure 结构**

4. (c)

本题有关时态的使用。题中 “ago (以前)” 的使用确定了本题需使用一般过去时态, 因此 (c) were first 为正确选项; 而 (a) have been、(b) are first 和 (d) had been 分别为现在完成时、一般现在时和过去完成时所应使用的结构形式, 因此均为错误选项。

5. (c)

本题有关名词 “arrival (到达)” 和 “entrance (门口, 入口处)”、动词 “enter (进入)” 和 “arrive (到达)” 与介词的搭配使用问题。(c) at the entrance 为正确选项。在用 “entrance” 表达 “门口, 入口处” 意义时, 通常需构成 “at

the entrance to ...”这样的结构形式；在用“arrival”表达“在某人到达……”意义时，通常需根据所到达处的大小等，构成“on one's arrival at/in/on ...”这样的结构形式；在用动词“enter”表达“进入”意义时，它为及物动词，其后需直接跟随名词，而不使用任何介词；在用动词“arrive”表达“到达”意义时，通常需根据所到达处的大小等，构成“to arrive at/in ...”这样的结构形式。由于本题 (a) 中的名词“arrival”、(b) 中的动词“enter”和 (d) 中的动词“arrive”的搭配有误，因此均为错误选项。

6. (b)

本题有关动词“prohibit (禁止)”的使用方法。在用“prohibit”表达“禁止某人做某事”这一意义时，通常需构成“to prohibit somebody from doing something”这样的结构形式，因此 (b) from touching 为正确选项；表达此概念时，其后不能使用诸如 (a) to touch 和 (d) not to touch 这样的动词不定式的肯定和否定形式；而其后直接使用动词的“-ing”形式如 (c) 中的“touching”时，动词“prohibit”则表示“妨碍”之意。

7. (a)

文中第 13 行“The spheres had been magnetized and attracted or repelled each other all the time (金属球经过磁化，互相之间不停地相互吸引或相互排斥)”中，虽然使用了并列连词“and”对句中的动词“magnetize”和“attract/repel”进行连接，但就语义而言，“and”之后的部分表达出结果含义。因此，使用引导结果状语从句的复合连词“so that”的 (a) so that they 为正确选项；(b) so they were 中的连词“so”虽然也用来引导结果状语从句，但其后所用的语态有误，而使其语义与文中所表达的语义出现极大差异；(c) so as they had 中所使用的复合连词“so as”多用

来引导条件或目的状语,表示“只要,这样,以便”之意,因此所表达出的语义与文中意义不符;(d) in order that they 中的复合连词“in order that”仅可用来引导目的状语,不能用来引导结果状语从句。

8. (d)

本题有关复合连词“both ... and ...”在句子结构中的使用问题。一般说来,在使用“both ... and ...”时,要注意“both”后所使用的句子成分应与“and”后所使用的句子成分相一致,因而本题 (d) seemed designed both 为正确选项,即在“both”和“and”后均使用了由“to”引导的动词不定式作目的状语;而 (a) both seemed designed、(b) seemed both designed 和 (c) seemed both designed and 属于“both”和“and”后的语句成分搭配不一致问题,故均为错误选项。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (d)

文中第 10~11 行 “... forms that are suspended from the ceiling and move in response to a gust of wind are ... (……是悬挂在天花板上、造型奇特、随风飘荡的……)” 中的“in response to a gust of wind”表示“随(着一阵)风”之意,因此(d) at the slightest breath (在稍微有一点风的情况下)为正确选项;而 (a) at one blow (一下子,突然)、(b) all of a sudden (突然) 和 (c) with a light touch (轻轻一触,稍微地)均不能用来表达文中意义。

10. (a)

文中第 15 行 “Sparks were emitted from small black boxes ... (小黑盒子里迸出火花……)” 中的动词“emit”为“放射,迸出”之意,因此本题 (a) gave off (发出) 为正确选项。而 (b) sent by 仅构成起定语作用的过去分词短语,

表示出“由……送/放出”之意；(c) gave over 为“交出”之意；(d) throw off 虽然可用来表达“发,放射出”之意,但应使用过去时态“threw off”来表示。因此 (b)、(c) 和 (d) 均为错误选项。

11. (b)

本题 (b) illuminated (照亮) 为正确选项,过去分词,在句中作定语。而 (a) enlightened 为“启迪,启发”之意,语义与文中意义不符。(c) alighted 一词的词性有误。在表达上述意义时,“alight”只能作形容词使用,表示“燃烧着的,点亮着的”之意。(d) burning 中的“burning”为现在分词,表示“正在燃烧的”之意,也为错误选项。

12. (c)

文中第 17 行 “These peculiar forms not only seemed designed to shock people emotionally . . . (这些奇形怪状的展品不仅是为了给人感情上的强烈刺激……)” 中的 “designed” 一词作形容词使用,不含有被动意义,表示“故意的,蓄意的”之意,因此具有同样用法和意义的 (c) intended 为正确选项;而 (a) drawn 和 (d) created 除词义与文中用词的语义有所不同外,由于它们为过去分词,还含有被动意义;虽然 (b) planned 可如“designed”和“intended”那样作为形容词来使用,但其语义“有计划的,预定的”与文中所表达意义不符,因此也为错误选项。

## Lesson 19

### A very dear cat

#### 一只贵重的宝贝猫

1

写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Mrs. Ramsay—anonymous letter—three days after cat's disappearance
2. Demanded £ 1, 000—return of cat
3. Never see cat again—if—went to the police
4. Money—cardboard box
5. Leave—outside door
6. Drew—£ 1, 000 from bank
7. Acted on kidnapper's instructions
8. Money disappeared following morning
9. Rastus returned—7 that evening

#### 摘要写作参考答案

Mrs. Ramsay received an anonymous letter three days after her cat's disappearance. The writer of the letter demanded £ 1, 000 for the return of the cat, *and* warned she would never see him again if she went to the police. She had to put the money in a cardboard box *and* leave it outside her door. *After* drawing £ 1, 000 from her bank, she acted on the kidnapper's instructions. The money disappeared the following morning,

and Rastus returned at seven o'clock that evening.

(80 words)

### 作文参考答案

In a bar one night, Mr. X was talking to a workman who told him that *he often worked in Mrs. Ramsay's flat*. The workman added that *Mrs. Ramsay was wealthy and she lived alone with her cat*. Every day, Mr. X stood outside *Mrs. Ramsay's block of flats*. As the cat *took a short walk every evening*, he saw that it had regular habits. He found out as much as he could about Mrs. Ramsay and learnt that *she loved this cat very much*. One evening, as the cat was leaving the block of flats, *he kidnapped it*. He took the cat to *a secret address*. During the next three days, he walked past Mrs. Ramsay's flat on several occasions and noticed that *no other cat ever appeared*. Now he was sure *he had the right cat*, so he wrote *a letter* in which he *stated his demands*.

(150 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

I haven't been in touch since I left school.

After passing my exams, I did a two-year course in business studies. At the end of it, I applied for a job with a local building firm and got a job immediately. I like it very much because I work in an office, but get out and about a lot as well. I hope to be promoted soon.

Thank you for all your help and advice while I was at school.

(80 words)

## 词汇练习参考答案

rarely (1.1):	seldom
considerable (1.2):	a great deal of
wealthy (1.3):	rich
worried (1.7):	concerned
stated (1.9):	said
changed her mind (1.13):	altered her opinion
word (1.15):	promise

## 关键句型练习答案

See text.

## 难点练习答案

Before going home, I went to the grocer's. Bill Smith, the man who always serves me, was very busy. This, however, did not worry me. On the contrary, it gave me the opportunity to look round for several things I wanted. By the time my turn came, I had already filled a basket with packets of biscuits, cans of fruit, bars of soap and two large bags of flour.

## Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

本题 (a) Mrs. Ramsay could and would pay a lot to her

only companion back (拉姆齐太太能够并且会为她惟一的同伴回来支付一大笔钱) 为本题“一些绑架者盯上了她的猫”的原因, 因此为本题的正确选项; 而就文中所述, (b) Mrs. Ramsay clearly loved her cat to have kept him so long (显然, 由于这只猫拉姆齐太太已养了很长时间, 她很爱它)、(c) Rastus was an orderly cat and would be easy to look after if kidnapped (拉斯特斯生活很有规律, 如果把它绑架, 照料它会很容易) 和 (d) Mrs. Ramsay missed her cat whenever he was not back home on time (每当它未能按时回家, 拉姆齐太太都要想它) 均非“一些绑架者盯上了她的猫”的原因。

2. (b)

文中第 11~13 行 “Mrs. Ramsay was instructed to place the money in a cardboard box and to leave it outside her door. At first she decided to go to the police, but fearing that she would never see Rastus again—the letter had made that quite clear—she changed her mind (他让拉姆齐太太把钱放在一个纸盒里, 然后将纸盒放在门口。一开始拉姆齐太太打算报告警察, 但又害怕再也见不到拉斯特斯了——这点, 信上说得十分明白——于是便改变了主意)”, 清楚表明本题 (b) Mrs. Ramsay was not to inform the police and had to pay £ 1,000 (拉姆齐太太不得向警方报告, 并且得付 1,000 英镑) 为正确选项; 而 (a) His name was not to be revealed and he wanted a ransom of £ 1,000 (不得公开他的姓名, 并且他要获取 1,000 英镑的赎金)、(c) Mrs. Ramsay had to leave her flat until the box with the money had gone (拉姆齐太太得在装钱的纸盒被取走后才能离开她的寓所) 和 (d) Mrs. Ramsay was to withdraw £ 1,000 from her bank and follow his

instructions (拉姆齐太太得从银行取出1,000英镑,并且按他的指令行事)均与文中所述意义不符或表述得不完全。

3. (a)

文中第17~18行“*She explained that Rastus was very dear to her. Considering the amount she paid, he was dear in more ways than one!* (拉姆齐太太解释说她心疼她的猫拉斯特斯。想到她所花的那笔钱,她的心疼就具有双重意义了!)”清楚表明,本题(a) *She was very fond of him and it had cost her a lot to get him back* (她非常喜欢它,而且赎它回来花去了她一大笔钱)为正确选项;而(b) *Besides the high ransom paid on his behalf, he drank a lot of milk* (除了赎它花了一大笔赎金外,它还喝了很多牛奶)、(c) *He was so dear that she had not dared to tell the police of the kidnapping* (她太疼爱它了,使她不敢告诉警察有关绑架的事)和(d) *He was very valuable and she valued him greatly* (它非常珍贵,她也极为珍视它)均与文中表述意义不符。

**Structure 结构**

4. (b)

本题有关时态的使用问题。本题所用时态为现在时,表明所述为现在的情况,在“*who*”引导的定语从句中,介词短语“*for a great many years*”表明动词“*share*”为一直延续到现在的动作,应使用现在完成时态,因此本题(b) *has shared* 为正确选项;而(a) *shares*、(c) *shared* 和(d) *had shared* 所用时态均有误。

5. (d)

本题有关 *no-*、*some-*、*every-*和 *any-*构成的合成词在句中的使用问题。*no-* 和 *some-*构成的合成词多用于肯定句

中: no-合成词用来表达否定意义, some-合成词用来表达肯定意义。 every-合成词多用于肯定句中, 虽然也可用于否定句中, 但这样使用时则并不能表达出全部否定的含义; any-合成词多用于疑问句和否定句中。在否定句中使用时, 通常表示出全部否定的含义。本题中使用了否定句 could not 的结构形式, 表达全部否定的意义, 因此 (d) anywhere 为正确选项。

6. (a)

文中第 11~12 行 “At first, she decided to go to the police ... (一开始她打算报告警察……)” 中的 “to decide to do something” 表示 “打算/决定做某事”, 而只有 (a) was to call 使用动词不定式短语作主语补语的这一结构形式才能够表达出上述含义, 因此为正确选项; (b) was calling 选项中所用的 “calling (the police)” 为动名词短语形式。虽然动名词 (短语) 在句中可作主语补语, 但多用于表示比较抽象的一般性行为, 而如本题中表示具体某次动作, 特别是将要做的动作时, 多用动词不定式 (短语) 形式; (c) she would call 中所用的从句形式和 (d) being to call 中所用的分词短语形式均不能用来完整地构成本题中的句子。

7. (b)

本题有关形容词 “afraid” 的使用方法。本题中 “afraid” 构成的短语形式, 在句中作原因状语, 作用相当于其前省略了 “being” 的分词短语。通常在形容词 “afraid” 后使用名词或名词性短语时, 需构成 “to be afraid of ...” 这样的结构形式; 其后使用从句时, 需构成 “to be afraid that ...” 这样的结构形式。由于题中 never seeing Rastus again 为动名词短语, 因此 (b) afraid of 为正确选项; 根据形容词

“afraid”的上述用法, (a) afraid 和 (d) afraid for 均为错误选项; 用 (c) for fear 表达本题意义时通常需将其构成“for fear that ...”这样的结构形式, “that”后应使用从句。

8. (d)

本题中的“considering”作介词使用。本题 (d) what a lot of 为正确选项。“what a lot of (money she paid)”为一名词性从句, 作介词宾语。使用 (a) the great 时, 应在其后跟随诸如“sum of”或“amount of”这样的结构形式; 由于“money”一词为不可数名词, 因此不能使用 (b) how many 中的“many”进行修饰; 在 (c) how much of 中, “how”为副词, 它所修饰的“much”为形容词, 其后应直接修饰名词“money”。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (d)

文中第 4 行 “Rastus leads an orderly life (拉斯特斯生活很有规律)”中的形容词“orderly”意为“有规律的”。只有选项 (d) disciplined 可用来表达此意; 而 (a) correct (正确的)、(b) measured (从容不迫的, 有节奏的) 和 (c) regular (一般的, 普通的) 在本题中均不能表达出文中“orderly”一词的含义。

10. (b)

文中第 4 ~ 5 行 “He usually takes a short walk in the evenings and ... (它傍晚常常出去溜达一会儿, 并且……)”中的 “to take a short walk”意为“散会儿步”。本题选项中只有 (b) (goes) for a stroll 可用来表达此意, 因此为正确选项; 而 (a) (goes) on a trek (〈乘牛车〉旅行)、(c) (goes) for a trot (骑马小跑) 和 (d) (goes) on foot

(步行)均与文中所述意义不符,因此为错误选项。

11. (c)

文中第 15 行 “Sure enough, Rastus arrived punctually at seven o'clock that evening (果然,当天晚上 7 点整,拉斯特斯准时回来了)”中的 “sure enough”意为“果然,正如所料”,因此本题 (c) As expected (正如所料) 为正确选项;而 (a) Certainly (当然,肯定无疑)、(b) Without a doubt (毫无疑问) 和 (d) As a matter of fact (事实上,实际上) 均为错误选项。

12. (a)

文中第 15~16 行 “He looked very well, though he was rather thirsty ... (它看上去一切正常,只是口渴得很……)”中的 “to look very well”意为“看上去很好,看上去很健康”,因此本题 (a) healthy (健康的) 为正确选项;而 (b) satisfied (满足的,满意的)、(c) good-looking (好看的,漂亮的) 和 (d) sane (心智健全的) 均为错误选项。

# Lesson 20

## Pioneer pilots

### 飞行员的先驱

#### 1

#### 写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Bleriot and Latham arrived Calais—July 21st, 1909
2. Looked as if—race
3. Take place—July 25th
4. Latham—not take part—failed to get up early enough
5. Bleriot—short test flight first
6. Thirty-seven minutes—across Channel
7. Policeman greeted him—arrived Dover
8. Latham—half a mile—Dover—following week
9. Landed on sea—second time—engine failed

#### 摘要写作参考答案

Bleriot and Latham arrived in Calais on July 21st, 1909. *Though* it looked as if there would be a race on July 25th, Latham didn't take part, *because* he didn't get up early enough. *After* making a short test flight, Bleriot crossed the Channel in thirty-seven minutes. A policeman greeted him *when* he arrived in Dover. Latham got within half a mile of Dover the following week, *having* to land on the sea a second time because his engine failed.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### My flight across the Channel

It was early morning. I looked around, but there was no sign of Latham, so I decided to go on a test flight first. At 4.15, I took off and flew over Calais for fifteen minutes. When I landed there was still no sign of Latham.

At 4.45 I took off again. This time I was determined to fly across the Channel. When I looked down there was no sign of the ship below, which was supposed to be following me. I suddenly felt alone and was worried whether I was flying in the right direction. All I could see was sea and sky. I could feel the high winds against the plane and the engine got very hot. Fortunately, it began to rain and the rain cooled my engine. Suddenly, I could see land ahead. Dover!

I flew over Dover, looking for somewhere to land. I saw a field below and brought the plane down. I was still sitting in the cockpit, hardly able to believe the flight was so successful—just thirty-seven minutes to cross from Calais—when a British policeman arrived. He smiled broadly at me and said, ‘Good morning!’ I smiled back and said, ‘Bonjour!’

(200 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

I just thought I'd tell you about my first flight!

At this moment, we are flying at 30,000 feet and at five hundred miles an hour. Below I can see a few clouds and miles of countryside. I couldn't imagine it would be so beautiful! I was nervous when the plane took off, but I'm all right now. We'll be arriving at our destination in three hours and forty

minutes.

I'll tell you all about the flight when I see you.

(80 words)

2

词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

forced to land (1.6):	obliged to come down
picked up (1.7):	rescued
completed (1.9):	finished, undertaken
covered (1.10):	completed, flown
test (1.13):	trial
set off (1.13):	started out, began his journey
failed (1.15):	didn't work, stopped

### 关键句型练习答案

- A. 1. What are you looking *at*?  
2. We have received fifty applications *in* all.  
3. I happened to *meet your friend Tom this morning*.  
4. It happened *that we were both travelling on the same train*.  
5. I suppose *you've travelled by plane lots of times*.  
6. He is supposed *to arrive here by 9*.  
7. I wish you *had told me you were going to be late*.  
8. I'd rather he *pretended he didn't know anything about it*.  
9. If I can save up enough money, *I'm going to buy a car*.

10. You had better *leave now if you want to catch the next train*.
11. I find him to *be highly intelligent*.
- B. 1. John explained the position to me.  
2. I described the film to my aunt.
- C. 1. *Not only* has he made this mistake before, but he will make it again.  
2. *Only then* did I realize what was happening.
- D. 1. impolite      2. disagree      3. illegible  
4. inaccurate      5. unlocked      6. irregular

### 3

#### Comprehension 理解

##### 1. (c)

本题 “In Hubert Latham’s first attempt to fly the English Channel(在休伯特·莱瑟姆初次尝试飞跃英吉利海峡的过程中)”, 就文中第 1 段所述意义, 只有 (c) his plane developed engine trouble only seven miles after take-off (他的飞机在起飞后仅飞行了 7 英里发动机就出了故障) 为正确选项; 而 (a) Lord Northcliffe offered a prize of £ 1,000 (诺斯克利夫勋爵拿出 1,000 英镑作为奖励, 时间与文中所述不符)、(b) his engine failed with only seven miles to go before reaching Dover (在只差 7 英里到达多佛时, 他的发动机出了故障, 出故障时的距离与文中所述不符) 和 (d) both Latham and his plane were rescued by a passing ship (莱瑟姆和他的飞机都被一只经过的船救起, 文中只说明了莱瑟姆获救的情况) 均为错误选项。

2. (b)

文中第 9~10 行 “A week before, he had completed a successful overland flight during which he covered twenty-six miles (一周以前,他曾成功地进行了一次 26 英里的陆上飞行)”, 清楚说明本题 (b) he had already flown overland the distance across the English Channel (他已在陆上飞行了飞跃英吉利海峡所需的路程)为正确选项;而 (a) he was flying a plane he had made in 1905 (他正驾驶着他 1905 年制作的飞机)、(c) he set out for Dover half an hour before Latham did (他在莱瑟姆出发去多佛前半个小时出发) 和 (d) he was arrested as soon as he landed in England (他刚降落在英格兰就被逮捕)均与文中所述意义不符。

3. (b)

文中第 14~16 行 “Latham made another attempt ... for the second time (莱瑟姆也作了一次尝试……第 2 次降落在海面上)” 所述, 清楚表明本题 (b) he had to make another forced landing (他不得不又一次迫降) 应作为 “Latham failed at his second attempt (莱瑟姆第 2 次尝试又未能成功)” 的原因; 而 (a) he did not get up early enough (他起晚了)、(c) he only got within half a mile of Dover (他只飞到了离多佛不到半英里的地方) 和 (d) his plane had not been repaired properly (他的飞机未能很好地修复)均不能作为“莱瑟姆第 2 次尝试又未能成功”的原因。

**Structure 结构**

4. (c)

文中第 1~2 行 “... the first man who would fly across the English Channel(……第一个飞越英吉利海峡的人)”

中的定语从句“who would fly across the English Channel”所使用的是过去将来时态,表示动词“fly”为过去将要发生的动作。据此,用动词不定式作定语而表示将要发生的动作的(c) to fly 为正确选项;(a) who was going to fly 中所使用的“to be going to do something”表示“打算/准备做某事”之意,与文中所述意义不符;(b) flying 中的“flying”所构成的现在分词短语,表示正在进行的动作,也与文中所述意义不同;(d) having flown 中“having + 动词的过去分词”形式表示动作已完成,因此所表达出的语义也与文中该句语义不同。

5. (a)

本题是有关介词“till/until”的用法。介词“till/until (直到)”含有延续性时间概念,当与表示短暂时间概念的动词一同使用时,需将该动词构成否定形式,但仍表达肯定含义。本题中的动词“make”即为表达短暂时间概念的动词,因此(a) was not made till 为正确选项;而使用了表达延续性时间状语的(b) was made in、(c) was made after 和(d) was made until 均为错误选项。

6. (c)

本题有关副词“just”与其相关时态的使用问题。本书以英国英语为模式,因此无论在文字拼写方面,还是在语言运用方面,均以英国英语为参照模式。有关本题中的副词“just”的使用正体现出这一特征。英国人在使用“just”时,通常将其与完成时态一同使用;而美国人在使用它时,通常仅将其与一般过去时态一同使用。正因为如此,本题(c) had just arrived 为正确选项;而(a) just arrived、(b) was just arriving 和(d) arrived just 均不符合英国人使用“just”时的习惯用法,因此被视为错误选项。此外,(d) arrived just 除在时态运用上不符合英国人的语言习

惯外,由于“just”所置位置的不同,使句子中被强调的新的语句信息有所不同,还产生语义上的差异。

7. (d)

文中第 11 ~ 12 行 “It looked as if there would be an exciting race across the Channel (看来会有一场激烈的飞越英吉利海峡的竞争)” 中的 “to look as if (看起来像)” 所表达出的含义可以用 “to promise + 动词不定式 (流露出……迹象, 很可能会)” 的结构形式表达出。用其表达此意义时,通常需使用 “promise” 的一般时态。因此本题 (d) promised 为正确选项; 而 (a) would promise、(b) would have promised 和 (c) was promising 均为错误选项。

8. (a)

本题 (a) This time 为正确选项。“this time (这一次)” 通常用来表示正在陈述的某一事情; 而 (b) That time (那一次) 通常用来表示正在陈述的某一事情之前已陈述说明过的另一事情; (c) When (在……时候) 为连词, 在此只能用来引导一时间状语从句; (d) Then (随后, 后来) 用来表明两个相继做出的动作的连贯性, 即用来表明先做出某一动作之后随之而做出的另一动作。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (c)

文中第 5 ~ 6 行 “He had travelled only seven miles across the Channel when his engine failed ... (他只在海峡上空飞行了 7 英里, 引擎就发生了故障……)” 中的 “only” 一词的含义只能用本题 (c) no further than 来表示; 而 (a) farther than 和 (d) a space of 所表达的语义显然与文中所要表达的语义不符; (b) no longer than 中所用的结构形式虽然与 “no further than” 相同, 但 “long” 一词通常

用来指长度,表达距离时需使用“far”。

10. (d)

文中第 7 行 “The ‘Antoinette’ floated on the water until Latham was picked up . . . (‘安特瓦奈特’号飞机在海上漂浮,直到……莱瑟姆方才获救) 中的 “to float on” 表示 “在……上漂浮” 之意,因此本题 (d) rode the waves (随浪移动) 为正确选项;而 (a) held water (吃水,盛得住水)、(b) was watertight (是密封的) 和 (c) stayed at sea (停留在海面上) 均与文中意义不符,故为错误选项。

11. (a)

就文中第 12 ~ 13 行 “After making a short test flight at 4.15 a. m., Bleriot set off half an hour later (布莱里奥凌晨 4 点 15 分做了一次短距离试飞,半小时后便正式出发了)”,表明 (a) to 所表示的 “差 1 刻 5 点” 为正确选项。用英语表达时刻时,用介词 “... to + 将到的钟点” 表达 “差……到几点” 的含义;用 “... past + 过去的钟点” 表达 “几点过……” 的含义。因此 (b) of、(c) before 和 (d) past 均为错误选项。

12. (d)

文中第 13 ~ 14 行 “His great flight lasted thirty-seven minutes(他这次伟大的飞行持续了 37 分钟)” 中的形容词 “great (伟大的)” 可用本题 (d) 中的 “remarkable (非凡的,卓越的)” 来表达,故为正确选项;而 (a) immense (巨大的)、(b) long (长距离的) 和 (c) grand (壮丽的,首要的) 均不能用来表达文中 “great” 的含义。

## 测试2答案

### 作文参考答案

a. After an absence of forty years, the man returned to the town where he had been born. Now, as the train drew into the station, he remembered how, as a boy, he *had spent many days there watching the trains*. The station itself had not changed, but when *he walked outside*, he got a shock. The old church which used to *stand alone* was now surrounded *by lots of buildings*. He noticed with dismay that new blocks of flats had *grown up all round the church*. After, he went to his old neighbourhood. He was pleased to find that *little had changed*. Everything was exactly *as he remembered it*. Even the little shop where he *used to buy his sweets*. He smiled with pleasure when he saw that *the old school was still there, too*. When *he had spent enough time there*, he rapidly made his way to the house where he *had been born and brought up*.

(158 words)

b. When the prisoner saw that the soldiers were coming, he climbed up and hid on the roof of the house. From his hiding place behind a large chimney, he saw the soldiers arrive and watched as they surrounded the village. The first thing they did was to take the villager outside the house into the square and question him. It was obvious to the prisoner, from the way that the villager shook his head, that he pretended not to understand what the soldiers were saying. Fortunately, then, the soldiers just left him, and did not

beat him, as the prisoner thought they might have done.

While some of the soldiers then searched the house and the fields around the house, three or four others fetched a ladder and climbed on to the roof. They were on the other side of the house, but the moment the prisoner saw this, he climbed down a drain pipe on his side, and managed to get back into the house through an open window. As he found himself in a bedroom, he hid in a large wardrobe, closed the door and waited. After about half an hour, he heard the sergeant shouting orders down in the square, and the soldiers left.

(207 words)

### 关键句型练习答案

- a. going, seemed, had (no sooner) gone, rang, was, spending, got, dressed, was, got, were, hurried, had been walking, decided, was just opening *or* had just opened, discovered, was, had set
- b. have been discovered, used, drew, was made, was walking *or* had walked, stopped, did, saw, have been found, are being hunted, are shooting, are running, are trying, thinks, are learning *or* have learned
- c. will supply, will take, will change *or* will be changed, are employed, is completed *or* has been completed, will cost *or* will have cost, has/have built *or* is/are building, will improve, will produce, will be built, will have
- d. After the crash, two angry drivers got out of their cars.

'Do you always sleep when you're driving?' asked the

first driver sarcastically. 'You *were* on the wrong side of the road.'

'Do you *mean* to tell me,' *shouted* the second driver, 'that you *didn't notice* that this road *was being repaired*? Of course I *was driving* on the wrong side of the road when you *hit* me. The other side *is* full of holes.'

'*Didn't you see* the traffic sign?'

'Listen,' *said* the first driver. 'Have you ever *driven* a car before? I've *been driving* a car for twenty years. There *are* good driving schools for people like you. There they *teach* you lots of things—how to drive a car, for instance.'

'Now you're really *telling* me something,' *answered* the second man angrily, 'I happen to be a driving instructor.'

e. After the crash, two angry drivers got out of their cars. The first driver asked sarcastically whether the other man always *slept* when he *was driving*. He was on the wrong side of the road. Shouting angrily, the second driver asked the first one whether *he had noticed that the road was being repaired*. He *was driving* on the wrong side of the road when the first man *hit* him because the other side *was* full of holes. He asked him if he *had seen the traffic sign*. The first driver then asked whether he *had ever driven a car before*. He said that he *had been driving a car for twenty years*. There *were*, he added, good driving schools for people like the other driver. There they *taught* you lots of things—how to drive a car, for instance. Grateful for this information, the second man angrily

informed the first one that he *happened* to be a driving instructor.

- f. 1. If *you hadn't been more careful*, you might have been knocked down by a car.  
2. If *she hears anything*, she will let you know.  
3. If you were in my position, what *would you do*?

g. 1. You *mustn't* go into town on your own.  
You *needn't* do that if you don't want to.

2. I *had to* pay the man a dollar, so I did.

I *should have* paid the man a dollar, but I didn't.

3. I *have to* be there by 11 o'clock for my appointment.

I *should* be there early if I want to get a good ticket.

4. You *must be* here at 8 every morning.

You *must eat* more vegetables.

5. I *could* swim very well when I was younger.

After trying to pick the lock for ages, she *was* finally *able to* open the door and escape.

6. My brother *could* solve difficult maths problems even when he was very young.

I finally *managed to* solve the problem.

h. 1. *On receiving the prize*, he smiled with pleasure.

2. I am not looking forward to *getting my exam results*.

3. Instead of *lying in bed*, you should see a doctor.

4. Don't you think this room needs *redecorating*?

5. You should avoid *staying in the sun too long*.

i. —, —, —, —, a, a, an, the, a, the, the, the, The, —,  
—, a, the, The, the, a, the, —, the, the

j. 1. At, in, at *or* outside, out, (up) to, on, into *or* inside

2. of, in, on, out of, to, since, after 3. with, and, in,

in, into, in, in or inside, for, at, at 4. of 5. of, to  
6. to, from 7. about, on 8. from, with 9. to, of  
10. with, to 11. at, on 12. of, for

### 难点练习答案

1. If he happens *to mention me*, give him my regards.
2. It happens that *I met him last year*.
3. Not only *was she first in the test*, but she scored 99%.
4. Never *have I seen such a messy house*.
5. Seldom *do we have to do jobs like this*.
6. Suppose *he gets the job*, what then?
7. I suppose you *want to go soon*.
8. She is supposed *to be an expert*.
9. They were supposed *to be home by 8*.
10. Whatever *you do*, don't tell her what I've told you.
11. You can come whenever *you like*.
12. Whenever *she sees that film*, it makes her cry.
13. I now wish (*that*) *I had listened more carefully*.
14. I wish (*that*) *I had stayed at home yesterday*.
15. I wish (*that*) *they would come back soon*.
16. I was delighted *to receive your letter*.
17. We are proud *of our basketball team*.
18. I would sooner *wait for the rest*.
19. He would rather not *go alone*.
20. I would rather she *listened to her parents*.
21. You had better start *studying for your exams*.
22. I find it *difficult to know what to say*.
23. No one considers him *to be very clever*.

# Lesson 21

## Daniel Mendoza

丹尼尔·门多萨

1

### 写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Two men quarrelled—settle argument by fight
2. Fight at Stilton—an hour—Humphries won
3. They met again—Mendoza lost again
4. 3rd match in 1790—finally beat Humphries—Champion of England
5. Founded successful boxing Academy—earned a lot of money
6. So extravagant—always in debt
7. Finally sent to prison—died in poverty in 1836

#### 摘要写作参考答案

When the two men quarrelled, they settled the argument by a fight. This took place at Stilton. It lasted an hour and Humphries won. When they met again, Mendoza lost again, but in their third match in 1790, Mendoza finally beat Humphries to become Champion of England. He founded a successful boxing Academy and earned a lot of money, but was so extravagant he was always in debt. He was finally sent to prison and died in poverty in 1836.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### The first fight

The first fight between Humphries and his pupil Mendoza, after a quarrel, was held at Stilton and attracted a lot of attention. At the time, Richard Humphries was the most eminent boxer in England and had many supporters. But the young Mendoza had his supporters, too.

The atmosphere before the fight was electric. Half of the people there made bets on Humphries, the other half bet on Mendoza. When the two fighters entered the ring, there was a lot of shouting and cheering.

The referee called both fighters to the middle of the ring, spoke to them and the fight started. At first, both men were very wary. After all, this was a fight between teacher and pupil, so they knew very well what the other could do—and they were fighting with bare fists. Each of the boxers fought well for most of the match, but in the end Humphries was too strong and too experienced for the young Mendoza. He knocked him down once; Mendoza got up. He knocked him down again, and although Mendoza tried to get up, he just couldn't. The referee counted ten and that was the end of the match.

When Mendoza got up, he was very angry, but eventually congratulated Humphries. However, his defeat made him determined to go on and fight his teacher again so that he could finally become champion.

(229 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

	<i>address</i> : _____,
	_____,
	_____,
	_____.
	<i>date</i> :
	<i>beginning of letter</i> (Dear...)
	<i>Introduction</i>
	<i>Purpose</i>
	<i>Conclusion</i>
	<i>ending</i> (Yours...)
	<i>signature</i>
	<i>postscript</i> (PS...)

2

## 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

- |                         |                                      |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| bare (1.2):             | without gloves                       |
| injured (1.5):          | hurt (physically)                    |
| drew up (1.8):          | prepared and wrote                   |
| crude (1.9):            | basic, rough, not very skilful       |
| enjoyed      tremendous | was extremely popular                |
| popularity (11.9-10):   |                                      |
| adored (1.10):          | loved and respected                  |
| alike (1.10):           | (rich) and / as well as (poor), both |

(rich and poor) in the same way

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. I went to the cinema three days *ago*.  
I had been to see the same film two days *before* that.
2. We *could* not see the game very well.  
We *were able to* see it when we stood on a bench.
3. He did *not* go abroad *until* he was twenty.
4. She was praised *by* the newspapers for her work with poor people.  
He was arrested *by* the police.
5. When the actor came on stage, the whole audience *rose* to cheer him.  
The girl *raised* her hand to ask a question.
6. We were *pleased to* hear your news.  
I was *sorry to* learn that you had been ill.
7. It is *clear* to me that they are not interested in the subject.  
When we set off, it was a beautiful *clear day*.  
When the road was *clear*, he crossed.  
She always keeps the kitchen very *clean*.
8. I am *afraid of* flying.  
He did the exercise *without* looking anything up in a dictionary.  
I must *apologize for* sending you the wrong book.  
They *congratulated* her *on* passing her exam.

**Comprehension 理解**

## 1. (b)

从文中第 11 行 “Mendoza rose to fame swiftly after a boxing match when he was only fourteen years old (门多萨在 14 岁时参加了一场拳击赛后一举成名)” 和第 12~13 行 “He offered to train Mendoza and his young pupil was quick to learn (他主动提出教授门多萨, 而年少的门多萨一学就会)”, 表明本题 (b) for one so young, Mendoza had displayed an unusual grasp of the game (作为那样年轻的拳击手, 门多萨对掌握这项运动展示出了非同寻常的灵气) 应为正确选项; 而 (a) he wanted to learn the techniques that Mendoza had introduced to boxing (他想学习门多萨引进拳击运动的技术)、(c) he had attended the boxing match which led to Mendoza's early fame (他已参加了使门多萨早期一举成名的那场拳击比赛) 和 (d) he was anxious to establish himself as a superior boxer to Mendoza (他渴望使自己成为强于门多萨的拳击家) 均与文中所述意义不符。

## 2. (d)

文中第 15~16 行 “A match was held at Stilton, where ..., but he was defeated (两人在斯蒂尔顿设下赛场, 在那里……, 但是他却输了)”, 说明本题 (d) the argument between the two men was settled in favour of Humphries (这两个人之间的争吵的解决对汉弗莱斯有利) 应为正确选项; 而 (a) Mendoza lost a great deal of money to the public (门多萨把大笔大笔的金钱亏给了大众)、(b) after an hour's fighting Humphries became champion of England

(经过一个小时的厮打,汉弗莱斯成为全英拳击冠军)和 (c) Mendoza lost twice to Humphries (在同汉弗莱斯的拳击赛中,门多萨输掉了两次)均与文中所述意义不符。

3. (c)

文中第 18 ~ 19 行 “Meanwhile, he founded a highly successful Academy and even Lord Byron became one of his pupils (同时,他建立了一所拳击学校,办得很成功,连拜伦勋爵也成了他的学生)” 不仅说明了门多萨办这所学校的时间,而且说明了他是靠亲自教授学生来挣钱,因此本题 (c) greatly supplemented his income by teaching the art of boxing (〈门多萨〉靠教授拳击技艺极大地增加了他的收入)应为正确选项;而 (a) earned a lot from the Academy which he founded after becoming Champion (〈门多萨〉从他成为冠军后所建的学校挣了许多钱)、(b) earned so much money that he became a rich man (〈门多萨〉挣了很多钱,成了一个大富翁)和 (d) was given enormous sums by Lord Byron (拜伦勋爵给了〈门多萨〉大笔的金钱)均与文中所述意义不符。

**Structure 结构**

4. (a)

本题 (a) they called boxers 为正确选项。用动词“call”可以构成“to call somebody ...”这样的跟随复合宾语的结构形式,表示“称某人为……”之意。“somebody”为动词“call”的宾语,其后内容为宾语补语。(b) boxers called 的语态使用有误,应构成被动语态形式“boxers were called”; (c) boxers being called 使用了分词短语即“being called”作定语修饰“boxers”的结构形式,这样仅构成一短语形式,使全句主句部分不完全; (d) they were called boxers, 同 (b), 也为语态使用有误,应去掉之中的

“were”,即构成如(a)那样的主动语态结构形式。

5. (a)

本题(a) even be killed 为正确选项。本题“or”之前“could suffer a serious injury”为主动语态,为形成其前后的对比关系,这样将表示强调意义的副词“even”置于“be killed”之前。(b) be even killed 中的副词“even”所用位置有误,不能同连词“or”之前用主动语态表达的“could suffer a serious injury”形成合理的对比关系(应注意的是,文中第4~5行“... a prizefighter could be seriously injured or even killed during ... (……职业拳击手有可能在比赛中受重伤,甚至丧命……)”中的连词“or”之前所用的是被动语态结构,副词“even”之前省略了助动词“be”,这样所构成的“be even killed”同前面的“be seriously injured”形成合理的对比形式)。(c) even killed 的语态使用有误。动词“kill”动作,就本句主语“a prizefighter”而言,应为被动概念。在(d) was even killed 中,除副词“even”所用位置有误外,“was”的使用形式也有误。本句中的连词“or”所连接的是情态助动词“could”后的部分,其后自然应使用动词的原形形式。

6. (b)

文中第8~9“... Mendoza did much to change crude prizefighting into a sport ... (……门多萨在把这种粗野的拳击变成一种体育运动方面做出了重大贡献……)”中的“did much to change ...”同(b) did a great deal to change ... 表达同样的语义概念,因此为正确选项;而(a) was much changed by 所用语态有误,其表达出的被动语态意义自然与文中所表达出的主动意义完全不同;虽然(c) changed a great deal of 使用的是主动语态的结构形式,但所表达出的“(门多萨)把拳击中的许多东西

改变为一种运动”与文中所表达的语义不同；选项 (d) much changed 除与选项 (c) 为同一类错误外，其副词“much”的使用也有错误，通常该副词不能直接用来修饰动词。

7. (b)

本题有关动词“owe”和副词“always”的使用方法。“owe”用来表达“欠（债、钱）”意义时，应作为及物动词使用，将所欠钱数、债款等直接置于该动词之后。在表达“欠某人多少钱”这一概念时，通常使用“to owe money to somebody”，或如本题那样，在其后使用双宾语结构形式，即“to owe somebody money”这样的结构形式。用副词“always”修饰行为动词时，通常将其置于该动词之前，而用其修饰状态动词时，通常需将其置于该状态动词之后。当为“情态动词 + 动词”的结构形式时，通常将其置于第一个情态助动词之后。通过上面所述用法，可以判定选项 (b) always owed 为正确选项；而 (a) always owed to、(c) owed always 和 (d) was always owing to 均为错误选项。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8. (b)

文中第 6 行 “One of the most colourful figures in boxing history was ... (拳击史上最引人注目的人物之一是……)” 中的 “the most colourful figures” 意为 “最引人注目的人物”。根据此意，本题选项 (b) famous people (〈最〉有名望的人物) 应为正确选项；而 (a) vivid personalities (生动的个性)、(c) painted images (彩绘肖像) 和 (d) imaginative characters (想像出的人物) 均与文中所述意义不符。

9. (c)

文中第 11 行 "... after a boxing match when he was only fourteen years old (……在他只有 14 岁时的一场拳击比赛后)" 中的 "only" 表示 "仅仅, 只有" 含义, 因此用本题选项 (c) exceptionally (非常, 特别) 表达出的 "在他 14 岁非常年轻时的一场拳击比赛后" 应为正确选项; 而 (a) marvellously (令人惊奇地, 非凡地)、(b) singly (独一无二地) 和 (d) unequally (不平等地) 均不能用来表达出文中所要表达的含义。

10. (a)

本题中的 "Mendoza's" 为名词所有格, 其后应使用名词形式。选项中除 (b) "rose" 为动词 "rise" 的过去式形式外, 其他 3 个选项所用单词均可作为名词来使用。"one's rise to fame" 可用来表达 "某人的一举成名" 之意, 与文中所要表达的意义相同, 因此为正确选项; 而当选项 (c) 中的 "raise" 作名词时, 它通常被用来指 "数量" 上的增加; 选项 (d) 中的 "claim" 所构成的 "one's claim to ..." 通常用来表达 "某人对……的要求" 之意。

11. (a)

文中第 13~14 行 "... Mendoza soon became so successful that Humphries turned against him (……门多萨不久便名声大振, 致使汉弗莱斯与他反目为仇)", 所讲情况源于汉弗莱斯对门多萨的嫉妒, 因此本题选项 (a) jealous of (对……嫉妒) 为正确选项; 而 (b) disinterested in (对……不感兴趣)、(c) revolted by (由于……而感到厌恶) 和 (d) changed by (被……所改变) 均非 "汉弗莱斯与他 (门多萨) 反目为仇" 的原因, 因此为错误选项。

12. (d)

如文中第 17 行 "... that he finally beat Humphries ...

(……他终于击败了汉弗莱斯……)”所示,本题(d) beat (打败,击败)为正确选项;而(a) conquered (征服)、(b) gained (赢得,取得)和(c) won (赢得)均不能用来表达文中“beat”一词的含义,因此均为错误选项。

## Lesson 22

### By heart

#### 熟记台词

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Aristocrat sitting alone—cell—gaoler appeared
2. Entered cell—handed letter to aristocrat—blank sheet
3. Aristocrat looked—squinted—said: ‘Light dim—Read letter’
4. Handed paper—gaoler—‘Light indeed dim—get glasses’
5. Left stage—returned—glasses—real letter—read to prisoner

#### 摘要写作参考答案

The aristocrat was sitting in his cell when the gaoler entered and handed him the letter—a blank sheet of paper. The aristocrat looked at it, squinted and said: ‘The light is dim. Read me the letter.’ He handed the letter back to the gaoler, who said: ‘The light is indeed dim. I’ll get my glasses.’ He left the stage and returned with a pair of glasses and the real letter, which he read to the prisoner.

(79 words)

## 作文参考答案

### Six short weeks

A couple of years ago, a new play called *The World Tomorrow* was going to be shown in our local theatre. There was a great deal of advertising for it and there was considerable public interest, mainly, I think, because the cast contained a number of famous actors and actresses.

Most actors and actresses are usually nervous on the first night of any play, and no one really knows what can go wrong or how the audience will react. In the case of *The World Tomorrow*, no one forgot their lines, but the play was not well received. It was a comedy, so it was supposed to be funny, but nobody laughed—not in the right places anyway—and people even walked out before the end. The cast suspected that they would get bad reviews the following day, and they did. One review described it as ‘the saddest comedy I’ve ever seen’; another thought it was ‘the most professionally acted disaster we have ever seen on our local stage’.

In spite of the reviews, however, the play still ran for six weeks. The last performance, on the last Saturday evening, attracted a small audience, and the actors struggled through to the end. At the end of six terrible weeks, however, there was one final moment of relief. When the last line was spoken: ‘Our six short weeks have hastened to their end,’ the audience saw the funny side of it and laughed. Even the actors and actresses laughed.

(248 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

Used at the beginning of the letter:

1. Thank you very much for your last letter.
2. It has been a long time since I heard from you.
3. I'm sorry it has taken me so long to answer your last letter.
4. It was good to hear from you after such a long time.
5. I'm writing today because I've got some great news.

Used at the end of the letter:

1. Please remember me to your family.
2. I look forward to hearing from you soon.
3. Please give my best regards to your sister.
4. You must let me know how you get on in your exams.
5. Let me know if you need any more information.

## 2

## 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

run (1.1):	are performed regularly
on end (1.1):	without a break, continuously
are required (1.2):	are expected, have to
repeating (1.3):	saying again
falter (1.4):	make a mistake, say in a weak manner, stumble
role (1.7):	part, character
hand (1.8):	give
in full (1.9):	completely

## 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. It was *so* hot *that* we all went swimming.  
It was *such* glorious weather *that* we went to the beach.  
It was *such a* hot day *that* we all went swimming.
2. We could use *used to* instead of *would* :  
My grandfather *would* always read me a story when he came to visit us.  
I *used to* enjoy the stories he told me.
3. See text 11.8-9.
4. *He suggested that* we should go for a walk.  
*He insisted that* I should stay to lunch.  
*He demanded that* we should give him his money back.
5. I *couldn't* swim very well, but I *managed to* swim across the small stream.  
She *couldn't* speak English very well, but she *managed to* make herself understood.
6. See text 1.13.
7. The girl *threw* a snowball *at* me.  
He *pointed at* the building and said: 'That's the town hall.'
8. We could say *have to* or *have got to* in place of *must* .

### 3

## Comprehension 理解

### 1. (a)

本题要求在理解全文内容的基础上,熟悉所给予的4个谚语的含义。(a) He laughs best, who laughs last (谁笑到最后,谁笑得最好)为正确选项;而选项(b) Speech is

silver, but silence is golden (雄辩是银, 沉默是金)、(c) Look before you leap (三思而后行) 和 (d) Don't count your chickens before they are hatched (如意算盘不要打得过早) 其寓意均不能正确表达出本文所要表达的含义。

2. (c)

文中第 11~12 行 “The curtain went up on the final act of the play and revealed the aristocrat sitting alone behind bars in his dark cell (大幕拉开, 最后一幕戏开演, 贵族独自一人坐在铁窗后阴暗的牢房里)”, 清楚表明本题 (c) ended with the imprisonment of the aristocrat (以被关押在狱中的那个贵族结束) 为正确选项; 而 (a) had had a highly successful run of twenty years (已极为成功地上演了 20 年)、(b) was about the plight of a nobleman (是有关一位贵族境遇的) 和 (d) had been performed so often that audiences were bored by it (上演的次数太多, 观众已对其感到厌倦) 与文中表达的意义不符, 故均为错误选项。

3. (c)

文中第 15~16 行 “The noble stared at the blank sheet of paper for a few seconds. Then, squinting his eyes, he said: ‘The light is dim. Read the letter to me’ (这个贵族盯着白纸看了几秒钟, 然后, 眼珠一转, 说道: ‘光线太暗, 请给我读一下这封信’)”, 清楚表明选项 (c) he pretended that the light was not good enough for him to read by (他假装光线太暗, 没法读) 为正确选项; 而 (a) he improvised the words which he had forgotten (他即兴编出了他忘掉了的台词)、(b) the gaoler was eagerly waiting to take the aristocrat's part (这个狱卒急切要取代这个贵族的角色) 和 (d) he asked the gaoler to fetch him some glasses (他要

这个狱卒给他取副眼镜来)均与文中所表达的意义不符。

## Structure 结构

### 4. (c)

本题选项 (c) to deliver 为正确选项。这里所用的动词不定式“to deliver”同其后的内容一起作定语修饰“a letter”，用来表示“打算/准备/要”做的动作；而 (a) to be delivering 所用的动词不定式的进行时，则表示“正在”做出的动作。(b) and delivered 所用的动词并列结构形式有误。在题中所用的助动词“would”之后，应使用动词原形。此外，如这样使用，“deliver”需作及物动词，即在其后需跟随一宾语，如“it”，表示前文中所提及的“letter”一词。(d) delivered 所用的作为定语来使用的过去分词短语形式，只能用于表示“完成”的动作，均不能表达出文中第 7~8 行 “In the last act, a gaoler would always come on to the stage with a letter which he would hand to the prisoner (在最后一幕中，狱卒手持一封信上场，然后将信交给狱中那位贵族)” 所表达的将来时含义。

### 5. (a)

本题有关动词“insist”的使用结构问题。一般情况下，“insist”作不及物动词同介词“on”搭配使用，表示“坚持……”之意。其后所用的动词需构成该动词的“-ing”形式；当该动词作及物动词时，其后通常跟随“that 从句”；此外，只有在该动词后跟随直接宾语时，才能在其后使用动词不定式。这样，其用法可以归纳为：to insist on doing something、to insist + that 从句和 to insist somebody to do something 这 3 种结构。文中第 9 行 “... he always insisted that it should be written out in full (……他还是坚持要求将信的全文写在信纸上)” 表明“write out”这一动作并非主语“he (那个贵族)”做出的动作。因此，在本题

的选项中, (a) on its being written out 这一动名词的被动语态形式为正确选项; 而 (b) on writing it out 和 (c) to have it written out 分别为语态使用有误和结构使用有误; 在 (d) that it would have to be written out 中, 用 “to have to do something” 表达出的 “不得不做某事” 的含义与文中所表达的意义不符。

6. (c)

文中第 10~11 行 “... to find out if ... he had managed to learn the contents of the letter by heart (……看看他……是否已将信的内容记熟了)” 中所用的 “had managed to learn ...” 表示 “经过以前的努力而达到了 (过去的) learn ... by heart 的能力” 之意, 而 (c) 中的 “knew (... by heart)” 本身即可表达出过去所达到的这一能力, 因此为本题的正确选项。(应注意文中 “manage” 一词使用的是过去完成时形式, 而非动词 “know”。) 因此, 本题 (a) had known、(b) was knowing 的时态使用有误, (d) know 则在时态和人称上均与从句中的主语 he 不相符。

7. (c)

本题有关动词 “give”、定语从句和冠词的使用方法问题。在动词 “give” 之后, 可以使用双宾语结构, 即使用 “to give somebody (间接宾语) something (直接宾语)” 或 “to give something (直接宾语) to somebody (间接宾语)” 这样的结构。在使用限定性定语从句时, 在无其他修辞要求的情况下, 通常应将该从句直接置于被修饰词之后修饰该词。定冠词 “the” 通常具有 “确定” 的含义, 而不定冠词 “a” 通常具有 “不确定” 的含义。在特指的时候, 既可以具有 “确定” 的含义, 也可以具有 “不确定” 的含义。当表达 “确定” 含义时应使用定冠词, 表达 “不确定” 含义时应使用不

定冠词。根据上述用法说明,可以认为本题的 (c) him a copy 为正确选项;而 (a) the copy to him、(b) a copy him 和 (d) him the copy 均为错误选项。应注意的是,文中第 13~14 行的 “But the copy he gave him had not been written out in full as usual (但是,这回狱卒给这个贵族的信没有像往常那样把全文写全)” 所表达的是“确定”含义,因此应使用定冠词“the”,而本题所表达的是“不确定”含义,因此应如 (c) 中所示,使用不定冠词“a”。

8. (a)

本题有关连词“neither”、“nor”和“either”以及副词“also”的使用方法问题。它们均可用来表达汉语中“也”的含义。但一般说来,连词“neither”和“nor”均用于句首,表达否定意义,其后应使用倒装语序。连词“either”可用于否定结构的句子中,但应用于句尾。而可用来表达汉语中“也”的含义的副词,如“also”、“too”等,通常不用于否定结构的句子中。根据上述用法,可以认为本题的 (a) But neither could the gaoler 为正确选项。除上述用法外,本题句首所用的连词“But”也为必不可少,这样可以将上下文的语义连接得更为紧密。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (d)

文中第 10 行 “... the gaoler decided to play a joke on his colleague ... (……狱卒决定与他的同事开个玩笑……)” 中的 “to play a joke on somebody” 表示“开某人的玩笑”之意。在本题所给的 4 个选项中,只有 (d) play a trick on 可用来表达此意,因此为正确选项;而 (a) have a joke with 表达“同某人说笑话”之意;(b) play the fool with 表达“欺骗,诱惑”之意;(c) make fun of 则表达“拿……开玩笑,取笑……”之意。

10. (d)

可以用选项 (d) finally (最后, 最终) 构成本题题意, 表达出文中第 10 ~ 11 行 "... to find out if ... he had managed to learn the contents of the letter by heart (……想看看他……是否已将信的内容记熟了)" 的含义; 而 (a) lastly (最后, 最后一点) 多用于叙述中的项目排列中; (b) in the end (最终, 最后) 虽然通常可以与 "finally" 互换使用, 表达同样的含义, 但如本题中所示, 副词 "finally" 常用于动词之前修饰该动词, 而副词短语 "in the end" 通常用于句首或句尾来修饰该句的动词; (c) conclusively 用于表达 "确定性地, 有说服力地, 结尾地" 之意。

11. (b)

本题 (b) peering (〈为看清楚而〉眯着眼看) 为正确选项; 而 (a) searching (探究地看)、(c) blinking (眨着眼看) 和 (d) staring (凝视, 目不转睛地看) 均不能用来表达出文中的第 16 行 "squinting" 一词的含义。

12. (c)

用本题 (c) said (说) 可表明文中第 18 行 "replied" 一词的含义; 而 (a) 中的 "spoke (说)" 用于表达 "说某种语言" 时才作及物动词, 一般只能作为不及物动词使用, 即在其后不能直接使用名词、代词或从句作其宾语; (b) informed 多用来表达 "通知, 告知" 之意; (d) rejoined 多用来表达 "反驳, 驳斥" 之意。

## Lesson 23

### One man's meat is another man's poison

#### 各有所爱

#### I 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. Collected several dozen—paper bag—took to Robert
2. He—delighted—equally pleased
3. Bag in hall—living room—talked couple of hours
4. Forgot snails—Robert invited me to dinner
5. Followed Robert—hall—snails everywhere
6. Escaped—paper bag—crawling all over

##### 摘要写作参考答案

The writer collected several dozen snails, put them in a paper bag and took them to Robert who was delighted to see him, and pleased with the snails. The writer left the bag in the hall and he and Robert went into the living room and talked for a couple of hours. He had forgotten the snails until Robert invited him to dinner, and he followed Robert into the hall to find snails everywhere. They had escaped from the bag.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

Snails, snails, snails!

The snails had escaped from the paper bag and they were everywhere—on the walls, on the ceiling, on the carpet, and even on the large hall mirror. When we began to look carefully, we found that they were even in coat pockets in the clothes hanging on the clothes hooks in the hall. It was disgusting! Snails move slowly, but it's amazing how far they can travel in a couple of hours!

It took Robert and me ages to collect them. He fetched a pair of steps for me and ladders for himself, and we collected them in two buckets. There were snail marks everywhere, too, and it took hours to clear up the mess—remember, there were several dozen of them. Snails may not be fast, but we had been talking for a couple of hours, and they can travel. Even now I am sure we didn't find them all; some are still crawling round Robert's house.

The ones that we did not find were lucky! Robert was amused, but I wasn't. He decided to cook the snails and invited me to stay. I said before that I didn't fancy the idea, so I left him to his meal for one. I just couldn't look at the snails and have never been able to face them since then.

(220 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

It was really nice to see you last week after such a long time. I was so pleased that you are well and that you have a good job now.

I'm hoping that we can get together again soon, so how

would you like to come and spend a weekend with me and my family here in the country sometime in the next month or two? You've never been to our house before, but I'm sure you would enjoy it.

Please let me know what you think.

I look forward to hearing from you.

(94 words)

2

### 词汇练习参考答案

illogical (1.1):	unreasonable
instance (1.3):	example
repulsive (1.4):	disgusting
stick (1.7):	stay (with), remain (with)
various (1.10):	different
associate (1.11):	connect
appealed to (1.13):	attracted

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. I was *quite* sure that the boy was innocent.  
You must keep *quiet* during the concert.
2. *If you had lived* in the Mediterranean, you would have considered octopus a great delicacy.
3. When you are learning to play the piano, you need a lot of *practice*.  
You need to *practise* a lot when you are learning to play the piano.

4. *Most* people hated the play.

This is *the most* interesting exhibition I've been to.

5. I've been learning English *since* I was ten.

I've been learning English *for* four years.

I started learning English four years *ago*.

6. *As* here means *because* or *since* :

She often appears on the stage *as* a young girl.

I saw her *as* she was coming out of the bank.

You should do *as* you are told.

7. She *has been asking* me questions all day.

She *has asked* me three questions in the past 5 minutes!

8. *He happens* to be a friend of mine.

*It happened that* we were in the town on holiday.

Nothing much *happened* at the meeting. It was boring.

3

多项选择题

### Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

根据文中第1段有关人们选择食物上的好恶以及文中第2段第一句所述“*No creature has received more praise and abuse than the common garden snail (没有一种生物所受到的赞美和厌恶会超过花园里常见的蜗牛了)*”,可以看出本题的正确选项应为(d) *people to be amazed by anyone who refused to eat them (人们会对不吃蜗牛的人感到非常惊愕)*;而(a) *to find a great many snails in people's gardens (会在人们的花园中发现许许多多的蜗牛)*、(b) *to find that people cooked them in wine (会发现人们用酒将它们煮熟了吃)*和(c) *snails to be so popular*

that they are a luxury only the rich can afford (蜗牛深受人们喜爱,它们是只有富人们才能享用的佳肴)均与作者想要表达的意思不符。

2. (a)

从文中第13行“The idea never appealed to me . . .”到第16行“... took them to Robert”,清楚表明本题 (a) the sight of the snails made him think of Robert (看到蜗牛使他想起罗伯特)为正确选项;而 (b) a heavy shower of rain led him to look for them in his garden (一场大雨使他在花园中寻找它们)、(c) a sudden impulse made him decide to visit the country where Robert lived (一时的冲动使他决定拜访罗伯特所在的国家)和 (d) he felt obliged to remove them from his prize plants (他感到必须从他心爱的花木上把它们弄走)均不能作为引起作者逮蜗牛的原因。

3. (d)

从文中第16~17行“Robert was delighted to see me and equally pleased with my little gift. I left the bag in the hall . . . (罗伯特见到我很高兴,对我的薄礼也感到满意。我把纸袋放在门厅里……)”以及第18~19行“Snails would, of course, be the main dish. I did not fancy the idea . . . (蜗牛当然是道主菜。我并不喜欢这个主意……)”,可以看出本题 (d) he gave Robert the snails, little thinking Robert would propose a dinner with snails as the main dish (他把蜗牛给了罗伯特,几乎想都没想罗伯特会提议让他留下食用蜗牛作主菜的晚餐)应为正确选项;而 (a) Robert welcomed him warmly because of the snails he had brought (因为他带来的蜗牛,罗伯特热情地欢迎了他)、(b) Robert immediately invited him to dinner

in order to eat the snails (为了吃到蜗牛, 罗伯特立即邀请他吃晚餐) 和 (c) he forgot about giving Robert the snails until two hours later (两个小时后他才想起把蜗牛给罗伯特) 均与文中所述意义不符。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (a)

本题 (a) it comes to 为正确选项。在这里“it comes to”为一种固定搭配的表达方法, 表示“关于, 涉及”之意。在此短语中, “to”为介词, 其后应使用名词、代词, 或如题中那样, 使用动词的“-ing”形式或用其构成的“-ing”短语形式; (b) they come to 中的“to come to”表示“开始, 来”之意, 在这一短语后, 应使用动词不定式形式; (c) they come 之所以错误在于动词“come”为不及物动词, 其后可使用副词或副词短语对其进行修饰, 但不能直接跟随任何形式的宾语; (d) coming to 构成的选项使该题中的从句缺少主语, 因此也为错误选项。

#### 5. (b)

本题有关名词“kind(种类)”和“food(食物)”的使用方法。当使用“kind”表达“某个种类的……”或“某些种类的……”概念时, 通常使用“a kind of ...”和“(some) kinds of ...”这样的结构形式。“food”一词为不可数名词, 其后不能使用“-s”构成复数形式。根据上述“kind”和“food”的用法, 可以确定本题 (b) of food 为正确选项; 而 (a) food、(c) of the foods 和 (d) foods 均不符合上述用法, 因此为错误选项。

#### 6. (c)

本题有关连词“and”和“or”的使用方法问题。一般情况下, 当句子为否定形式或句子中包含否定词时, 使用连词“or”而不用“and”连接两个词条。但是, 当两个动作同时

发生或做出的动作同时具有两个以上的承受者（宾语）时，虽然句子本身为否定形式，或句子本身包含否定词，但还应如文中第 9 行 “No creature has received more praise and abuse than the common garden snail” 那样，使用连词 “and”。如上所述，本题 (c) has been praised or 为正确选项；而 (a) is being praised and、(b) is praised nor 和 (d) has been praised and 均为错误选项。

7. (a)

本题有关作状语使用的分词或分词短语与主语的一致性问题。当分词短语作状语时，如题中所示，句子的主语应与该分词表示的动作相一致，即句中的主语既为主句谓语动词，又为该分词所表示动作的动词的施动者。根据此用法，可以判断本题 (a) I accompanied Robert 为正确选项；从文中有关该句内容的第 16~17 行 “I left the bag in the hall and ... (我把纸袋放在门厅里……)” 可以清楚看出，动词 “leave” 的动作由主语 “I” 做出，而不是由罗伯特做出或由罗伯特和 “I” 同时做出的动作。因此，(b) Robert took me、(c) we went 和 (d) I and Robert went 均为错误选项。

8. (c)

本题有关时态问题。在动词 “see” 之后既可接某一动词的 “-ing” 结构形式也可接动词的原形形式，即构成 “to see somebody doing something” 和 “to see somebody do something” 形式，但不能使用带 to 的动词不定式的形式来表达 “看到某人做某事” 的含义。句型中 “doing” 和 “do” 表示的动作都是与动词 “see” 同时发生的动作；此外，在动词 “see” 后还可以使用宾语从句形式，从句中的时态往往视情况而定。根据文中第 19~20 行 “... we saw that there were snails everywhere; they had escaped from the

paper bag ...”可以看出,动词“escape”的动作发生在动词“see”的动作之前,因此使用了过去完成时形式。综上所述,可以断定(c) had escaped 为正确选项;而(a) escaping、(b) escape 和 (d) to escape 均为错误选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

#### 9. (d)

文中第5行“... your stomach would turn at the idea of ... (……你一想到……就会反胃……)”中的动词“turn”在这里表示“反胃,感到恶心”之意。所给的4个选项中,只有(d) feel sick 可用来表达此含义;而(a) be sick 多用来表达“生病,令人恶心的”含义;(b) sick 一词为形容词,表达“生病的,恶心的”之意;(c) sicken 一词虽为动词,但通常只作及物动词使用,表达“使恶心”的含义,需使用“be sickened”这样的结构形式来表达该句的含义。

#### 10. (d)

文中第18~19行“Snails would, of course, be the main dish”中的“main dish”表示“主菜”之意。所给的4个选项中,只有(d) course 可用来表达此含义。“course”一词在英语中可用来特指“一道菜”;而(a) meal 用来指“餐”;(b) food 用来指“食物”;(c) plate 用来指“盘子”。

#### 11. (b)

文中第17行“... I went into the living room where we talked for a couple of hours (……我与罗伯特一起进了起居室,在那里聊了好几个钟头)”中的“a couple of hours”意为“两个来钟头”,因此所给的4个选项中只有(b) two hours or so 为正确选项;而(a) round the clock 意为“一整天,一昼夜”,(c) a second hour 意为“第2个小时”,(d) some hours 意为“几个小时”,故均为错误选项。

12. (b)

文中第 10 行 “There are countless people who ... (有无计其数的人们……)” 中的 “countless” 一词表示 “数不清的, 不计其数的” 之意。在所给的 4 个选项中, 只有 (b) numerous 可用来表达此含义, 因此为正确选项; 而 (a) numerable 意为 “可数的, 可计数的”; (c) numerical 意为 “数字的, 用数字表示的”; (d) numbered 意为 “计数的, 编号的”。

## Lesson 24

### A skeleton in the cupboard

“家丑”

1

写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Started to unpack—shirts and underclothes in drawers—  
decided to hang suit—cupboard
2. Opened cupboard—stood petrified
3. Skeleton—dangling in front of him—swaying—leap out?
4. Dropped suit—dashed downstairs—tell George
5. George unsympathetic: ‘Sebastian—remember—I was medical  
student’

#### 摘要写作参考答案

The writer started to unpack and put his shirts and underclothes into drawers and then decided to hang a suit in the cupboard. He opened the cupboard and stood petrified; there, dangling in front of him, was a skeleton. It was swaying and ready to leap out at him. He dropped his suit and dashed downstairs to tell George. George was unsympathetic and told the writer it was Sebastian, a skeleton he had when he was a medical student.

(79 words)

## 作文参考答案

### A weekend with Sebastian

Now that George had explained about the skeleton, I felt better, but I still didn't want to sleep in the room with a skeleton hanging in the cupboard. I asked George to remove him, but he refused. 'There's nowhere else to put him,' said George, 'so he'll have to stay.'

I couldn't disagree of course, but the moment I lay down to sleep, I knew it was going to be an uncomfortable night. In the end, I decided that I would take Sebastian somewhere for the night and bring him back up to my room early in the morning. So I took him out of the cupboard and walked around the house with him trying to find somewhere to put him.

George's maid was just going to bed as I walked along the landing. She saw Sebastian apparently walking around, screamed and fainted. She had obviously woken Carlton who appeared from his bedroom and, when the girl had regained consciousness, explained everything to her. He accused me of being stupid and sent me and Sebastian back to 'our' room where I hung him up in the cupboard again.

Imagine my surprise when I picked up one of Carlton's detective stories two years later. There I was, with Sebastian the skeleton, as the main characters in one of his stories for the whole world to read. Still, he didn't use my real name, so I should be glad of that!

(240 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

I haven't written to you for some time, but felt that I

should before contacting you by telephone or coming to the surgery.

I have not been feeling at all well lately. I have been feeling tired all the time and have started to go to bed early most nights to get more sleep. Even then, after a good night's sleep, I still feel as if I could sleep longer. I've taken vitamin tablets and things, but they haven't done any good, so I'd like to make an appointment to see you as soon as possible.

(97 words)

2

## 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

seemingly (1.1):	apparently
concealed (1.2):	hidden
vivid saying (1.3):	a memorable expression
reputation (1.6):	a good name
ruined (1.6):	destroyed
fiction (1.10):	invented stories
to varying degrees (1.10):	sometimes more, sometimes less

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. We *frequently* eat at that restaurant.  
He *rarely* gets up before 11 o'clock.  
She *always* catches the 8 o'clock bus to work.  
They *never* get up early on Sundays.
2. She *taught* me to speak English.  
He *allowed* us to park behind his house.

3. We invited 50 people to the barbecue, but *very few* came—only 5 in fact.

The next time we had a barbecue, *quite a few* people came—about 45.

When everybody had finished eating, there was *very little* (food) left.

There's a *little* meat left if you'd like some.

4. aware of, ready for, patient with, afraid of, fortunate in, curious about, dependent on, different from, skilful at, familiar with, close to

5. She *made* me do some extra exercises for homework.

The other teacher often *lets* me hand in my assignments late.

6. 'You must see *Arsenic and Old Lace* again,' Tom said. 'It's a wonderful film.'

'No, thank you,' I answered. 'I don't think I could stand it.'

'I saw it years ago,' said Tom. 'I shall never forget those dear old ladies.'

'And I shall never forget the dreadful moment when Boris Karloff suddenly appeared at the window,' I said. 'I nearly jumped out of my seat.'

### 3

### 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

虽然在文中第1段第5~6行,作者对讲述“骇人听闻”的秘密的小说进行了如下说明:“At some dramatic moment

in the story, the terrible secret becomes known and a reputation is ruined (在小说的某个戏剧性时刻, 可怕的秘密泄露出来, 接着便是某人的声誉扫地)”, 但随后所讲述的亲身经历则给予了相反的答案。因此本题的正确选项为 (a) They are rarely so terrible as to ruin our reputations if revealed (在它们〈秘密〉被揭露时, 很少可怕到能毁掉我们的声誉); 而 (b) People's closest friends do not even suspect them of having them (人们的最亲密朋友甚至不会怀疑他们有秘密)、(c) People who have 'skeletons in the cupboard' are rarely found out (有“柜中骷髅”的人很少被发现) 和 (d) People who have skeletons in their cupboards are very proud of the fact (有柜中骷髅〈家丑〉的人对这一事实感到非常自豪), 并不能用来说明作者通过本文要表达的主题。

2. (c)

文中第 16 ~ 18 行 “After I had stacked my shirts and underclothes in two empty drawers, I decided to hang one of the two shirts I had brought with me in the cupboard. I opened the cupboard door and then stood in front of it petrified (我将衬衫、内衣放进两个空抽屉里, 然后我想把随身带来的两套西服中的一套挂到大衣柜里去。我打开柜门, 站在门前一下子惊呆了)”, 清楚说明本题 (c) put his shirts and his underwear in a couple of drawers (把他的衬衫和内衣放进了两个抽屉里) 为正确选项; 而 (a) unpacked and gone down for dinner (打开行装, 下楼去吃饭了)、(h) changed into some new clothes (换上了新衣服) 和 (d) hung one of the two suits he had brought with him (把带来的两套西服中的一套挂了起来) 均与文中所述意义不符。

### 3. (a)

文中第 17~18 行“I opened the cupboard door and then stood in front of it petrified. A skeleton was dangling before my eyes (我打开柜门, 站在门前一下子惊呆了。一具骷髅悬挂在眼前)”, 清楚表明本题 (a) The sight of a skeleton hanging in the cupboard (看到了挂在柜子里的一具骷髅) 为正确选项; 而 (b) The sudden movement of the door when he opened the cupboard (他打开柜子时柜门的突然晃动)、(c) To discover that it was the skeleton of an old friend of George’s (发现那是乔治的一位老友骷髅) 和 (d) To have found a real skeleton rather than finding out a terrible secret (发现了一具真骷髅而不是骇人听闻的秘密) 显然与本文作者所表达的意义不符。

## Structure 结构

### 4. (a)

本题是有关分词短语的使用问题。分词短语作定语时, 通常应将该分词短语直接置于被修饰词之后修饰该词。由此, 用本题 (a) having 构成的分词短语“having some terrible secret . . .”, 正好置于被修饰词“person or family”之后, 因此为本题的正确选项; 而由于句中已使用了谓语动词“read”, 这样在“person or family”之后, 就不能再直接使用其谓语动词的动词形式, 因此 (b) has 为错误选项。虽然可以把“person or family”作为先行词使用, 在其后跟随定语从句形式, 但需清楚指代该短语的关系代词在其后定语从句中所起的功能作用。就语义而言, 指代“person or family”的关系代词在其后的定语从句中应起主语作用。一般说来, 当先行词指人时, 指代该先行词的关系代词应使用“who”或“that”; 指物时, 应使用“which”或“that”; 而当先行词由两部分组成, 一个指人而一个指

物时,通常使用关系代词“that”。由此,(c) whom has 和 (d) that they have 均为错误选项。此外,如将 (d) 中的“they”去掉,即可视为正确选项。

5. (d)

本题有关动词不定式及定语从句的使用方法问题。就文中第 11 ~ 12 行 “The only person I know who has a skeleton in the cupboard is George Carlton ... (我所认识的惟一的在柜中藏骷髅的人便是乔治·卡尔顿……)” 而言,可将 “I know” 视为省略了连词 “that” 的定语从句。用来代替先行词 “person” 的关系代词 “that” 在此从句中作宾语;可将 “who” 至 “cupboard” 部分中的关系代词 “who” 视为修饰动词 “know” 的宾语 “that” (即 person 和 I know 之间省略了的关系代词) 的定语从句 (实际起到宾语 person 的补语作用)。在动词 “know” 后,可使用 “宾语 + 动词不定式 (作宾语补语)” 这样的结构形式。因此,本题 (d) to have 为正确选项;由于作主语使用的关系代词不能省略,并且使用了表示主语的关系代词后定语从句中再不能重复使用主语,因此 (a) he had 和 (c) that he has 均为错误选项;“to know of” 表达 “听说” 之意,与文中意义不符,因此 (b) of having 也为错误选项。

6. (b)

本题有关定语从句的使用问题。就文中第 12 行 “... and he is very proud of the fact(……而且他对此感到很自豪)” 所使用的结构而言,仅使用了一般的陈述语气形式,不含任何强调意义;而 (a) the fact (可视其为先行词,其后省略了关系代词 “that” 的结构形式)、(c) that which (可将 that 视为先行词,which 为关系代词) 和 (d) what (为关系代词,引导名词性从句) 均含有强调意义,因此不能视其为正确选项;只有 (b) something (其后省略了

关系代词 that) 既可以从语义上也可以从语气上表达出文中该句的意义。

7. (c)

本题有关复合连词“no sooner ... than ...”的用法。该连词为固定搭配形式,表示“刚……就……”之意,因此只有(c) than 为正确选项。

8. (b)

本题有关一般现在时与现在完成时和动词“remember”与“forget”的用法问题。一般现在时通常用来表达经常性和习惯性的动作或状态;现在完成时通常用来表达发生在过去但一直延续到现在或对现在有影响的动作。动词“remember”和“forget”为表示能力的词,分别用来表达“记得(过去的事情)”和“忘记(过去的事情)”之意。根据上述说明,可以判定本题(b) Have you forgotten (即:你〈现在〉已忘记……了吗?)为正确选项;而(a) Why don't you remember (即:你为什么〈一直都〉没记住……呢?)、(c) Do you forget (即:你〈经常/总是〉忘记……吗?)和(d) Have you not remembered (即:你〈到现在〉还没记起……吗?)为错误选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

在本题所给4个选项的单词中,“owe”一词通常用来表达“欠,应把……归于”之意,“contain”通常用来指“(一个较大事物中所)包括有”的含义,“hold”一词在表达“有”这一含义的同时,往往还含有“保持,控制”之意,“have”则在用来表达“有”的意义时用以说明“某人或某物与其所有东西之间的关系或某物及其属性”。就上述说明,可以认为本题(d) has 为正确选项;而(a) owes、(b) contains 和(c) holds 均为错误选项。

10. (a)

文中第 15 行 "... the guestroom which, he said, was rarely used (……乔治说这间房很少使用)" 中的 "rarely" 一词用来表达“很少地, 极少地”之意。由此可认为, 本题 (a) little (很少地, 几乎不地) 为正确选项; 而 (b) a little (多少有时地, 多少有些地)、(c) uncommonly (罕见地) 和 (d) preciously (珍惜地) 均为错误选项。

11. (d)

就文中第 15 行 "He told me to unpack my things and then ..." 中所使用的 "things" 一词指“行装”之意, 因此本题 (d) belongings (行李, 行装) 为正确选项; 而 (a) items (物件)、(b) objects (物体, 实物) 和 (c) trunks (〈大〉旅行箱, 〈大〉衣箱) 均为错误选项。

12. (a)

文中第 19 行 "... gave me the impression that it was about to leap out at me (……让我觉得它好像马上要跳出柜门朝我扑过来似的)" 中的 "to be about to do something" 表示“就要/马上要做某事”, 因此本题 (a) was on the point of (就在……之际) 为正确选项; 而 (b) was concerned with (对……关心, 与……有关)、(c) was thinking of (正想到……) 和 (d) was almost (几乎, 差不多) 均为错误选项。

# Lesson 25

## The *Cutty Sark*

### “卡蒂萨克”号帆船

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. *Thermopylae* reached Java first—*Cutty Sark* took lead on Indian Ocean
2. August—CS struck by heavy storm—rudder torn away
3. Temporary rudder made—fitted with difficulty—CS lost lead
4. Crossed Equator—called at port—new rudder fitted—T 500 miles ahead
5. Even with new rudder—arrived England—week after T

#### 摘要写作参考答案

The *Thermopylae* reached Java first, but the *Cutty Sark* took the lead on the Indian Ocean. When the *Cutty Sark* was struck by a storm, her rudder was torn away. A temporary rudder was made and fitted, but the ship lost the lead. After crossing the Equator, they called in at a port to have a new rudder fitted. Even with a new rudder, the *Cutty Sark* arrived in England a week after the *Thermopylae*, which was 500 miles ahead.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### Ships of the past

Men have always wanted to cross water. Thousands of years ago, men made simple dug-out canoes so that they could cross rivers or go out into lakes to fish. At first, then, man's earliest boats were small and simple and were powered and steered by paddles or oars.

When men wanted to travel greater distances, across very large lakes or small seas, for example, boats needed to be larger. We have all seen pictures of ancient ships with rows of oars at each side and slaves to row them. In fact these galleys were just a larger version of the single-man rowing boat, still made of wood and very much the same design as very early boats.

Early ships might have been primitive, they might have been made of wood and might have been powered through the water with oars, but they managed to cross oceans. The Viking ships that invaded Britain hundreds of years ago also reached North America. Later sailing ships, like those that Columbus sailed in, the galleons that formed the Spanish Armada or those that Nelson sailed in, were an advance.

But perhaps the greatest development in the history of ships was when steam engines replaced sails. For centuries, ships had depended on the wind to sail across the seas and oceans. At last, with an engine to drive a propeller, seamen did not have to rely totally on the weather. From then on, ships like the 'Great Eastern' could be larger, safer and more manoeuvrable in the water.

(254 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

Since we set sail from Southampton a week ago, the voyage has been awful. We have seen no sunshine, it has been raining all the time and the winds have been blowing hard. I have been seasick since we left.

This is only a small ship and there are only about fifty other passengers. Three or four have visited me and introduced themselves. They are all sympathetic because they have all been on lots of cruises before.

Tomorrow I want to go up on deck. We are calling into our first port, and I can't wait to get onto dry land again!

(103 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

reminder (1.4):	something that makes you remember
match (1.7):	be equal to
era (1.10):	an age or period
struck (1.13):	hit
steer (1.14):	guide, make (her) go in a particular direction
temporary (1.14):	provisional, lasting for a short time
on board (1.15):	on the ship

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. *I use my bicycle every day.*

- I am used to getting up early.*  
*I used to walk to school, but now I usually cycle.*
2. He can run very *fast*.  
 He can run *faster than* I can.
3. We *set off* at 7 o'clock yesterday morning.  
 That girl *has just set up* a new world record.
4. The engine has lost *its* power.  
*It's* warmer today than it was yesterday.
5. I've got *a lot of* books.  
 I've got a *great many* books.  
 This will cost *a great deal of* money.
6. on fire, in ink, in common, in tears, on foot, on purpose,  
 in love, in a hurry
7. I arrived *very* late, but I caught the train.  
 I arrived *too* late to catch the train.
8. He *is having* a house *built*.  
 She *had had* his suit *cleaned*.
9. He *won* the competition.  
 He *beat* all the other competitors.

### 3 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

文中第 6-7 行 “The *Cutty Sark* was one of the fastest ships that has ever been built (‘卡蒂萨克’号是帆船制造史上建造得最快的帆船之一)” 和第 9-10 行 “It marked the end of the great tradition of ships with sails and the beginning of a new era (它〈比赛〉标志着帆船伟大传统

的结束与一个新纪元的开始)”清楚表明, 本题 (c) her being one of the last and one of the fastest of a line of great sailing ships (它是一系列巨型帆船中最后的和速度最快的一艘) 为正确选项; 而 (a) the number of tourists who come to visit her annually (每年参观它的旅游者的人数)、(b) her likeness to other great sailing ships of the past (它与过去其他巨型帆船的相似之处) 和 (d) her victory in the race against the *Thermopylae* (在与“塞姆皮雷”号的比赛中所取得的胜利) 均与文中所述意义不符。

2. (a)

文中第 9~10 行 “It marked the end of the great tradition of ships with sails and the beginning of a new era (它〈比赛〉标志着帆船伟大传统的结束与一个新纪元的开始)”, 清楚表明本题 (a) a landmark in the history of shipping (航运史中的一个标志) 为正确选项; 而 (b) held to celebrate the invention of the steamship (举行是为了庆祝发明了蒸汽轮船)、(c) held especially for sailing ships on the route from Shanghai to London (主要为上海至伦敦航路上的帆船而举行) 和 (d) unusually slow because the *Cutty Sark* lost her rudder on route (非常缓慢, 因为“卡蒂萨克”号在路上失去了舵) 均与文中所述意义不符。

3. (d)

文中第 20~21 行 “Even this was remarkable, considering that she had had so many delays. There is no doubt that if she had not lost her rudder she would have won the race easily (但考虑到路上的多次耽搁, 这个成绩已很不容易了。毫无疑问, 如果中途没有失去舵, ‘卡蒂萨克’号肯定能在比赛中轻易夺冠)”, 表明本题 (d) the speed at which she made up the gap between her and the *Thermopylae*

(它弥补它与“塞姆皮雷”之间的差距所用的速度)为正确选项;而 (a) although last to reach Java, to take the lead on the Indian Ocean (虽然后到达爪哇岛,但在印度洋时驶到了前面)、(b) the fact that she managed to sail into port without a rudder (它设法在无舵的情况下驶进了港)和 (c) the speed at which she was sailing while having a new rudder fitted (安装上新舵后它行驶的速度)或不完整或与文中意义不符,因此均为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (c)

本题有关情态助动词“may”和“can”、“主语 + 系动词 + 形容词 + 动词不定式”的句子以及副词在句子中的位置的问题。文中第 1~2 行 “... the *Cutty Sark*, can still be seen at Greenwich”中的情态助动词“can”,在句子中用来表达可能性,即用来表达一种肯定推测,而非用来表达能力。情态助动词“may”也可以用来表达同样的含义。因此,本题 (c) may still be seen 为正确选项;在使用“主语 + 系动词 + 形容词 + 动词不定式”这样的句子结构时,应当注意主语同其后的动词不定式之间的语态关系。如为被动关系时,如本题所示,则应当使用该动词不定式的被动语态结构。据此,(a) is still possible to see 为错误选项;在用副词修饰上述句子结构中的形容词时,通常将其置于该形容词之前而非其后修饰该词。这样,可以判定 (b) is able still to be seen 为错误选项;此外,副词“possibly”通常用来表达“不确切,不确定”的概念,不能用来表达本文中“can”的含义,因此 (d) is still possibly seen 也为错误选项。

#### 5. (b)

文中第 4~5 行 “Before they were replaced by steamships,

sailing vessels like the *Cutty Sark* were used ... (在蒸汽船取代帆船之前,‘卡蒂萨克’号之类的帆船……)”中的代词“they”指帆船。此外,在表达“用 A 取代 B”这一概念时,A 和 B 通常为同类性质的事物。据此,本题 (b) the steamship replaced the sailing ship 为正确选项;而 (a) steamships replaced sail、(c) steamships replaced sailing 和 (d) the steam replaced the sail 均为错误选项。

6. (d)

文中第 12 行 “It seemed certain that she would be the first ship home ... (看来,‘卡蒂萨克’号首先返抵英国是确信无疑的了……)”中的“would”表明过去将来时态,因此本题 (d) was going to be 所使用的过去将来时形式为正确选项;而表示过去将来时概念的助动词“would”不能再同另一个表达将来时间概念的结构一同使用,因此 (a) would go to be 和 (b) would be going to be 均为错误选项;仅表达出一般过去时概念的选项 (c) went 与文中意义不符,因此也为错误选项。

7. (a)

本题有关起替代作用的助动词、反身代词以及过去完成时态的使用问题。当句子中没有助动词时,为了不重复所用的主动词,往往使用助动词“do”的结构形式。这样,用助动词“do”的过去式“did”代替主动词“arrived”的 (a) she did 为正确选项;由于主动词为行为动词“arrive”,而非系动词“be”,因此 (b) she was 为错误选项;当动词动作的承受者即宾语代词为动词动作的执行者即主语时才应使用反身代词,而且反身代词形式不能用于主语位置。根据反身代词的上述用法,可以判定 (c) herself 为错误选项。过去完成时用来表示在过去某一时刻或过去

某一动作之前已完成的动作。“卡蒂萨克”号晚于而非早于“塞姆皮雷”号到达英国,因此使用过去完成时结构形式的 (d) she had arrived 为错误选项。

8. (d)

文中第 21 行 “There is no doubt that if she had not lost her rudder she would have won the race easily (毫无疑问,如果中途没有失去舵,‘卡蒂萨克’号肯定能在比赛中轻易夺冠)”,使用的是以从属连词“if”引导的虚拟语气结构形式。当为表示过去情况的虚拟语气条件句时,如文中所示,“if”条件从句中的动词应使用过去完成时结构形式,其主句应使用过去将来完成时结构形式。表示过去情况的虚拟语气条件句,还可通过把上述虚拟语气条件句中的助动词“had”提到该主语之前而省略从属连词“if”来构成。如上所述,本题(d) Had she not lost 为正确选项;而 (a) That if she had not lost、(b) Not having lost 和 (c) Were she not to lose 的结构形式均不能用来表达文中的虚拟语气概念。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (b)

本题 (b) attracts (吸引) 为正确选项;而 (a) appeals to (对……有吸引力〈更强调由于唤起人们的某种感觉而产生的吸引力〉)、(c) catches (吸引住〈其后通常使用“attention”、“interest”等词;跟人时,通常表示“抓住”之意〉) 和 (d) pulls (吸引〈通常更强调为了得到支持或引起他人的兴趣或注意力等〉) 均不能准确表达文中的意义。

10. (a)

本题 (a) set out on 为正确选项。“to set out”表示“出发”之意,“on a race”表示“进行一场比赛”之意。而

(b) departed for 表示“出发去(某地)”之意, (c) entered 为“参加, 参与, 进入”之意, (d) went for 则通常用来表达“离开去(进行某项活动, 其后通常跟随表示该项活动的名词)”, 因此均为错误选项。

11. (a)

本题 (a) into 为正确选项, 所构成的短语“to go into”表达“进入(某种状态)”之意; 而 (b) on、(c) for 和 (d) after 所构成的短语“to go on”、“to go for”和“to go after”则分别表示“继续(某事)”、“试图得到, 争取”和“追逐, 追求”之意, 显然与文中表达的意义不符。

12. (c)

本题 (c) in view of (鉴于, 考虑到) 为正确选项; 而 (a) in respect of (关于, 在……方面)、(b) according to (根据, 按照) 和 (d) accounting (认为, 归结于) 显然与文中所用“considering”(第 20 行) 一词的意义不符。

## Lesson 26

### Wanted: a large biscuit tin

#### 征购大饼干筒

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Company—customers bake biscuits—send them to factory—  
offered \$ 10 a pound for biggest biscuit
2. Tremendous response—e.g. one biscuit in wheelbarrow—  
500 pounds
3. Another filled boot of car—another 713 pounds
4. But lorry brought one—2,400 pounds—baked by college  
student
5. Crane—biscuit from lorry
6. Manufacturers paid student \$ 24,000

#### 摘要写作参考答案

A biscuit company asked its customers to bake biscuits and send them to the factory. As a prize, they offered \$ 10 a pound for the biggest biscuit they received. The response was tremendous, with one biscuit weighing 500 pounds and another weighing 713 pounds. They thought that was the winner until a lorry delivered one which weighed 2,400 pounds baked by a college student. A crane lifted it from the lorry and the

manufacturers paid the student \$ 24,000.

(80 words)

### 作文参考答案

#### The last question

The other evening I listened to a quiz show on the radio which was organised by a firm of soap manufacturers. A member of the audience was invited to answer ten questions to win money. He could take a money prize after each correct answer or go on to a more difficult question. Each new question was worth twice the last question.

The man was very nervous in front of the audience, but he got the first question right. Then he slowly answered all the questions correctly—spelling questions, history questions, general knowledge, mathematics, ... The audience was getting very excited as the question master got to question number 9.

‘And your ninth question,’ he said, ‘is worth £ 1,024. Here it is. Which nineteenth-century sailing ship won a race from Shanghai to England?’

‘It was the *Thermopylae*,’ the man said confidently. ‘She beat the *Cutty Sark*.’

‘Correct,’ said the question master, and the audience went mad. The question master had to ask them to be quiet.

‘And here is your tenth and last question,’ the host said, ‘which is worth £ 2,048 exactly. “Advertisement”, how do you spell it?’

The man paused and then said: ‘I think this is a trick question. I *can* spell “advertisement”, but I can also spell

“it”. The answer is “I-T”.’

‘You’re absolutely right,’ the host said, ‘and you have won £2,048! Congratulations!’

(239 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

How are you? I hope you are keeping well. I know I haven't written recently but I have some good news. I have managed to find a job near you and want to move to your neighbourhood.

Naturally I need to find somewhere to live. As you live in the area, would you mind helping me to find some accommodation? I'm looking for a flat or even a small house to rent for at least six months.

I look forward to hearing from you as soon as you can find something for me.

(92 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

no longer (1.2):	not any more, not now
in their efforts to persuade us (1.4):	in their attempts to influence us to do something
classified (1.6):	put into categories
free (1.9):	without any cost or payment
enable (1.10):	make it possible for
capture (1.11):	attract and hold

## 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. He enjoys *playing tennis*.  
Imagine *going on holiday to England*!  
It's no use *complaining now*; it's too late.  
It's not worth *waiting any longer*; *they're not coming*.  
Would you mind *opening the window*?
2. These apples *have gone bad*.  
The leaves on these trees *turn yellow* or red in autumn.  
When the teacher entered the classroom, the students *grew quiet*.
3. This chair is *in the way*; can you move it?  
I met John *on the way* here this afternoon.  
*By the way*, I wanted to ask you something.
4. I *lent* a book to my friend.  
She *gave* some money to her children.
5. There was only *one* book on the table.  
I bought *a* book from the bookshop.
6. See text

### 3 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

文中第 10 ~ 11 行“Radio and television have made it possible for advertisers to capture the attention of millions of people in this way (电台、电视使广告商可以用这种手段吸引成百万人的注意力)”, 清楚表明本题 (d) Having radio and television at their disposal to promote their products (他们可以使用电台和电视推销他们的产品) 为

正确选项;而 (a) Knowing that we will buy anything provided it tastes good (他们知道只要品味好我们什么都会买)、(b) Giving every customer something free with each product he buys (在顾客买每一件产品时,免费给他们点东西)和 (c) Having so many free things all over the world to tempt people with (在全世界用许多免费的东西诱惑人们)根据本题所提问题均与作者要在文中表述的意义不符。

2. (a)

文中第 7~8 行 “Advertisers discovered years ago that all of us love to get something for nothing (广告商多年前就发现我们大家都喜欢免费得到东西)”,可被视为本文第 2 段和第 3 段的主题句。第 2 段后面的内容可视为广告商为此所采用的方法;第 3 段可视为具体的事例说明。这样,就可以理解为什么本题 (a) they wanted to get something for nothing (他们都想免费得到东西)为正确选项;而 (b) they hoped by winning easily to cover the cost of the baking ingredients (他们都想轻松获奖,以弥补烘制原料上的花费)、(c) they hoped to receive the prize money of \$ 24,000 (他们都希望得到 24,000 美元的奖金)和 (d) the manufacturers had offered free biscuits to anyone who entered (这家饼干公司已免费向所有参加者提供了饼干)均为错误选项。

3. (c)

文中第 21~22 行 “The manufacturers had to pay more money than they had anticipated, for they bought the biscuit from the student for \$ 24,000 (饼干公司不得不付出比他们预计多得多的钱,因为为买下那学生烘制的饼干他们支付了 24,000 美元)”,清楚表明本题 (c) That it

was possible to bake a biscuit as large as the student's (〈没想到〉烘烤出的饼干能有那个学生烘烤出的饼干那样大)应为本题的正确选项;而 (a) The number of people who would take an interest in the competition (〈没想到〉有那么多的人会对参加竞赛感兴趣)、(b) The number of ingredients required to bake a large biscuit with (〈没想到〉烘制一个大饼干需要那么多原料)和 (d) That there was time to bake a huge biscuit before the competition closed (〈没想到〉在竞赛结束之前会有烘制巨型饼干的时间)均与文中意义不符。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (c)

可以使用连词“as”表示让步状语从句,表达“although/though (虽然,尽管)”的含义,但需使用“补语(形容词)+as+主语+谓语动词”这样的结构形式。因此,本题 (c) Proud as we may be 为正确选项;而 (a) So proud may we be、(b) Although we may pride ourselves a great deal 和 (d) Pride ourselves as we may 在使用结构上均有误。应注意的是,(b) 的结构错误出现在其动词“pride (感到自豪)”与用于其后的介词搭配问题。在表达“对……感到自豪”意义时,通常应使用“to pride oneself on ...”这样的结构形式。

#### 5. (b)

本题有关动词“love (喜欢)”的使用结构问题。动词“love”通常作为及物动词使用,即在使用时其后需跟随相应的宾语。当其后同其他动词连用时,表达“喜欢做某事”概念时,通常使用“to love to do something”或“to love doing something”这样的结构形式。此外,该动词通常不能用于正在进行时形式。根据对该词用法的上述说明,

可以确定本题 (b) love getting 为正确选项;而 (a) are loving to get、(c) love to be getting 和 (d) love when we get 在使用结构上均有误。

6. (a)

文中第 8 行 “An advertisement which begins with the magic word FREE can rarely go wrong (凡是用‘免费’这个神奇的词开头的广告很少会失败)”所使用的陈述语气形式,用来说明一种真实的现象,即一个事实,并不包含任何假设条件或因果关系。由此,可以认为用一个定语从句形式修饰前文整个句子的 (a) which begins 为正确选项;而使用动词不定式表示原因的 (b) to begin 和以从属连词“if”引导一个条件状语从句的 (c) if it will begin 均不能准确表达出文中该句的语义概念;(d) what begins 中的关系代词“what”引导出一个名词性从句,相当于一个名词或代词,在句子中通常只能作句子的主语或宾语等,因此为错误选项。

7. (c)

本题有关动词“weigh (称得重量)”和名词“weight (重量)”在句子中的使用结构问题。动词 weigh 表达上述含义时,如文中那样,直接把表示重量的数量词置于其后即可。但在使用名词 weight 表达“某物有多大重量”时,通常使用“主语 + 系动词 + 重量数量 + in weight”这样的结构形式。此外,作过去分词使用的动词通常表达出“被动和/或完成”的语义概念;作现在分词使用的动词通常表达出“主动和/或进行”的语义概念。根据上述有关用法说明,可以明确本题 (c) in weight 为正确选项;而 (a) weighed、(b) weighing 和 (d) of weight 均为错误选项。

8. (d)

本题使用了表达“太……以至于……”意义的复合连词“so ... that ...”，其中“so”为副词，其后应使用一形容词或副词，而“that”为一连词，其后应使用一个完整的陈述句的结构形式。根据上述用法说明，可以确定本题 (d) was needed to have it removed 为正确选项；而 (a) did they need remove it、(b) they needed to remove it 和 (c) was needed to have removed it 均为错误选项。这里应注意的是，(c) 中所使用的“to have removed it”使用的是动词不定式的完成时结构，表达“已做完某件事”的概念；而 (d) 中所使用的“to have it removed”则表达“使某事（由他人）完成”的概念，语义上的不同应予明确。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (c)

文中第 4 行 “In their efforts to persuade us to buy this or that product... (做广告的人在力图劝说我们买下这种产品或那种产品之前……)” 中的 “this or that” 通常用来表达某一无需确切说明的事物时使用，即用来表达“这样或那样，各类” 含义时使用。本题选项中，只有 (c) some product or other 中使用的 “some ... or other” 可用来表达此含义，因此为正确选项；而 (a) one or other product 中的 “one or other” 通常用来表达“(几个中间中的) 或者这个或者那个” 之意；在表达文中意义时，如上所述，该短语中的指示代词 “this or that” 的词序不能互换，因此 (b) that or this product 为错误选项；(d) a product or two 中使用的 “a/one .. or two” 通常用来表达“一两件、个、种” 的含义，因此也为错误选项。

10. (d)

文中第 13 ~ 14 行 “The response to this competition was

tremendous (这次竞赛在听众中引起了极其热烈的反响)”中的“response”一词表达“反响, 反应”之意, 因此本题 (d) reaction 为正确选项; 而 (a) answer (回答, 答案)、(b) reply (回答, 答复) 和 (c) attraction (吸引力) 均不能作为本题的正确选项。

11. (b)

文中第 16 行 “... with a biscuit which occupied the whole boot of ... (……那饼干把汽车行李箱挤得满满的……)”中的“occupied”一词表达“占据”之意, 这样只有 (b) took up all the space in 中所使用的动词短语 “took up” 可用来表达此意, 因此为正确选项; 而 (a) took complete possession of 中所使用的 “to take possession of” 表达“占有”之意; (c) completely covered 中的 “cover” 一词通常用来表达“覆盖, 遮盖”的含义; (d) on the whole filled 中的 “filled” 一词虽然可用来表达 “occupied” 一词的含义, 但与其一同使用的副词短语 “on the whole” 所表达出的“总的说来”的含义, 使其不能表达出文中该句所表达的语义。

12. (a)

文中第 21 ~ 22 行 “The manufacturers had to pay more money than they had anticipated ... (饼干公司不得不付出比他们预计多得多的钱……)”中的 “anticipated” 一词表达“预期, 预料”的含义, 这样只有 (a) expected 能用来表达此意; 而 (b) hoped (希望)、(c) intended (打算) 和 (d) wished (希望) 均不能用来表达此意。

## Lesson 27

### Nothing to sell and nothing to buy

#### 不卖也不买

#### 1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Real tramps—not beggars—sell nothing—require nothing
2. They seek independence—not sacrifice human dignity
3. Tramps choose their way of life—aware of consequences
4. May not know—next meal—but not worries others have
5. Can travel easily—few possessions
6. Sleep in the open—close to nature

#### 摘要写作参考答案

Unlike beggars, real tramps have nothing to sell and require nothing from others. Although they seek independence, they will not sacrifice their human dignity. They choose their own way of life and are aware of the consequences. They may not know where the next meal is coming from, but they do not have the worries that others have. They can travel easily because they have few possessions and when they sleep in the open, they are close to nature.

(79 words)

## 作文参考答案

### Tramps are parasites

The majority of adults in society contribute to society by working. They work, earn money and pay taxes for the things we all need—hospitals, schools, public transport, the fire brigade, law and order and so on. We don't expect children or very old people to work and pay taxes. But everyone else should. So why should people like tramps and beggars be different?

Tramps say all they want is their freedom. Well, they may be free, but their freedom is paid for by everyone else in society. There are many unemployed people who simply cannot get a job—but they would work if they could. And many beggars are people who have turned to begging because they cannot find a job. Tramps are not like them. Tramps lead a very selfish way of life and it is a way of life that shows an unwillingness to assume responsibility for others. The rest of us have a home, children, work, and so on. But not tramps!

Tramps are lazy parasites on society, and if we all had their mentality, society would not exist, for them or anyone else.

Although we might in some ways be envious of tramps, and although we might envy their freedom, how many of us could be as selfish as them? How many of us could say 'I'm going to live exactly as I want, and damn the rest of society! '? I couldn't.

(236 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

I know I wrote to you only a few weeks ago, but I'm writing this time to ask if you can help me. Do you think I can get a job in the UK for a few months? I don't mind doing almost anything—as long as it's not too hard. I could work in a hotel or a restaurant, for example, but I couldn't work on a building site!

I need money to help to pay for a holiday that I am planning to take next year in Australia. But a visit to the UK would also help me improve my English.

(103 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

value (1.4):	worth
estimate (1.5):	assess
perform (1.6):	do
possess (1.7):	have, own
grudge (1.8):	to be unwilling (to ...)
precisely (1.8):	exactly
skills (1.9):	abilities

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. He is said *to be very rich*.  
It is said that *he is very rich*.
2. I'd like some *information*.  
The *news* from home is very good.

I've done a lot of *work* today.

How much *luggage* have you got?

3. They say *it will be* a fine day tomorrow.

*There was* a terrible storm in the night.

*There has been* another burglary in the village.

4. I opened the door quietly *so as not to* disturb the baby.

I worked hard *in order that my mother* might be proud of me.

She screamed loudly *so that* someone would hear her.

5. He never expected his bicycle *to be found*.

Their house will *have to be sold*.

6. Who was this book written by?

This is not the sort of book (which) I am interested in.

7. See text.

### 3 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

文中第6~7行“*There are times when we would willingly give everything we possess to save our lives, yet we might grudge paying a surgeon a high fee for offering us precisely this service (有时, 我们为了挽救生命, 愿意付出我们所占有的一切, 但就在外科大夫给我们提供了这种服务后, 我们却可能为所支付的昂贵费用而抱怨)*”所提供的这一极端事例, 说明本题 (a) *people's needs vary so much according to their circumstances (人们的需求根据其情况会有极大的差异)* 为正确选项; 而 (b) *we refuse to admit that surgeons perform a very necessary service (我们不承*

认外科大夫提供非常必要的服务)、(c) we seldom should give everything we possess for such services (我们很少应当为这样的服务付出我们所占有的一切) 和 (d) such services are paid for in the same way as material goods (这样的服务以与物质产品相同的方式付费) 均与文中所述意义不符。

2. (d)

文中第 14~15 行 “He has deliberately chosen to lead the life he leads and is fully aware of the consequences (他是故意地选择过那种生活的, 并完全清楚这一种方式生活的后果)” 以及其后所给的种种说明性实例, 清楚表明本题 (d) his freedom more than compensates for the inconveniences of such a life (〈流浪汉认为〉他们的自由远远弥补了这种生活所带来的不便) 为正确选项; 而 (a) he will never need to ask people for anything (他决不需要向人们要任何东西)、(b) to sleep in the open in order to be closer to the world of nature (为了更接近大自然, 而露天睡觉) 和 (c) he would rather lead the life of a criminal than do any work (他宁愿过罪犯的生活也不干任何工作) 均与文中所述意义不符。

3. (b)

文中第 20~21 行 “... but how many of us can honestly say that we have not felt a little envious of their simple way of life and their freedom from care? (……但是, 我们中有多少人能够坦率地说我们对流浪汉的简朴生活与无忧无虑的景况不感到有些羡慕呢?)”, 以及第 15~16 行 “... but he is free from the thousands of anxieties which afflict other people(……但他不像有些人那样被成千上万桩愁事所折磨)”, 清楚说明本题 (b) his life is not burdened

with the anxieties we are often troubled by (他并不承受经常折磨我们的那些愁事的生活负担)为正确选项;而 (a) we feel that our way of life is undignified compared to a tramp's (与流浪汉的生活相比,我们感到我们的生活失去了尊严)、(c) of the freedom he has from the struggle to keep alive (他在为生存而进行的斗争中所具有的自由)和 (d) we realize that it is better than having to beg for a livelihood (我们认识到它比不得不为了生计而乞讨强)均与文中所述意义不符。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (b)

本题有关动词“grudge”和时态的使用方法。在动词“grudge”后,通常使用单宾语、双宾语和如文中那样使用作宾语的动词“-ing”形式。此外,就文中第8行“... yet we might grudge paying a surgeon a high fee for offering us precisely this service (……然而我们却可能为所支付的昂贵费用而抱怨)”所使用的“might grudge”结构而言,它为表达将来情况的虚拟语气,因此其后的“paying”也表达的是将来的动作。如上所述,本题 (b) the high fee we would pay 为正确选项(其中的“would pay”也为表达将来情况的虚拟语气);而 (a) a high fee we had paid 中的时态使用有误; (c) the high fee paying 中的“paying”所用的语态有误; (d) to pay a high fee 中的动词“pay”使用有误。在动词“pay”后可以使用双宾语的结构形式,但应使用“to pay + 宾语(人) + 宾语(钱款)”这样的结构形式。

#### 5. (b)

文中第12~13行“*They have nothing to sell and require nothing from others* (他们既不出售任何东西,也不需要从别人那儿得到任何东西)”,使用了肯定句的结构形式,

用否定词“nothing”构成句子的否定含义。就本句意义而言,本题(b) have nothing to sell nor do they 为正确选项。应注意否定词“nor”的使用。以题中句子结构用“nor”表达文中意义时,该词之后应使用倒装语序;(a) do not have to sell anything or 和 (c) have to sell nothing nor they 中使用的“to have to do something”的基本形式用来表达“不得不做某事”的含义,仅就语义而言,这与文中直接使用的“to have something (有某物)”的意义不同,因此为错误选项;而(d) have not sold anything and do not 中的“have not sold”为完成时态,表达的概念也与文中不同,所以也为错误选项。

6. (b)

文中第16~17行中的“... make it possible for him ...”表达“……使他能够……”的含义,因此本题(b) is able 为正确选项;(a) 中的“may be able”表达“也许能够”的含义,与文中意义不符,因此为错误选项;(c) 中的“can”为情态助动词,其后需使用动词原形,而不能使用带“to”的动词不定式形式;(d) 中的“is possible”表达一种可能性,即“很可能”的含义,也与文中意义不符,所以也为错误选项。

7. (d)

本题有关动词“speak”与其后介词的搭配问题。文中第19~20行“We often speak of tramps with contempt ... (我们常常带有轻蔑地说起流浪汉……)”中的动词短语“to speak of ...”意为“谈起,说到”之意,因此本题(d) of 为正确选项;而其他选项(a) for、(b) on 和 (c) to 所构成的短语“to speak for ...”、“to speak on ...”和“to speak to ...”,分别表示“为……辩护;要求得到……”、“就(某论题等)发言”和“对……说话,对……演讲”之意,不能

用来表达文中意义,因此均为错误选项。

8. (c)

文中第 20 行“... but how many of us can honestly say that ... (……是我们中有多少人能够坦率地说……)”已清楚表明 (c) how many 为正确选项,其中“many”一词作代词使用;在疑问代词“who”后不能使用介词“of”结构,因此 (c) who 为错误选项;由 (b) which ones 和 (d) what one 所构成的“which ones of”和“what one of”这样的结构形式不成立;虽然使用“which”代替 (d) 中的“what”可以使结构成立,但是表达的意义与文中意义不符。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (c)

本题有关对名词“surgeon (外科大夫)”一词的解释。显而易见,本题 (c) performs operations (做/进行手术的〈人〉) 为正确选项;而下述对该词的解释 (a) saves people's lives (拯救人们生命〈的人〉)、(b) gives people financial advice (给人们金融咨询〈的人〉) 和 (d) insures people's lives against sickness or death (确保人们不得病和不死亡〈的人〉) 显然是错误选项。

10. (a)

文中第 16 行“His few material possessions make it possible for him to move from place to place with ease (他几乎没有什么财产,这使他能够轻松自如地在各地奔波)”中的短语“from place to place”为“从一处到另一处,各地”之意。在本题选项中,只有 (a) here and there (各地,到处) 可用来表达文中短语意义,因此为正确选项;而 (b) one way or another (不是用这种方法就是用那种/各种方法)、(c) from square to square (从广场到广场) 和 (d) in

every sense (从任何一种意义上说)均不能用来表达文中短语“from place to place”的含义,因此为错误选项。

11. (b)

文中第 18 行 “He may hunt, beg, or steal occasionally to keep himself alive . . . (为了生存,他可能会去打猎、乞讨、偶而偷上一两回……)”中的 “to keep oneself alive”意为 “使自己生存,使自己活下来”,只有 (b) survive (活下来) 可用来表达文中短语意义,因此为正确选项;而 (a) make a living (〈靠挣钱来〉谋生)、(c) be living (活着,有生命) 和 (d) be alive (活着,有生命),均不能用来表达文中短语 “keep himself alive”的含义。

12. (c)

文中第 19 ~ 20 行 “We often speak of tramps with contempt . . . (我们常常带有轻蔑地说起流浪汉……)”中的介词短语 “with contempt”为“轻蔑地”之意,可以使用本题 (c) look down on (轻视,看不起) 表达文中句子的含义;但其他选项中所给动词 (a) convict (证明……有罪)、(b) blame (指摘,责怪) 和 (d) condemn (谴责)均不能用来表达文中句子的含义。

## Lesson 28

### Five pounds too dear

#### 五镑也太贵

1

写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Next man—expensive watches and pens—looked at one—looked genuine
2. Worth £ 50—could have it for £ 30—writer offered £ 5
3. Eventually—writer walking away—man agreed—took £ 5
4. Writer pleased—till back on board
5. Pen impossible to fill—has never written

#### 摘要写作参考答案

The next man who approached him was selling watches and pens, and when the writer looked at one, it looked genuine. The man said it was worth £ 50 but the writer could have it for £ 30. The writer offered him £ 5 and waited. Eventually, as the writer was walking away, the man agreed and took £ 5. The writer was very pleased—until he was back on board. The pen was impossible to fill. It has never written a word since.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### The bargain

The writer had only just got rid of a man who was trying to sell a diamond ring when another man approached him with some expensive pens and watches. When he held them up for the writer to look at, the writer showed quite a lot of interest.

‘Can I see one of the pens?’ the writer asked the man. They all looked genuine. The man handed the writer one and said: ‘It’s a beautiful pen, sir. It’s worth £ 50, but you can have it for £ 30.’

When the writer offered him just £ 5, there was an argument about the price, but eventually the man said: ‘You can have it for £ 10, sir. That’s the least I can take.’

As the writer walked away shrugging his shoulders, the man followed him. ‘I can’t really do it, sir—I’m almost giving it away,’ he said, ‘but you can have it for £ 5.’

The writer was obviously very pleased. He gave the man £ 5, took the pen, and the man disappeared quickly into the crowd. The writer was extremely pleased: he had bought a very expensive pen for just £ 5. What a bargain! Later, back on board ship, the writer discovered why the man had been in such a hurry to get away; you couldn’t fill the pen with ink and it just didn’t work! It wasn’t such a ‘bargain’ after all!

(235 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

I am writing to you because I have heard that you want to sell your CD player.

Most of my friends have one, so I have wanted to buy one

for some time. I've looked at new ones, but I can't afford one, and my parents won't lend me the money, so I would like to buy yours.

Perhaps you can tell me something about it. Can you tell me how old your machine is, what condition it is in and how much you are asking for it? Have you also got any CDs that you'd like to sell with it?

(101 words)

2

语法: 词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

loaded with wares (1.1):

piled high with goods

liner (1.1):

passenger ship

rugs (1.4):

mats, small carpets

bargaining (1.6):

arguing about the price (of goods)

went to great lengths (1.11):

did everything he could

impression (1.12):

mark, scratch

to get rid of him (1.13):

to make him go away

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. I had *no sooner* opened the door *than* the telephone began to ring.

He had *no sooner* finished his speech *than* everyone began to clap.

2. She is *as* old *as* I am.

She is *not as* tall *as* I am.

3. *While I was working in the garden*, my brother was sitting in the sun.

*I was just going into the shop when* I met an old friend.

4. *It takes* me an hour to get to college in the mornings.

*It has taken* me two hours to get here today.

5. This car was *made in* Germany.

It was *made by* Germans.

The World Cup is *made of* gold.

Glass is *made from* sand and lime.

6. *Up till now* I have been to the UK three times.

*So far* I have seen that film five times.

### 3 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

文中第2—4行“Before she had anchored, the men from the boats had climbed on board and the decks were soon covered with colourful rugs from Persia, silk from India, ... (大船还未下锚,小船上的人就纷纷爬上客轮,一会儿工夫,甲板上就摆满了色彩斑斓的波斯地毯、印度丝绸……)”说明本题(b) While they were laying it out on the decks (当他们在甲板上把货物铺满一地时)为正确选项;而(a) Once it had been brought to them by the small boats (一旦小船把货物捎给他们时)、(c) As soon as the liner had anchored in the harbour (客轮刚一在港口下锚时)和(d) Once the tourists had arrived on board (旅游者刚乘船到达时)均与文中与本题相关的意义不符,故为错误选项。

2. (c)

文中第 9 行 “I had no sooner got off the ship than I was assailed by a man who wanted to sell me a diamond ring (我刚下船, 就被一个人截住, 他向我兜售一枚钻石戒指)” 以及第 13 行 “It took me over half an hour to get rid of him (我花了半个多小时才摆脱了他的纠缠)”, 说明本题 (c) A man started pestering him to buy a diamond (一个人就开始纠缠着他买一枚钻石戒指) 为正确选项; 而 (a) A man who had followed him off the ship tried to sell him a diamond (一个一直跟随着他下了船的人想卖给他一枚钻石戒指)、(b) He was made to look at some diamonds against his will (他不得不违心地看一些钻石饰物) 和 (d) On his way to a shop, he met a man who was selling diamonds (在去一家商店的路上, 他碰到了正在兜售钻石饰物的人) 均与文中与本题相关的意义不符。

3. (b)

文中第 17 行 “I shook my head and held up five fingers indicating that I was willing to pay £ 5 (我摇了摇头, 伸出 5 根手指表示我只愿出 5 镑钱)” 以及第 20 行 “Though he kept throwing up his arms in despair, he readily accepted the £ 5 I gave him (虽然他绝望地举起双手, 但他毫不迟疑地收下了我付给他的 5 镑钱)”, 说明本题 (b) The man eventually agreed to his original offer (那个人最终还是同意了他最初开的价) 为正确选项; 而 (a) He had been unable to make the man understand he did not want it (他一直未能让那个人明白他不想买它)、(c) He decided it was the only way to get rid of the man (他认为只有这样才能摆脱他) 和 (d) He was afraid the man might otherwise become violent (他担心那个人否则会强

烈地逼迫)均与文中与本题相关的意义不符。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (d)

本题有关表示时间状语的连词和介词“until”和“before”的使用方法。在用时间状语从句表达的句子中,通常不使用将来时态,因此含有过去将来时结构的(a) before I would buy 为错误选项。从属连词“until”用来引导时间状语从句,表示“直到……为止”之意。在使用中,由于该词本身含有“延续性”时间概念,因此通常不能与其主句中表示“短暂”时间概念的动词一同使用,或需用该表示“短暂”时间概念动词的否定形式来表达肯定含义。由于本题中的动词“decided”为表达“短暂”时间概念的动词,因此使用从属连词“until”的(b) until I was buying 和(c) until I had bought 均为错误选项;这样,(d) before buying 为正确选项。在此正确选项中,“before”可被视为介词,其后的动词“-ing”结构可视为动名词。

#### 5. (c)

本题有关动词“want”的使用结构问题。在使用动词“want”时,其结构形式大体如下:to want to do something (想做某件事);to want somebody to do something (想让某人做某事);to want somebody doing something (想让某人做某事)。但第3种形式通常只用于否定结构之中。根据上述用法,本题(c) me to buy 为正确选项;而(a) that I bought 、(b) for me to buy 和(d) my buying 均在结构或时态使用上有误。

#### 6. (a)

本题有关对过去情况进行肯定推测的“must have done”的使用问题。文中第10行“... but I could not conceal the fact that I was impressed by ... (……但我不能掩饰

这样一个事实：其钻石之大给我留下了深刻的印象……)”中的“could not conceal”为“不能/无法掩饰”之意。本题主语“the man”所做出的动作“notice”为发生在过去的动作，自然应当使用本题 (a) must have noticed (肯定注意到)来表达作者就此做出的肯定推测；而 (b) had to notice (不得不注意到)、(c) must notice (必须注意到)和 (d) could notice (也许/可能注意到)均不能用来表达“对过去情况的肯定推测”的意义，因此为错误选项。

7. (d)

文中第 16~17 行 “The man said that the pen was worth £ 50, but as a special favour, he would let me have it for £ 30 (那人说那支笔值 50 英镑,作为特别优惠,他愿意让我出 30 英镑成交)”中使用的“let have”即为“give”之意,因此本题 (d) he might give me 为正确选项;而 (a) he would let it to me 中所使用的“to let something to somebody”,通常用来表达“将(房子、地产等)出租给某人”之意;(b) he could have let me have it 中所使用的“could have done”的结构形式通常用来表达“过去本应做但实际并未做”的含义和 (c) it would have been mine 所表达的“它将成为我的”的含义,显然均与文中意义不符。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8. (c)

文中第 5~6 行 “It was difficult not to be tempted (要想不为这些东西所动心是很困难的)”所表达的意义,可以用 (c) resist 来表达。这里,“to resist temptation”表达“抵御诱惑”之意;而 (a) avoid、(b) fight 和 (d) stand 中所使用的动词,分别表示“避免,回避”、“同……斗争”和“容忍,忍受”之意,与文中表达意义不符,因此为错误

选项。

9. (c)

可以使用选项 (c) 中表示时间状语的副词“Afterwards”表达的本题句子结构形式来表达文中第 14 行“The next man to approach me was selling expensive pens and watches (向我兜售的第 2 个人是卖名贵钢笔和手表的)”的含义;而 (a) The later、(b) On the next time 和 (d) After 中所用短语或单词有误。将 (a) 中的定冠词“the”去掉,直接使用副词“Later”即可表达文中句子的含义;(b) 中的“next time”表示“下一次”之意。在用“time”表达“次数”的副词片语中,其前通常不使用前置词;(d) 中的“After”,在此题中只能作表达时间状语的从属连词使用,表示“在……之后”之意。

10. (b)

文中第 17 行“... and held up five fingers indicating that I was willing to pay £ 5(……并且伸出 5 根手指表示我只愿出 5 镑钱)”中的“was willing”表达“愿意”之意,因此本题选项中的 (b) was ready to (愿意,乐意) 为正确选项;而 (a) wished (希望,想)、(c) intended (想,打算) 和 (d) expected (期望,预料) 均不能准确表达文中句子的含义,故为错误选项。

11. (b)

文中第 18 行“... the man acted as if he found my offer outrageous ... (……那人激动地打着手势,仿佛我的出价使他不能容忍……)”中的形容词“outrageous”意为“令人不悦的,极端无理的”。因此,本题 (b) preposterous (荒谬的,不像话的) 为正确选项;而 (a) irritating (令人恼怒的)、(c) hilarious (令人发笑的) 和 (d) unspeakable (说不出的,无法形容的) 均不能表达出文中

“outragerous”一词的含义。

12. (a)

可以用 (a) *However* 表示文中第 21 行中的 “No matter how” 的含义, 在这里为连接代词, 引导让步状语从句, 但该词起到副词的作用, 因此其后需使用形容词或副词这样的结构形式。(b) *Whatever* 一词也为连接代词, 引导让步状语从句, 但该词起到名词或形容词的作用。因此, 当其起到名词作用时不能用其修饰其他词类, 而作形容词时可用其修饰其后的名词。(c) *Whichever* 一词也为连接代词, 引导让步状语从句, 表示 “无论哪一个” 的含义。(d) *So ever* 不能作连词引导一个句子。

## Lesson 29

### Funny or not?

### 是否可笑?

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Man broke right leg—before Christmas—taken to hospital
2. When—go home?—didn't want—spend Christmas there
3. Christmas Day—still right leg in plaster—day in hospital
4. Next day—good chance of leaving hospital—New Year
5. New Year's Eve—party—drank too much
6. End of party—slipped on piece of ice—broke left leg

#### 摘要写作参考答案

A man broke his right leg just before Christmas and was taken to hospital. He wanted to know when he could go home. On Christmas Day he was still in hospital with his leg in plaster, but there was a good chance of leaving hospital for the New Year. In fact, he was out in time to go to a New Year's Eve party where he drank too much, slipped on a piece of ice and broke his left leg.

(80 words)

## 作文參考答案

### The gasman

An aunt of mine lives in a small village in the country and tells this story of what happened to her once. In order to understand the story, you should know a little about life in an English village. For example, people often enjoy afternoon tea together, they still leave doors unlocked, and certain tradesmen are used to delivering goods and, with permission, leaving them inside the owner's house.

One day my aunt had invited some friends round for afternoon tea. She had put some cakes in the oven to bake, and had gone upstairs to do some cleaning. When she finished, she decided to have a bath before her friends arrived. She was just about to get into the bath when she suddenly remembered the cakes. She wrapped a bath towel round her, went down to the kitchen and took the cakes out of the oven. Just then, there was a knock on the back door. She was sure it was the baker, who would open the door, come in and leave the bread on the kitchen table.

She panicked, dashed into the cupboard under the stairs and closed the door. Then, horrified, she heard footsteps coming to the cupboard. The door opened and there stood the gasman who had come to read the meter—which was in the cupboard. My aunt blushed and said, 'I'm very sorry. I was expecting the baker.' 'Oh,' the gasman said. 'sorry, madam.' He closed the door gently and left.

(250 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

I'm writing to see if you can help me. I've looked everywhere here at home, but can't find my overcoat anywhere. I have an idea I left it at your house when I came to see you about a fortnight ago.

It's quite a new coat, it's dark blue with a black collar, and there may be a pair of my gloves in one of the pockets.

Could you look for it and let me know if I left it there? If so, I will come and collect it as soon as I can.

(94 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

brought up (1.2):	raised, educated
mysteriously bound up with (11.2-3):	strangely connected to
make (1.5):	force
universal appeal (1.8):	international attraction
stems (1.10):	comes
come into fashion (1.10):	become popular
distasteful (1.11):	unpleasant, tasteless

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. operate on, differ from, smell of, encourage ... in, lean on, approve of, delight in, suffer from, assure of, escape from, interested in, concentrate on, include in
2. *He found it difficult to walk after his operation.*

*She considered it* sensible to forget what they had said to her.

*He thought it* silly to make a fuss.

3. When he heard the joke, he *laughed*.

He *laughed at* the joke.

4. *amusing* (1.5) = funny:

The man *amused* us with some jokes.

I *enjoyed* his jokes.

He *entertained* the people by playing the piano for about an hour.

5. See text.

6. Please *keep off* the grass.

Don't run so fast. I can't *keep up with* you.

There was a notice on his door which said 'Keep out'.

7. I *could* swim very well when I was younger.

I *was able to* solve the problem after an hour.

### 3

### 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据文中第 1、2 段的论述,以及文中第 12 行“The following example of ‘sick humour’ will enable you to judge for yourself (下面是个‘病态幽默’的实例,你可以据此自己做出判断)”,可以认为本题 (c) your ability to see the funny side of an unpleasant event (你理解一件不幸事件的可笑方面的能力)为正确选项;而 (a) your having been brought up in America (你在美国长大)、(b) the joke being related to a fundamentally comic

situation (与一个从根本上来讲是喜剧情节有关的笑话) 和 (d) your ability to laugh to tears (你笑出眼泪的能力) 均与本题所述的“病态幽默”无太多关系。

2. (b)

文中第 16 ~ 17 行 “He spent a miserable day in bed thinking of all the fun he was missing (他在床上郁郁不乐地躺了一天, 想着他错过的种种欢乐)”, 说明本题 (b) he was not able to be with his friends (〈因为〉他不能同他的朋友们在一起) 为正确选项; 而 (a) the doctor had failed to attend to him (〈因为〉大夫没能照料他)、(c) being unable to walk, he did not enjoy the celebrations at the hospital (〈因为〉不能行走, 他没在医院欢度节日) 和 (d) he thought he might also miss the New Year's Eve celebrations (〈因为〉他以为他可能还要错过除夕夜的庆祝活动) 均与文中有关本题的描述不符, 因此为错误选项。

3. (a)

本题有关对用来说明“病态幽默”的这个笑话的理解。根据文中第 3 段所述内容, 可以认为本题 (a) no sooner was the man out of hospital than he had to go back in again (这个人刚从医院出来, 就不得不又住进了医院) 为该笑话的可笑之点, 因此为正确选项; 而 (b) the man should not have said how much he hated hospitals (这个人要是不说他是多么讨厌医院就没事儿了)、(c) the man would be unable to walk for the rest of his life (这个人在下半辈子走不了路了) 和 (d) the man had not got a leg to stand on (这个人没用一条腿支撑着) 均非该笑话所要说明的含义, 因此为错误选项。

## Structure 结构

### 4. (a)

本题有关定冠词和不定冠词的使用方法。如果使用不定冠词,通常表达泛指概念,如文中第3~4行所用形式“A Frenchman, for instance, might find it hard . . . (譬如,法国人听完一则俄国笑话可能很难发笑……)”那样,可以表达出“法国人”这一统称概念。另一种表达“总称”概念的方法,是使用定冠词形式,即构成“the French”形式,因此本题(a) The French 为正确选项;而使用了不定冠词“a”的(b) A French 为错误选项。(c) A man in France 所表达的是“一个在法国的人”的含义,与文中意义不符;(d) If you were French 所构成的是虚拟语气结构形式,但全句缺少主句主语,因此为错误选项。

### 5. (a)

本题有关“most”的使用方法。在表达“大多数(的),大部分(的),几乎全部(的)”概念时,通常可以使用“most”(形容词或代词)。作形容词时,其后应当使用相应的名词;作代词时,通常构成“most of”这一结构,但most of不能用于没有限定词(定冠词the、物主代词或指示代词)的名词之前。根据其上述用法,可以确定本题(a) Most 为正确选项;(b) Most of 为错误选项。在使用名词“majority”表达上述意义时,通常使用“the majority of”这一结构形式。(d) Mostly 中的“mostly”一词为副词,在此不能用其修饰其后的名词“stories”。

### 6. (a)

文中第13行“A man who had broken his right leg was taken to hospital . . . (某人摔断了右腿被送进医院……)”中的定语从句所表达的意义为“一个摔断了(自己)右腿的人”。本题只有(a) (A man) whose right leg

had been (broken) 能够表达出文中该定语从句的意义；而 (b) (A man) who had the right leg (broken) 中所使用的 “to have something done” 的结构, 通常用来表达 “使某物处于被完成的状态”, 并不能用来表达 “某物被完成的状态是由主语做出” 这一含义。此外, 其时态也与文中所用时态不符。(c) (A man) with one right leg (broken) (一条右腿被摔断的人) 短语本身的语义就有误；(d) (A man) to whom the right leg had been (broken) (一个早被摔断右腿的人) 中有语法错误, 因此也为错误选项。

7. (b)

本题有关复合连词 “no sooner ... than ... (一……就……)” 的使用方法。一般需与过去完成时一同使用。当将其用于句首时, 通常需与其后构成倒装形式。这样, (b) than he began 为正确选项；而 (a) and then he began、(c) he began 和 (d) to begin 均不符 “no sooner ... than ...” 的基本结构形式, 因此为错误选项。

8. (c)

本题 (c) by drinking 为正确选项。(c) 中的 “by drinking (...)” 为表达方式状语的介词短语, 即表达出 “通过喝酒达到补偿” 的含义。(a) 中的 “drinking” 与其后内容构成分词短语结构形式, 只能用来表达出 “drink” 这一动作与 “compensate” 动作同时发生, 表达出的语义与文中不符；(b) 中的 “to drink” 与其后内容构成动词不定式短语结构, 用来表达目的状语, 不能用来表达文中所要表达的语义；而 (d) 中的 “and drunk” 与其后内容构成并列结构形式, 表明它同 “compensate” 为两个相继发生的动作, 同样不能用来表达文中所要表达的语义, 因此也为错误选项。

## Vocabulary 词汇

### 9. (d)

课文中使用的是“did his best”，所表达的意思是“尽最大的努力”。由于 (d) did all he could 所表达的意思与其相符，因此为正确选项；而 (a) worked very well (工作得很好)、(b) could not have been better (不可能再好了) 和 (c) was extremely skilled (技术高超) 都与“did his best”所表达的意思不符，故均为错误选项。

### 10. (d)

课文中使用的是动词“console”，意即“安慰，慰问”。由于 (d) comforted (安慰) 所表达的意思与“console”相符，因此为正确选项；而 (a) felt (觉得)、(b) advised (劝告) 和 (c) pleased (令某人高兴) 都与“console”所表达的意思不符，故均为错误选项。

### 11. (c)

课文中使用的是表示程度的“how much (多么地)”。由于 (c) to what extent (多么地) 所表达的意思与“how much”相符，因此为正确选项；而 (a) at great lengths that (详尽地)、(b) to their cost (以他们的代价) 和 (d) why (为什么) 所表达的意思都与“how much”不符，故均为错误选项。

### 12. (b)

该处所要表达的是“(他还在嘟囔着) 同样的有关医院的事”，这里省略了“hospital”一词，因为通过前文的叙述已经得知他一直在谈论什么，所以此处用 (b) to the same effect (类似的，同样的) 表达上述意思，故为正确选项；而 (a) in the same way (以同样的方式)、(c) of common sense (常识的) 和 (d) of some sort (某类的) 所表达的不是上述意思，因此均为错误选项。

# Lesson 30

## The death of a ghost

### 幽灵之死

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Joined army—Second World War—hated army life—deserted
2. Returned to farm—father hid him—end of war—remained in hiding after war
3. Father told everyone—killed in action
4. Joe and Bob—kept secret—Eric lived as recluse
5. Sleep during day—work at night—‘ghost of Endley’

#### 摘要写作参考答案

Eric joined the army during the Second World War, but hated army life, so he deserted. He returned to the farm where his father hid him until the end of the war, and he remained in hiding after the war. His father told everyone that he had been killed in action. Joe and Bob kept the secret, so Eric lived as a recluse. He slept during the day and worked at night, so he became the ‘ghost of Endley’.

(79 words)

## 作文参考答案

### The ghost of Endley

When I came in to work one morning I noticed that work had been done overnight—some hay had been cut and the cowsheds and other buildings had been cleaned, so I decided to stay up all the next night to try to solve the mystery. (I didn't tell Joe and Bob, of course.) I hid in the barn and waited.

Obviously I fell asleep because I suddenly woke up to find that it was dark. I went straight to the cowshed and found that it had already been cleaned. Then I went out to the fields where I could just see a figure working; I couldn't see whether it was a man, or a woman, or perhaps a ghost. I was scared, so I rushed back to the farmhouse and woke up the others. We all went out to the fields to see who it was, but when we got there, there was no one there.

When I was in the fields before, I didn't know what or who the figure was. But now I was sure it was a ghost so I immediately decided not to work at Endley Farm any longer and handed in my resignation. When I told my story to the villagers, many of them still didn't believe me, even though they knew that something strange had been going on at Endley Farm for years.

(230 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

I have already written several letters to you in the past few weeks, but I have heard nothing from you. Do I have your correct present address?

Just a few pieces of news about me and the family. I am

just about to take my final exams and then I hope to leave school and go to college or university. My brother has a new job and my sister is getting married next year.

I would love to hear from you again. Please write as soon as you can and let me know all the latest news about you and your family.

(102 words)

2

### 词汇练习参考答案

was willing (1.3):

wanted, was prepared

labourers (1.4):

workers

claimed (1.7):

said that, maintained that

an accepted fact (1.8):

a general, undisputed truth

conscientious (1.9):

extremely careful

astonished (1.11):

surprised

revealed (1.13):

made known, told

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. *gave up* = stopped doing:

You must *give in* your homework on Friday.

I didn't need my bicycle any more so I *gave it away* to someone who couldn't afford one.

Eric didn't want to *give himself up* to the authorities because he had deserted.

2. *I can't tell a lie*.

We really must *say goodbye* now.

I can never *tell the difference* between their cat and ours.  
If that's what you think, *say so*.

Excuse me. Can you *tell me the time*?

3. I'd like you to *make a speech* at the wedding.

He'll *do his best* to win.

Can you do *me a favour*?

He never *makes a mistake*.

4. *I suppose* this house is very old.

*He is supposed* to speak English very well.

*He was supposed* to meet me at the station, but he didn't come.

5. See text.

6. *He used to work* here when he was younger.

*He was working* in the garden when I saw him.

3

多项选择练习

Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

根据课文第 10 行 “No one suspected that there might be someone else on the farm who had never been seen (谁也没想到农场里竟会有一个从未露面的人)” 可以判断 (d) it never occurred to them that there was someone in hiding on the farm (他们从未想到农场里藏着一个人) 为正确选项。(a) they woke up during the night to find their work had been done for them (他们夜晚醒来, 发现他们的活已经有人为他们干了) 与课文内容不符, 课文中第 4-5 行 “Farm labourers said that they always woke up to find that work had been done overnight (雇工们说, 常常一早起来

发现有人在夜里把活干了)”。课文中说雇工们一早起来而不是说雇工们夜里醒来发现活已经被别人干过了。(b) they often saw a figure working in the fields at night (他们常常在夜里看到一个人在田里干活)与课文内容不符,课文第6~8行“A farm worker, who stayed up all night, claimed to have seen a figure cutting corn in the moonlight (有一个彻夜未眠的雇工,还声称他看见一个人在月光下收割庄稼)”,表明只有一个雇工见到有人夜晚在田里干活,而不是所有的雇工们常常看到。(c) they did not have any work to do (他们没有什么活可干),同样与文中内容不符,文中只说他们的活被人干过了,而没有说他们无活可干。

2. (a)

根据课文第18行“Fearing the authorities, Eric remained in hiding after the war as well (由于害怕当局,埃里克战后继续深藏不露)”,可以判断(a) he feared the penalty he might receive for his desertion (他害怕由于他的叛逃而受到惩罚)为正确选项。由于战时擅自脱离队伍为叛逃罪,即使战争已经结束,政府也还会追究其罪行,故其害怕当局。(b) his father had told everyone he had died (他父亲告诉所有的人他已经死了)和(d) he was fond of the life of a recluse (他喜欢这种隐居的生活)都与课文不符,都不是埃里克隐居的理由;(c) he was afraid of being sent abroad by the authorities (他害怕被当局送往国外)是导致他脱离队伍逃回家的直接原因而不是他隐居的原因,故其是错误选项。

3. (d)

根据课文最后一句“When he died, however, his brothers found it impossible to keep the secret any longer (他死后,

他的弟弟们才觉得无法再保守这个秘密了)”,可以确定 (d) When Joe and Bob felt they would have to have their brother buried (当乔与鲍勃觉得他们不得不将他们的哥哥下葬时) 为正确选项。(a) When the villagers attended the funeral (当村民们出席葬礼时) 与文中内容不符,文中第 13~14 行 “After the funeral, Joe and Bob revealed a secret which they had kept for over fifty years (葬礼过后,乔与鲍勃透露了他们保守了长达 50 年的秘密)”,表明葬礼过后埃里克的弟弟们才透露了这个秘密,而非在葬礼上;(b) Fifty years after the outbreak of the Second World War (二战发生后 50 年) 与事实不符。文中提到埃里克的哥哥们保守这个秘密 50 年,而不是二战 50 年后透露的这个秘密;(c) When the father of the three Cox brothers died (当考科斯三兄弟的父亲去世时) 与文中内容不符,课文第 20 行 “When their father died, they thought it their duty to keep Eric in hiding (父亲死后,他们兄弟俩认为有责任继续把埃里克藏起来)” 明确地表明他们的父亲死后他们仍然将埃里克藏起来。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (b)

只有 (b) they would find 符合句子的结构。它是题干中 that 引导的宾语从句中的主语和谓语。助动词 would 在此表示过去经常性的动作,与 used to 相仿,如: We would normally spend the winter in Miami. (我们过去一般在迈阿密过冬。) In the afternoons, I used to hide and read. (下午,我们总是捉迷藏和读书。)(a) 和 (c) 在结构上讲不通,题干中缺少的是主语和谓语,而它们构不成主语和谓语;(d) 在时态上讲不通,句中的宾语从句中用时间状语 on waking up 表示动作几乎同时发生,故此处不能用表示

动作已经完成的过去完成时。

5. (c)

根据题干的`结构形式`,逗号后面跟着的是一个非限制性定语从句,故需要一个关系代词以及谓语动词。只有(c) `which did`符合此要求,而其他3项都不符合上述结构要求,故均为错误选项。

6. (b)

此题考查冠词和介词的搭配用法。军队生活的正确表达为(b) `life in the army`,`life`前没有定冠词,`army`前有定冠词,且使用介词`in`而不用介词`of`。(a)和(c)为介词和冠词用错;(d)的词序和介词都错。

7. (a)

连词`while`除了引导时间状语从句之外,还可与非限定性动词连用,表示同时发生,如:`Mark watched us while pretending not to.`(马克看我们可同时还装着没看我们。) `While crouched on the edge of the sofa, he had put his hands over his face.`(他蜷坐在沙发边上时,将双手捂在脸上。)本题中的句子就是与非限定性动词`fighting`连用,表示同时发生。(b) `during`为介词,其后只能跟名词,表示“在……期间”或表示“某件事发生时发生了另一件事”,如:`He heated the place during the winter with a huge wood furnace.`(在冬天,他用一个庞大的烧木头的火炉给这地方供暖。) `Fred had worked a great deal with her at Oxford during the war.`(弗雷德在战争期间同她在牛津做了大量的工作。)(c) `as if`和(d) `because`在结构上和语义上都讲不通。

8. (a)

本句子要传达的两个信息同等重要,故从句中使用并列句的形式。(a) `and did not even tell`为正确选项;

(b) which they did not even tell 为定语从句。定语从句旨在对某事物进行进一步的说明。此句中要强调他们甚至没告诉他们的妻子这一事实,故此选项为错误选项。(c) who did not tell和 (d) yet did not tell it to 在结构上和语义上都是错误的。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (c)

(c) With time 为正确选项,意即“随着时间的推移,渐渐地”,如:With time it will come all right. (慢慢地就会好的。)本题的意思是:“随着时间的推移,它就成了公认的事实。”(a) At the time 意即“在那时”;(b) On time 意即“准时”;(d) At times 意即“有时,间或”。

10. (b)

本题的 (a) recruited、(b) conscripted 两个动词都是“征召,征募”的意思,区别在于:recruit 主要指“征召志愿者接受某项任务或职位”,而 conscript 主要指“根据义务必须服役而非自愿”。课文中埃里克被迫参军,且因讨厌军旅生活而逃离部队。故根据课文内容应该选 (b) 为正确答案;(c) armed (武装)、(d) regimented (受训练)与句子意义不符,故为错误选项。

11. (d)

(d) the life of a hermit 意即“隐士的生活”,为正确选项。(a) out of this world 意即“世界之外”。文中表明埃里克生活在农场,只是过着隐居的生活,并未生活在世外。(b) a secret life 意即“隐秘的生活”,指他的生活对别人是个谜,而文中别人根本就不知他的存在。(c) without a companion 意即“没有一个同伴”,与文中意义不符。

12. (a)

此句表达的意义是“他常常夜晚工作,而从未意识到他已

经成了恩得利的鬼”。(a) never realizing 为正确选项,意即“从未意识到”。(b) quite misunderstanding 意即“十分误解”;(c) quite ignoring 意即“全然不理睬”;(d) never accounting for 意即“从未解释”。这 3 个都与句子的意义不符。

# Lesson 31

## A lovable eccentric

### 可爱的怪人

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Caught in heavy shower—walked into expensive shop
2. £ 300 watch for wife—bedraggled—assistant refused
3. Left shop—returned—heavy cloth bag—dumped on counter
4. Asked for manager—given watch—gave bag—£ 300 in pennies
5. Assistant had to count

#### 摘要写作参考答案

Dickie had been caught in a heavy shower when he walked into an expensive shop. He wanted a £ 300 watch for his wife, but he was so bedraggled the assistant refused to serve him. He left the shop and returned with a heavy cloth bag which he dumped on the counter. Dickie asked for the manager. When he was given the watch, he gave the assistant the bag which contained £ 300 in pennies, which the assistant had to count.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### A true eccentric

Mr. Chew is a man who has lived in our small town for years. He is a large man (some would say 'fat'), he has a round face, a big black moustache and a bald head. He always wears the same clothes—black trousers, an white shirt and a red waistcoat, and is always polite to everyone he meets.

He owns an antiques shop near the river, and he lives 'over the shop'. No one know where he gets his things, but there are always lots of different interesting antiques in the shop window every week.

Mr. Chew is interested in politics, too. Every week he puts up strange notices in his shop window to passers-by. Usually the notices are trying to make people save a local building or stop a plan to build a road through the town. Every time there is a national election, he automatically stands for parliament and gives speeches almost every day in the town park saying what he would do if he were Prime Minister. (He usually says he would make sure that antiques dealers did not have to pay Income Tax and that no cars should be allowed into our little town at all.) Every year he gets a few votes, but not enough to worry the serious candidates.

For most people Mr. Chew is a harmless eccentric, and everyone likes talking to him. After all, he is someone who adds colour to the dull routine of their daily lives.

(248 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

I was extremely sorry to hear that John had passed away.

Unfortunately, I did not even know that he had been seriously ill. Otherwise I would have written to him.

As you know, John and I were at university together and used to write to each other as often as we could. We also used to meet at least once a year with others for an anniversary dinner. We shall miss him.

If there is any way I can help, please do not hesitate to ask me. You know that you can always phone me or write me a note.

(100 words)

2

## 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

deliberately (1.1):	on purpose, intentionally
disregard (1.2):	ignore
conventions (1.2):	habits, rules
conscious (1.3):	aware
notable figures (1.7):	famous people
shrewd (1.7):	clever
elaborate (1.22):	detailed, carefully planned

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. I walked there *instead of* going by bus.

*Apart from* cleaning the windows, he hasn't done much all day.

I'm not really interested *in* fishing.

2. See text.

3. He walked *into* the hotel through the front door, and went *out of* the hotel by the back door.  
He went *into* the restaurant at 6.00 and stayed *in* the restaurant till midnight!
4. Please *pay attention to* your teacher.  
I *don't care* what she does!  
Can you please *take care of* the apartment while we're away?
5. I *don't know who* he's talking about.  
*Ask him why* he has never left England.  
*She asked if* I could phone her.
6. *Would you mind my* opening the window?  
*Imagine her* wearing a dress like that!
7. At the beginning, the team did very well, but *in the end* they lost the match.  
He always owes money to people: he's always *in debt*.  
They never went far out to sea: land was always *in sight*.  
I gave her the bad news as gently as I could, but she was *in tears* when I left.

### 3 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文内容,迪基那一天的行为之所以古怪,主要是因为他为了教训那个店员而以30,000枚硬币付他买的那块手表钱,故 (b) he went to such lengths to show his dislike of snobbery (他竟然如此淋漓尽致地表现出他对势力小人的反感)与课文意义相符;(a) when he set out into the

rain he did not take an umbrella (下雨时他也不带一把伞) 是他一贯的行为,而非他那天去商店的特殊行为,故与题目所述不符;就 (c) he spent so much money on a watch (他花了很多钱买一块手表) 而言,人们之所以觉得他古怪,并非因为他花很多钱买那块手表,而是因为他以 30,000枚硬币付款的方式;(d) he had not counted the pennies before giving them to the assistant (将硬币交给店员之前,他没有数那些硬币)与课文意义不符。

2. (b)

根据课文第 12~13 行“*He wanted to buy a £ 300 watch for his wife, but he was in such a bedraggled condition that an assistant refused to serve him (他要为妻子买一块价值 300 镑的手表,但店员见他浑身泥水的样子,竟不肯接待他)*”,可以得知他当时浑身泥水,根本不像是个能买得起那么贵重的手表的人,故 (b) 为正确选项;(a) he wanted to shelter from the rain (他想避雨)与课文第 11 行“*Even when it was raining heavily, he refused to carry an umbrella (即使大雨倾盆,他也总是拒绝带伞)*”的意义不符,下大雨时都不带伞,他就不可能去避雨;(c) he had forgotten to bring his cloth bag with him (他忘记了带他的盛衣袋),课文中没有提及此事;(d) he had been sent by his wife to buy a watch (他妻子让他去买只手表)与课文第 12~13 行所述“*He wanted to buy a £ 300 watch for his wife...*”的意义不符。

3. (d)

根据课文第 20~22 行“*This exhibition received a great deal of attention in the press, for though the pictures were supposed to be the work of famous artists, they had in fact been painted by Dickie. It took him four years to stage this*

elaborate joke simply to prove that critics do not always know what they are talking about (这次展览引起报界广泛注意,因为这些画名义上是名家的作品,事实上是迪基自己画的。他花了4年的时间策划这出精心设计的闹剧,只是想证明评论家们有时并不了解他们所谈论的事情)”,可以确定(d)项为正确选项。(a) it had taken him so long to prepare the paintings (他花了很长的时间准备这些画)和(c) no one had known that Dickie was a painter (没人知道迪基是个画家)并不是引起报界广泛注意的原因。(b) the critics admired Dickie's ability to copy the work of famous artists (评论家们赞赏迪基模仿著名艺术家作品的的能力)与课文所述相反,评论家们正是因为不知道作品是仿制品才受到迪基的愚弄。

#### Structure 结构

##### 4. (b)

unaware (不知道)为形容词,使用时应与介词of连用,或后面直接跟that引导的从句,如:He is unaware of the difficulty/there is a difficulty. (他不知道那个困难/有困难)。故(c) if和(d) when项为错误选项,而(a) that what中what是多余的,因为连词that引导的从句中已经有了自己的宾语anything。

##### 5. (b)

动词weigh后面只能跟名词,a lot可以作名词,而much可以作副词、代词,且通常much不用在肯定句中作宾语代词,而常用a lot,如:不能说He knows much about butterflies,而说He knows a lot about butterflies (他知道许多有关蝴蝶的事)。因此,(b) weighed a lot为正确选项;(c) weighed much和(d) had weighed much为错误选项;(a) was weighing时态和语义都是错误的,weigh用于

表示“重多少”时不能用进行时态表示。

6. (a)

根据句子的结构,应该选择表示“存在”的(a) There were。表示“某处有某物或人”时,应该使用 there be 结构。本题“*There were £ 300 worth of pennies in the bag* (那个包中有 300 镑的硬币)”,就是使用 there be 表示“存在”的结构。其他选项在结构上都是错误的。

7. (a)

动词 insist 后面跟 that 从句时,在英国英语中 that 从句中多用“should + 动词不定式”,而在美国英语中则多用动词的虚拟语气,即无论现在时还是过去时都用动词原形。此题为英国用法,故应该选择 (a) that the assistant should count。此外动词 insist 后面只能用 on doing something,表示“坚持要做某事”,而不能用动词不定式;(h) the assistant to count、(c) to count 和 (d) to be counted 均为错误选项。

8. (a)

本题中 to 后面跟随的是两个并列的动词不定式。当两个动词不定式由 and, or 或 than 等连接时,后面的不定式可以不用 to。动词 come 后面不能跟动词的-ing形式,因此 (b) seeing 为错误选项。come 后面可以跟动词不定式,但是必须是带 to 的动词不定式形式, to 不能省略,因此 (c) see 是错误选项。(c) so they saw 在结构上是错误的。如果 so 在此作连词,其前应该用逗号与前句分开;此外语义也与课文不符,so 在此连接的是结果状语从句,而主人邀请一些重要的评论家来的目的是看他私人收藏的画,此处要表示的是“来的目的”,而不是“来的结果”。

## Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

本题中要表示的是“带着一个大布口袋”，即一个用布做成的口袋，故 (d) bag made of cloth 为正确选项。在 (a) cloth case 中，名词 cloth 作形容词使用，修饰名词 case (箱子)，在用词上是正确的，但是与课文中的内容不符，文中说他带着一个“大布口袋”，而不是“一个大箱子”。(b) clothes-basket (盛衣筐)，此处 clothes 为名词，作修饰词使用。通常名词作修饰词时，一般用名词的单数，但是某些只有复数形式的名词，作修饰词时还应用其复数形式。该选项之所以为错误选项是因为其与文中意义不符。(c) sack of clothing (一袋衣服)，与文中意义不符。

10. (d)

根据课文第 15~16 行“The assistant asked him to leave, but Dickie paid no attention to him and requested to see the manager (店员让迪基走开，他置之不理，并要求见经理)”，此处 (d) demand 为正确选项，因为“to ask somebody to do something”往往带有“命令”的口吻，而非 (a) question (问题)、(b) inquiry (询问) 和 (c) query (质问)。

11. (c)

与 picture 搭配，表示“画画”，动词常用 paint，动词 do 可以作及物动词使用，表示“创作 (艺术品等)”。故此处 (c) done 为正确选项；(a) worked、(b) made 和 (d) designed 都不能与 picture 搭配使用。

12. (d)

根据课文最后一行“... to prove that critics do not always

know what they are talking about (……只是想证明评论家们有时并不了解他们所谈论的事情)”，可以确定 (d) talk sense (讲得有道理) 为正确选项；(a) mean well (好意) 与文中意义不符；(b) speak with understanding (善解人意地说) 与文中意义不符；(c) tell the truth (说实话) 也与文中所述意义不符。

## Lesson 32

### A lost ship

#### 一艘沉船

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. First chest—personal belongings of Alan Fielding
2. Nothing of commercial value—lots of items of interest
3. Heavy gun—proved—ship was cruiser
4. Another chest—ship's officer—unfinished letter, March 14th, 1943—learnt ship's name *Karen*
5. Most valuable find—ship's log book
6. *Karen*—sail in convoy to Russia—torpedoed—enemy submarine

#### 摘要写作参考答案

The chest containing the personal belongings of Alan Fielding told them a lot, and there were other items of interest. A heavy gun proved the ship was a cruiser. Another chest belonging to a ship's officer contained an unfinished letter dated March 14th, 1943, from which they learnt the ship's name. The most valuable find was the ship's log book, which told them the *Karen* had been sailing in convoy to Russia when she was torpedoed by an enemy submarine.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### The last day

The journey has gone well so far. We are now on the way to Russia and hope that we shall arrive with no more problems. But we are watching the sea and sky. The convoy successfully fought off an air attack early this morning. No ships were lost and we managed to shoot down three enemy aircraft before they broke off the attack.

At 10 a. m. this morning we were attacked by a U-boat. This was the first time we had been attacked and for most men on board this was the first time they had been in action at sea. We were fortunate, but the ship ahead of us, the *Dauntless*, was torpedoed and sunk. After the ship sank, there were hundreds of men in the sea. We picked up as many survivors as we could in the *Karen*. In fact in the end we picked up 720 men, which meant that 50 men lost their lives in the attack on the *Dauntless*.

The *Karen* was packed with men, many crowded on the open decks, when we turned and attacked the U-boat. Depth charges were dropped and the U-boat was put out of action.

It is now 3.15 p. m., the light is already beginning to fade and storm clouds are gathering. We are about to be attacked by a second U-boat, this time from the north. The captain has just announced—

(239 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

March 14th, 1943

Dear Uncle Charles,

I am writing to you from the first ship that I am serving

on as an officer. The ship is a cruiser and her name is the *Karen*.

We are sailing in convoy to Russia with ten other ships. We have already been at sea for three days and should reach Russia by the end of the week. The voyage has been good so far, but there is always a danger that we shall be torpedoed by an enemy submarine. We all pray that this will not happen and that we shall reach our destination safely.

(The letter stopped here.)

(99 words)

2

### 词汇练习参考答案

instructing (1.4):	ordering, telling
give up the search (1.4):	stop looking
precious (1.6):	valuable
tremendous (1.9):	a lot of, a great deal of
were at first under the impression (1.10):	thought at first
wrong (1.11):	mistaken

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. She *had been doing* the job for three years before she gave up.

She *had been working* in the office for three years before she resigned.

2. Yesterday I *received* a letter from my brother in Australia.

This morning I *took* it to my mother for her to read.

3. See text.

4. *the contents of the chest*

5. I've just cleaned the windows with a new *cloth*.

She has just bought some new *clothes* from the shop in the square.

We should give away all this old *clothing*.

6. She *has* just *brought* me some books from the library.

She *took* some books back when she left.

*Can you fetch* my glasses from my bedroom please?

7. We quickly *realized* that the old lady was mad.

She *didn't understand* my friend because he only speaks German.

### 3 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

根据课文第3行“A radio message from the mainland had been received by the ship's captain instructing him to give up the search (该船船长收到了大陆上发来的电报,指示他放弃这次搜寻)”,可以确定他们未完成搜寻任务,没有发现他们要寻找的沉船,因此(a) They had failed to locate the ship they had been sent to look for (他们没有找到他们被派去寻找的那艘船的位置)为正确选项。从课文第1~2行“The small ship, *Elkor*, which had been searching the Barents Sea for weeks . . . (小船‘埃尔科’号在巴伦支海搜寻了几个星期之后……)”,可以确定小船在巴伦支海搜寻,所以(b) They had not succeeded in

finding the Barents Sea (他们未找到巴伦支海)为错误选项。打捞工作之所以失败,是因为未找到所要找的沉船,而不是因为找到了另一艘船,因此(c) They had found the wrong ship (他们找到的不是要找的那艘船)为错误选项。根据课文第8行“Despite the message, the captain of the *Elkor* decided to try once more (尽管船长接到了电报,他还是决定试一试)”,可以明确船长理解了电报的指令,只是想再做一次尝试,因此(d) The captain had not understood his instructions (船长未理解他的指示)为错误选项。

2. (b)

根据课文第15~16行“From a heavy gun that was raised, the captain realized that the ship must have been a cruiser (从捞起的一门大炮来看,船长认为那艘船一定是艘巡洋舰)”和课文第18行“The captain learnt from the letter that the name of the lost ship was the *Karen* (从这封信中船长了解到沉船船名是‘卡伦’号)”,可以确定(b) hoped, among other things, to establish the identity of the ship (希望,除了其他事情外,确定这艘船的身份)为正确选项。课文中,在船长命令船员们从沉船中尽量打捞更多的东西之前,船长就已经知道这艘沉船不是他们要找的那艘。在他们要找的那艘沉船上有一批金条,所以(a) expected to find some of the gold bullion (期望找到一些金条)为错误选项。在船长看到打捞上的一门大炮时,才认为那是艘巡洋舰,因此(c) thought he would find out that the ship had been a cruiser (认为他会证明这艘船过去是艘巡洋舰)为错误选项。同样(d) was looking for more information concerning the dead seaman (寻找更多的有关那位死去的水手的信息)与文中意义不符,因此也

为错误选项。

3. (a)

根据课文第 19~20 行“From this the captain was able to piece together all the information that had come to light. The *Karen* had been sailing in a convoy to Russia when she was torpedoed by an enemy submarine (据此, 船长可以将所有的那些已经搞清的材料拼凑起来。‘卡伦’号当年在为其他船只护航驶往俄国途中, 突然遭到敌方潜水艇鱼雷的袭击)”, 可以确定 (a) helped to explain how the warship had come to be sunk in the Barents Sea (帮助解释了这艘战舰是如何在巴伦支海沉没的) 为正确选项; (b) contained a written account of how the *Karen* had been torpedoed (包括“卡伦”号如何被鱼雷击中的文字记载) 所述不完整, 只说击中没说击沉, 更没有提到为什么会在巴伦支海被击沉; (c) provided vital information as to the ship's whereabouts (提供了诸如这艘船的下落等重要信息) 与文中所述意义不符; (d) gave the Ministry of Defence information it had known nothing about (给国防部提供它不知道的信息) 与课文倒数两行“This was later confirmed by a naval official at the Ministry of Defence after the *Elkor* had returned home (这一说法在‘埃尔科’号返航后得到国防部一位海军官员的证实)”意思不符, 即国防部证实了这艘沉船的事, 而不是对此沉船一无所知。

**Structure 结构**

4. (c)

根据课文第 5 行“The captain knew that another attempt would be made later ... (船长知道日后还会再作尝试……)”以及句子结构可以断定 (c) his would not be 为正

确选项。此处 his 为名词性物主代词,意指他的那次打捞。由于主句动词 knew 为过去式,因此从句中 would 用于表示过去将来;(a) it was not 和 (d) it had not been 中的代词 it 指代不清;(b) his had not been 所用时态不对,从句所表示的是“将来还会进行打捞”之意,因此该项为错误选项。

5. (b)

该句为强调 it 的用法, which had been sunk many years before 为定语从句修饰 ship, 主要成分为 It was a ship that they had in fact found, 因此 (b) that they had 为正确选项。其他 3 个选项的使用结构均有误。

6. (d)

当使用形容词修饰不定代词时,通常需将其放在所修饰词的后面,如 something important, anything possible 等。因此 (d) anything valuable 为正确选项。原句与 (a) nothing of value 均为否定,为非规范语言;(b) a valuable thing, 应该是 any valuable things;(c) any value 结构有误。

7. (c)

本句为被动语态的句子, parts of which 为被动语态 could still be read 的主语,因此 (c) could still be read 为正确选项;在 (a) it could still be read 中, it 多余,因为原句中已经有了主语 parts of which;(b) it could still read 中除了 it 多余外,其语态也是错的;(d) could still read 语态错误。

8. (c)

根据课文第 21 ~ 22 行 “This was later confirmed by a naval official at the Ministry of Defence after the *Elkor* had returned home (这一说法在‘埃尔科’号返航后得到国防部一位海军官员的证实)”以及句子结构可以确定 (c) at

the Ministry of Defence confirmed this 为正确选项; 在 (a) had this later confirmed at the Ministry of Defence 中, “to have something done” 表示出“由别人做某事而不是自己去做”之意, 课文说是得到国防部一位海军官员的证实, 而不是这位海军官员让别人去证实。此外正常的词序应是“a naval official at the Ministry of Defence”, at the Ministry of Defence 作定语修饰 a naval official, 而不是作地点状语放在句末; (b) confirmed this at the Ministry of Defence 词序有误, “at the Ministry of Defence” 应紧跟在 “a naval official” 之后作定语, 而不是作地点状语放在句末; (d) later at the Ministry of Defence confirmed this 也是词序有误。

### Vocabulary 词汇

#### 9. (d)

本题考查介词的用法。message 前用介词 in, 因此 (d) in 为正确选项, 其他 3 个选项均为错误选项。

#### 10. (b)

本题干要表达的是“有书籍、衣服和相片, 在一起的还有信件……”, (b) along with 即“一起”, 因此此项为正确选项; (a) including (包括) 指前面提到的东西中包括什么, 如 six people, including three women (6 个人, 其中有 3 个女的), 显然此题中信件不包含在书籍、衣服和相片中; (c) added to 是“增加”的意思, 用于此处是错误的; (d) beside 为介词, 意为“在旁边”, 与 besides (此外) 不同, 故此处不能用 beside。

#### 11. (c)

本题 (c) dated 为正确选项, 意为“所注日期为”。(a) inscribed (铭刻, 题名于) 和 (b) marked (作标记) 都与此处所要表达的语义不符; (d) posted on (邮寄于) 用

于此句中不合情理：一封未写完的信怎么会于某年某日寄出呢？

12. (a)

此句所表达的意思是“……显现出的所有信息”。动词 emerge 即为“出现, 显现”之意。(b) alighted (飞落, 降落) 和(c) arisen (引起, 产生, 发生) 与 information 一词不能搭配, 此外词义与句子所要表达的意思不符。(d) surfaced 一词可以用来表示“某种情感被表现出或被人知道”等, 如: A rumour has surfaced that the company is about to go out of business. (出现了一种传言说那家公司要倒闭了。)但是, surface 不能与 information 搭配使用。因此 (d) 不正确。

## Lesson 33

### A day to remember

#### 难忘的一天

1

#### 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. Driver behind—braked
2. Wife—thrown forward—large cake—windscreen—landed on road
3. Lorry—pulled up
4. Loaded—empty beer bottles—slid off—onto road
5. Traffic piled up—police—an hour—traffic on move
6. Lorry driver—swept up glass—2 stray dogs—remains of cake

##### 摘要写作参考答案

When the driver behind braked, his wife was thrown forward and the large cake on her lap flew through the windscreen and landed on the road. A lorry had to pull up suddenly and hundreds of empty beer bottles slid off onto the road. The traffic piled up so that it took the police an hour to get it on the move again. The lorry driver swept up the glass and two stray dogs ate the remains of the cake.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### Mistaken identity

We have all experienced days when everything seems to go wrong. Things certainly went wrong for Ray, a friend of mine, one day last month. It all started, as these things do, with a simple case of 'mistaken identity'. Ray had been shopping and was loaded with parcels when he got back to the multi-storey car park to look for his car. He knew he was on the correct level, but he couldn't see his car anywhere.

Then, suddenly, while he was looking, he saw one exactly like it. It was a red Nissan. It was exactly the same as his own car, and naturally he mistook it for his own. Still holding the parcels, he felt in his jacket pockets and found his key. He tried to open the driver's door, but the key just wouldn't turn. He couldn't understand it. In the end, he forced the lock—and naturally broke the key.

At that point he dropped the parcels as well. This infuriated him. The only way he could get into his car was to break a window, so he deliberately smashed the window of the car. As he was putting his hand in, the owner came back and saw him. The owner rushed towards Ray, held him against the car, and called a policeman on his mobile phone.

When Ray was arrested, he tried to explain, but the police did not believe him—until they found Ray's car on a level below!

(246 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

Thank you very much for your letter of 23rd July offering

to buy my Toyota Corolla for £ 2,500.

As I said in my advertisement, the car is in very good condition and has a low mileage for its age, so I wanted to sell it for £ 2,750 or nearest offer. I am therefore writing to accept your offer officially and to make arrangements for the sale.

If you can come to my house next Saturday morning with the money, I shall have the car and documents ready. Please telephone me to discuss any further details.

I look forward to hearing from you.

(104 words)

2

词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

happens (1.3):	occurs
precisely (1.4):	exactly
preparing (1.6):	getting ... ready, cooking
catastrophes (1.8):	disasters, accidents
smashing (1.9):	breaking
in the process (1.9):	at the same time
reduce you to tears (1.10):	make you cry

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. For the first time in his life *he experienced* real fear.

She has *a lot of experience* in teaching young children.

2. This work is just not *good enough*.

I never seem to have *enough money* to do everything I want to.

He's a *fairly* tall person.

3. See text.

4. For years they said that Columbus *discovered* America.

I read somewhere the other day that the Chinese *invented* ice cream.

5. He came and sat down *beside* me.

I've got plenty of other books *besides* these.

6. *drawing up* = here, moving, travelling:

He *drew back* when he saw the man with the gun.

The taxi waited a few minutes and then *drew off*.

7. He *had to take* an exam to qualify as an engineer.

I *should have taken* John's book back to him last week, but I forgot.

### 8

### 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第 10~11 行, "As if this were not enough to reduce you to tears, your husband arrives, unexpectedly bringing three guests to dinner (好像这一切还不足以使你急得掉泪, 你的丈夫接着回来了, 事先没打招呼就带来 3 个客人吃饭)", 可以得知 (c) Her husband had not told her he was bringing anyone to dinner (她丈夫未告诉她要带人来吃晚饭) 为正确选项。(a) She had not expected her husband to arrive so early (她未料到她丈夫回来得那么早) 与文中所述意义不符; (b) The meal she had cooked for the three guests had got burnt (她为客人准备的饭菜烧焦了), 她事先并不知道有客人来, 所准备的饭菜不是

为客人而准备的,故此项为错误选项;(d) She had not got enough crockery left to serve the meal with(她没有足够的餐具盛饭菜了),与其他相继发生的糟糕的事情相比,此事算不上最令她惊慌失措的事情。

2. (b)

根据课文第 13~14 行“The woman immediately behind the two cars happened to be a learner. She suddenly got into a panic and stopped her car (紧跟其后的一辆车上的司机碰巧是个初学者。她一惊之下突然把车停了下来)”, (b) Had there been a more experienced driver behind the two cars (如果这两辆车后面跟随的是一个更有经验的司机)为正确选项。如果她有经验而不急刹车的话,就不会引起后面一连串的事故。(a) If the two drivers who had collided had not begun to argue (如果那两个撞车的司机不争吵的话)是整个事件的起因,而不是引起后面一连串事故的关键所在,故该项为错误选项。(c) If, instead of panicking, the woman had made no attempt to stop(如果,那位妇女不惊慌失措,不停车的话)与文中所述意义不吻合。那位妇女遇到情况采取措施不当,主要原因是她是个初学者。(d) Had the wife of the man who braked not thrown a cake through the window (如果踩刹车的那个人的妻子没将一个蛋糕扔出窗外)与文中意义不符。她不是将蛋糕扔出窗外,而是刹车的惯性使蛋糕飞了出去。

3. (a)

根据课文第 17~19 行“The lorry was loaded with empty beer bottles and hundreds of them slid off the back of the vehicle and on to the road. This led to yet another angry argument (卡车上装着空啤酒瓶,成百只瓶子顺势从卡车

后面滑出车外落在马路上。这又引起了一场唇枪舌剑的争吵)”,得知 (a) the lorry driver blamed the owner of the cake for his accident (卡车司机谴责蛋糕的主人导致了他这场事故)为正确选项。(b) the traffic was extremely slow to get on the move again (交通非常慢才又恢复了运行)并不是引起第 2 场争吵的原因。就 (c) the lorry driver did not think he should be made to sweep up the glass(卡车司机不认为应该由他来清扫那些玻璃)而言,成百只瓶子滑落车下这一事故远比清扫玻璃严重,因此它不是引起第 2 场争吵的原因。(d) two dogs had devoured what was left of the cake (两只狗贪婪地吃掉了剩下的蛋糕)与第 2 次争吵无关。这两只狗是这场事故惟一的受益者。

#### Structure 结构

##### 4. (b)

该句结构为 be 动词 + as if 引导的方式状语从句,从句中使用的是虚拟语气。that is of no importance 为定语从句修饰 a single event。在 (a) no importance set up 中,缺少介词 of。介词 of 有时可以同一个名词词组连用,用以描述某事,如: The result is of little importance. (结果几乎没有什么意义。)在 (c) not any important sets up 中,形容词 important 前不能用 any 修饰。在 (d) not any importance sets up 中,缺少介词 of。

##### 5. (d)

连词 while 常常与非限定性动词连用,表示两件事同时发生,如: Mark watched us while pretending not to. (马克注视着我们可是却假装没看我们。)本题就是使用的这种形式,表示两个动作的同时发生。(a) 和 (c) 后面不能直接跟非限定性动词表示动作同时发生。as 与 while 都可用

来表示某件事发生时另一件事正在发生。一般在主句中描述某件事发生,当为一般过去时时,as 或 while 引导的从句或非限定性子句表示正在发生的另一件事并常使用过去进行时。因此本题中 (b) as you are 为错误选项。

6. (a)

根据课文第 10~11 行“*As if this were not enough to reduce you to tears, your husband arrives, unexpectedly bringing three guests to dinner* (好像这一切还不足以使你急得掉泪,你的丈夫接着回来了,事先没打招呼就带来 3 个客人吃饭)”得知所发生的一连串的事情对她产生的影响,故此处应该用现在完成时——(a) has not already reduced——来说明对她产生了影响。(b) were not already reducing 和 (d) would not already reduce 都是因为所用时态不正确。此外,(d)中所用的时态是过去将来时态,不能与副词 already 连用。(c) did not already reduce 中所用过去时态只是表示事情发生在过去,而不表示对现在产生影响,故为错误选项。

7. (a)

本题是个倒装句,应选(a) was a woman who,正常语序应该是“A woman who happened to be a learner was immediately behind the two cars”。在(b) a woman 和 (c) the woman 中,既缺少谓语动词又缺少引导定语从句的关系代词 who。在(d) there was the woman who 中,there 是多余的,此外在 woman 前不应用定冠词 the 而应用不定冠词 a。

8. (c)

该题考查动词 spend 的用法。动词 spend 用于表示“花费多少时间做某事”时,后面应该直接使用“宾语+动词的-ing”形式,不能跟动词不定式等。故选项 (a) to get、

(b) until getting 和(d) getting 都为错误选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (c)

该题要表达的是“同时要照看孩子”之意。(c) watching 具有“照看”的意思,与文中 keeping an eye on the baby 同义。(a) looking at 是“注视”的意思;(b) seeing 是“看到”的意思;而(d) seeing to 是“照料”的意思。均与文中“keeping an eye on the baby”意思不符。

10. (b)

该题考查介词的搭配。表示处于某种状态时用介词 in, 如 in surprise, in astonishment, in sorrow, in anger 等, 故 (b) in 为正确选项。(a) into 常常用于表示某种运动, 如进入某种状态、进入某处等, 如 move into the new house, get into a panic 等, 该题表示的是在某种状态下停车, 而不是表达进入某种状态, 故为错误选项。(c) from 与 (d) with 均不能与 panic 搭配用来表示处于该状态, 故为错误选项。

11. (a)

动词 slide 与 slip 为同义词, 意为滑落。故在 4 个选项中, 除了(a) slipped off 中的介词 off 用对之外, 其他 3 个均用错介词。

12. (d)

该句要表达的是那两只狗贪婪地吞食了剩下的蛋糕。(d) remains 意为“剩余物”;而(a)和(b)中的 left 和 leave 是动词, 不是名词, 不能用于此处;(c) 中的 leftover 为形容词, 意思是“余下的”, 其名词形式是 leftovers, 指“剩下的饭菜”。

# Lesson 34

## A happy discovery

### 幸运的发现

1

写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Frank visited antique shop—about to leave—saw large packing case
2. Asked dealer to open it—contents disappointing
3. Lifted some crockery—noticed miniature painting at bottom
4. Decided to buy it—dealer told him—£ 50
5. Frank excited—real discovery—Correggio
6. Tiny painting—unknown masterpiece—hundreds of thousands of pounds

#### 摘要写作参考答案

While visiting an antique shop one Saturday, Frank was about to leave when he saw a large packing case. He asked the dealer to open it but the contents were disappointing until he lifted some crockery and noticed a miniature painting at the bottom. He had already decided to buy it when the dealer told him it was £ 50. Frank was excited because this was a real discovery. The painting was an unknown masterpiece worth hundreds of thousands of pounds.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### An antique shop

'The Antique Shop' has been in the little street near the church for years. As you look at it from across the road, it draws you towards it. It has one large window display designed to attract all sorts of customers. There is expensive glass, porcelain and jewellery to attract people with a lot of money; there is second-hand furniture, modern silver and other things (hardly antique!) to attract those with not so much.

When you enter the shop, a little bell rings and the owner, a little grey-haired old lady called Mrs. Century, comes out from a room at the back and greets you like a lost relative! She greets everyone the same and always with a smile.

The shop sells all kinds of antiques. There are shelves full of old books along the back of the shop. There are two large tables in the middle of the shop covered with pieces of glass and porcelain. Then, around the walls on the floor are large pots, brass statues and things. There are lots of painting on the walls, too. At the weekend, the shop usually has five or six customers in it at one time. You might find a professional antique collector, a holiday couple and a young mother (with child in pram) looking for a cheap antique for her husband's birthday.

We all like looking for unusual things and hope to find a bargain one day. You might find one in Mrs. Century's 'Antique Shop'.

(249 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

Later this year I am going to spend a month in North Africa with some friends. Since I know it will be hot, and since I know you went to Egypt two years ago, I am writing to ask your advice about what we should take.

I realize that it will be very hot, but I don't know what we should wear. Should we wear shorts, sandals and short-sleeved shirts? Or should we perhaps wear lightweight jeans, long-sleeved shirts and perhaps walking boots for visiting famous sights?

There are some girls in the group. Can you give me some advice for them, too?

(105 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

rare objects (1.2):	very unusual things
displayed (1.3):	shown, put on show
piles (1.7):	stacks, (untidy) collections
assorted junk (1.7):	mixed rubbish of all kinds
truly (1.8):	really, seriously
bent on (1.10):	determined to
amply (1.11):	sufficiently, well

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. I'll phone you *the moment he arrives*.

I'll wait here *until he comes*.

I'll speak to you again *before you leave*.

2. *He must be ...* = He has to be, He needs to be ...

*You must be very tired ...* = I assume that you are very tired ...

3. —, an, a, The, —, a, the, The, —, the, The, an, the, — (See also text.)

4. Did you *notice* what she was wearing?

'It's a beautiful day,' he *remarked*.

### 3

### 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文的描述,得知哈利戴先生不厌其烦、坚持不懈地在古董店里寻找稀世珍品,因此 (b) he displayed the kind of perseverance needed to find a rarity (他表现出寻找稀世珍品所需的韧劲儿)为正确选项;(a) it was by no means the first time he had picked up a masterpiece for £ 50 (那次根本不是他第一次用 £ 50 弄到一幅杰作)与文中所述意义不符。虽然文中没说那次是他第一次花 £ 50 弄到一幅杰作,但是通过哈利戴常常向作者提起这件事,就可以断定对他来说用 £ 50 弄到一幅杰作确实是非同寻常;(c) he spent a short time searching in the morning before deciding to leave (他在上午决定离开之前用了很短的时间寻找)与文中第 14~15 行“The morning passed rapidly and Frank was about to leave when he noticed a large packing case lying on the floor (上午很快过去了,弗兰克正准备离去,突然看见地板上放着一只体积很大的货箱)”所述意义不符;(d) he found most of what he looked

at rather boring (……他发现他看到的東西大都相当枯燥乏味)与文中第 14 行“... he found a great deal to interest him (……他发现了许多有趣的东西)”所述意义不符。

2. (b)

根据课文第 16~17 行“Frank begged him to do so and the dealer reluctantly prised it open (经弗兰克恳求, 古董商才勉强把货箱撬开了)”, 得知 (b) He persuaded the dealer to open the box in which it happened to be (他说服古董商将那个箱子打开而那件珍品碰巧就在其中)为正确选项; (a) He was shown it by the dealer who did not realize its worth (那件珍品是由不知其价值的古董商拿给他看的)与文中所述意义不符; (c) By concealing his excitement on being told the price wanted for it (当被告之所要的价格时, 他掩饰着兴奋的心情)与本题所问问题不相关, 问题是问他怎样发现那幅柯勒乔的画的, 此外文中第 21 行“Frank could hardly conceal his excitement ... (弗兰克几乎无法掩饰自己兴奋的心情……)”已经明确地说他几乎无法掩饰自己兴奋的心情; (d) By lifting a box of crockery which had been concealing the painting (通过抬起一个藏匿着那幅画的陶器箱子)与文中所述意义不符。文中第 18~19 行为“Frank gently lifted the crockery out of the box and suddenly noticed a miniature painting at the bottom of the packing case (弗兰克轻轻地把陶器拿出箱子, 突然发现在箱底有一幅微型画)”。弗兰克将箱子里的陶器拿出来, 而不是抬起那只箱子。

3. (c)

根据课文第 21 行“... for he knew that he had made a real discovery (……因为他明白自己发现了一件珍品)”, 得知 (c) he knew he had made a real discovery (他知道他

发现了一件珍品)为正确选项;(a) it was an Italian painting he knew well (那是一件他十分熟悉的意大利画)和(d) it was similar to a painting he knew well (它与他熟知的一幅画相似)与文中第 19 ~ 20 行“*As its composition and line reminded him of an Italian painting he knew well ... (画面构图与线条使他想起了一幅他所熟悉的意大利画……)*”的意义不符,故为错误选项。弗兰克之所以买那幅画是因为他知道那是一幅珍品,而不是因为它便宜,因此(b) it only cost £ 50(它的要价只有 50 镑)也为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (b)

本题主要考查定语从句的用法,(b) which keep 为正确选项。(a) which are keeping 中所用时态有误,根据课文第 2~4 行所述,该题是在描述经常性的动作,而不是在描述正在进行的动作,故不能用正在进行时。(c) who keep 中的关系代词 who 用错。who 用来表示人,而此处先行词为物。(d) and kept 在句子结构上是错误的,此处只能是跟定语从句,而不能跟另一个并列句。

#### 5. (d)

表示“某人有必要做某事”时,常常用“it is necessary for someone to do something”这个结构,故(d) for anyone to muster 为正确选项。(a) for nobody to muster 中不应使用 nobody,因为原题已为否定结构。在(b) to have mustered 中,应该有自己的逻辑主语,表示谁来壮着胆子。可以用“it is necessary that + 主语 + should + 动词原形”表示“……有必要做某事”,而(c) that one musters 中使用的是第 3 人称单数的动词形式,故为错误选项。

6. (c)

该句为并列句,前面有情态助动词 *must*,后面就应使用动词原形,且无必要再用情态助动词 *can*,故(a) *can* 和(b) *is able to* 均为错误选项;(c) *be able to* 为正确选项;而在(d) *be capable of* 后面不能跟动词不定式,只能跟动词的-ing形式。

7. (a)

(a) *This being his first visit* 为正确选项,该部分为独立主格结构;(b) *Never having been before* 和(d) *Having never been before* 的词序有误,正确词序应该是“*Having never been there before*”;(c) *This being his first time to visit* 中不应用动词不定式 *to visit*,动词不定式 *to visit* 表示“将要拜访”,而此处要表达的是已经完成的动作,故也为错误选项。

8. (d)

该题考查间接引语中的时态。主句的谓语动词为过去式 *told*,且古董商在向他开价,那件珍品还没有买,宾语从句中应该用过去将来时,故(d) *would cost* 为正确选项。其他3个选项所用时态有误。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (c)

课文第13行“... *Frank visited an antique shop in my neighbourhood* (……弗兰克去了我家附近的一家古玩店)”中,“*in my neighbourhood*”意思是“在我家附近”,因此,(c) *near my home* 为正确选项;其他3个(a) *next door* (隔壁)、(b) *in my county* (在我县)和(d) *owned by my neighbour* (我邻居开的)均与文中所述意义不符。

10. (b)

课文第14~15行“... *Frank was about to leave when ...*

(……当弗兰克正准备离去……)”中“was about to leave”意思是“正准备离开”，(b) just (刚刚要)为正确选项；(a) almost (几乎)和(c) only (仅有)用于此处不妥；当使用 hardly 表示两个动作几乎同时发生时，常常使用过去完成时 + when，故(d) hardly 为错误选项。

11. (a)

需要撬开的箱子，通常都是用钉子钉牢的。因此 (a) nailed down (用钉子钉牢)为正确选项；而其他3个 (b) roped (被绳子捆绑)、(c) locked (被锁牢)和 (d) unlocked (未被开启)均与题义不符。

12. (c)

选项 (c) glance 与课文第20行“Glancing at it briefly ... (古董商漫不经心看了一眼那幅画……)”的意义相符，因此为正确选项；而(a) peer 为动词，意思是“仔细地看”，不能用于此处；(b) eye 和 (d) regard 无论在搭配上还是在语义上都有误。

# Lesson 35

## Justice was done

### 伸张正义

1

写作提纲

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Girl heard muffled cry—behind wall
2. Heard cry again—told manager—rang fire brigade
3. Fire fighters—found right chimney—tapping walls—listening
4. Chipped through thick wall—found man
5. Narrow—man couldn't move—fire fighters freed him—cut hole in wall

#### 摘要写作参考答案

A girl in the jewellery store heard muffled cries coming from behind a wall. When she heard the cry again, she went and told the manager who rang the fire brigade. When they arrived, the fire fighters found the right chimney by tapping the walls and listening. They chipped through a thick wall and found the man who could not move because the chimney was so narrow. They finally freed him by cutting a large hole in the wall.

(79 words)

## 作文参考答案

### A burglary that went wrong

There is a large jewellery store in the town that I have often wanted to rob. A few weeks ago I started planning the theft and kept a close watch on the shop. I noticed when people went in and out, when they started and finished work, and so on. And I noticed the chimneys, too.

One night I climbed onto the roof of the store and looked for a way in. One of the chimneys seemed wide enough for me to get in, so I started climbing down. Very soon, however, I got stuck and had to climb out again. I didn't give up. I looked around, found another chimney that looked quite wide at the top and climbed down that one. Again I got stuck.

This time, however, I was *really* stuck. I could climb neither up nor down. At first I struggled to try to free myself, but I couldn't get out. Then I started to get scared and started sweating. I tried to calm myself by quietly counting and thinking of pleasant things. But nothing worked and finally I start shouting for help. Nothing happened, everything was dark and silent, and I got more and more frightened.

I think I went to sleep because I suddenly realized that light was shining down the chimney. I shouted and shouted. Eventually I heard tapping and was finally freed by fire fighters who had smashed a hole in the chimney.

(240 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

The last time we met was about a month ago and I remember we parted in anger; well, at least I did. You will

remember that we had an argument and I came home saying that I would never speak to you again.

Naturally since then I have had time to think about the situation and I am writing now to apologize for acting the way I did and for saying the things that I said.

Perhaps we could meet again very soon. Please write and let me know what you think.

(92 words)

2

### 词汇练习参考答案

seek (1.4):	look for
arduous (1.4):	hard, difficult
eminent (1.6):	famous and admired
instances (1.7):	cases, examples
ceases (1.7):	stops
independent of (1.8):	not connected with
of its own accord (1.10):	independently, without being asked or told

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. He says that *he has been very busy*.  
He wants to know *if he can do the job now*.  
He believes that *he has made a mistake*.
2. *The moment he has arrived*, I'll let you know.  
*Now that you have finished*, you can go home.
3. See text.

4. chimneys, valleys, babies, days, hobbies, armies, moneys  
or monies, victories, turkeys, storeys
5. admitted, had tried, had got, had been, had been done  
(Also see text.)

### 8

### 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

##### 1. (c)

根据课文第 7~8 行“Reward or punishment are meted out quite independent of human interference (奖惩的实施是不受人的意志支配的)”, 得知 (c) When justice has been done without the interference of a human agent (当正义在不受人的支配下得以伸张时) 为正确选项; (a) When a judge has proved neither eminent nor wise (当法官证实自己既不杰出又不高明时)、(b) When it has not been possible to prove a man's guilt beyond any doubt (当一直无法毫无疑问地证实某人有罪时) 和 (d) When, for example, a man is caught and handed over to the police (比如, 当某人被抓并被交给警察时) 都与文中所述意义不符。

##### 2. (b)

(b) He expected them to be of most help in the circumstances (他想在那种情况下他们可能最有帮助) 符合常理, 故为正确选项; 而 (a) He thought that one of the chimneys was on fire (他以为其中的一只烟囱着火了) 与文中所述意义不符, 经理知道烟囱里有叫声后才叫消防队员, 与着火毫无关系; 而 (c) He had not realized there was a criminal on the premises (他尚没意识到房子里有罪

犯)与(d) He thought whoever was stuck might be a member of the fire brigade (他认为被卡住的可能是个消防队员)均无道理,故为错误选项。

3. (b)

根据课文第16~17行“*They located the right chimney by tapping at the walls and listening for the man’s cries* (他们通过叩击烟囱倾听那人的喊叫声而确定了传出声音的那个烟囱)”,得知(b) *listening for the man’s response to their taps on the walls*(倾听那人对他们敲墙声音的回应)为正确选项;文中那个小偷被卡在一个烟囱里,他的喊叫声都是从一个烟囱里传出的,因此(a) *deciding which of the many cries came from the right chimney* (确定那许多声音中哪些声音是从那个烟囱里传出的)是错误的。当消防队员们通过敲击烟囱得到那人的回应而得知他在哪个烟囱后才开始凿墙,所以在凿墙之前就已经知道了他的位置,因此(c) *chipping through a wall which was eighteen inches thick* (凿透了18英寸厚的墙壁)是错误的。根据课文所述,消防队员们在墙上凿了个大洞是为了把那人弄出来,而不是为了确定那人的位置,因此(d) *cutting a huge hole in the wall* (在墙上凿了个大洞)是错误的。

**Structure 结构**

4. (d)

课文中第5~6行“... *however wise or eminent...* (……不管如何聪明与有名……)”为让步状语从句,省略了*they are*。本题(d) *No matter how* 与课文中引导让步状语从句的 *however* 功能相同,因此由“*no matter + 疑问词 how*”引导的让步状语从句为正确选项;其他3个选项均不能用来引导让步状语从句,故为错误选项。

5. (c)

原题中的介词短语 “In our use of a . . .” 代替了时间状语从句 “When we use a phrase like . . .”, 在句子中作状语。(c) we are 为句子的主语和谓语的一部分; 在 (a) is 中, 不但缺少主语, 而且动词形式不应该为第 3 人称单数形式; 由于原题中的介词短语 “In our use of a . . .” 中用的是 our, 故句子的主语应该是 we, 而 (b) it is 中的主语与介词短语中的人称不一致; 使用 (d) and in 后该句缺少主语与谓语, 因此为错误选项。

6. (d)

(d) not to be tempted 与课文第 11~12 行 “. . . the shop assistants must have found it impossible to resist the temptation to say . . . (……店员一定会忍不住说……)” 中的 to resist the temptation 同义, tempt 为名词 temptation 的动词形式, 且结构正确。本句的结构是 “动词 + 先行词 it + 宾语补语 + 动词不定式”; (a) they were not tempted 与本句的结构不符; (b) for them not to be tempted 中不该用 for them; (c) to be tempted 与文中所述意义相反。

7. (c)

(c) The cry being repeated 为正确选项, 它为独立主格结构。句子中分词短语的逻辑主语往往应该与句子的主语相一致, 本句中的主语是 she, 而发出喊叫声的不是 she, 而是那个小偷, 所以 (a) Repeating the cry 和 (d) Having repeated the cry 为错误选项; 课文第 14 行 “As the cry was repeated several times. . .” 为原因状语从句, 表示原因而不是表示时间, 故本句中应该用原因状语; (b) While the cry was repeated 为时间状语从句, 表示时间, 与文中表述意义不符。

8. (c)

本句动词 admitted 后面跟随的是宾语从句。该从句的主语是 he, 介词短语“in trying to break into the shop during the night”为时间状语; (a) although he had tried 虽然在结构上讲得通,但是在逻辑和语义上讲不通; (b) while he has tried 时态不对,此外语义和逻辑不通; (d) it was he who had tried 与句子的结构不符。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (a)

本题主要考查动词 hear 和 listen to 的用法。hear 指“听到某种声音”,如: I can hear a car. (我能听到一辆车的声音。) I heard a shout. (我听到一声叫喊声。)而 listen to 指“听某人讲或某种声音”,如: I do my ironing while listening to the radio. (我一边熨衣服一边听收音机。)本句是表示她听到喊叫声,因此 (a) heard 为正确选项; (b) listened to 为错误选项, (c) listened for 的意思是“留神等着听”, (d) earmarked 意思是“拨款;指定做……用途”,都不能用于此句中。

10. (d)

根据课文所述,消防队员们通过叩击墙壁准确地确定了小偷所在的烟囱,因此 (d) correctly (正确地,准确地) 为正确选项; (a) on the right (在右边的) 和 (b) well (好地) 放在此句中后语义不通;消防队员们并不是马上确定出小偷所在的烟囱,因此 (c) right away (立即,马上) 也为错误选项。

11. (b)

根据课文第 20 行 “The sorry-looking, blackened figure ...”, 可以得知 (b) a sorry (沮丧的) 为正确选项; 而 (a) an ugly (丑陋的)、(c) an apologetic (充满歉意的) 和

(d) a poor (可怜的) 都与文中所述意义不符, 因此为错误选项。

12. (d)

课文第 20 行 “The sorry-looking, blackened figure that emerged ... (那个看起来满脸沮丧、浑身漆黑的家伙一出来……)” 中使用的是动词 emerge (从某处出现)。(d) got out (出来) 与 emerge 同义; 而 (a) came to light (为人所知)、(b) came up (发生, 走到……附近) 和 (c) went out (出去) 等词义都与本句要表达的意思不符, 因此为错误选项。

## Lesson 36

### A chance in a million

#### 百万分之一的机遇

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Wounded towards end of war—hospital—separated from unit
2. Hospital bombed—back to West Germany on foot
3. Unit lost—all records destroyed
4. Returned to family home—house bombed—no information about family
5. Assumed all killed—settled in village 50 miles away
6. Lived there—then met Franz and wife

#### 摘要写作参考答案

Hans had been wounded towards the end of the war, taken to hospital and separated from his unit. When the hospital had been bombed, he had returned to West Germany on foot. Meantime, his unit had been lost and all records of him destroyed. He returned to the family home to find the house bombed. Assuming all his family were dead, he settled in a village 50 miles away where he had lived until he met Franz and his wife.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### The past

When the war finished, Franz Bussman did everything he could to get information about his brother Hans. With no information, he reluctantly assumed his brother was dead, and gave up the search.

With no family, and having been unable to find his brother, Franz found it difficult to settle down. Over the years he moved from place to place and from job to job, never staying very long in one place.

When he met Anna (now Mrs. Bussman), he was working as a waiter in a hotel. He and Anna got married and Franz settled down at last. He moved from the dining room into the kitchen of the hotel and became a cook. But this did not last very long. He was talking to a friend one day, a taxi driver, who suggested that they should go into partnership. So they did, and Franz became a taxi driver. He and the friend drove taxis themselves, but they also soon owned four more taxis and employed four drivers.

He visited his home town once to visit his old house, but it was a sad visit. There was a large modern block of flats where his family house used to be. And although he spoke to some of the apartment owners, no one remembered him or his family. Now that he has finally found his brother Hans, he and Anna are planning to invite Hans to come and live near them and work as a taxi driver in the company.

(250 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

For the past few days I have been ill and, on the advice of my doctor, have had to spend some time in bed. I am therefore writing to inform you that I shall unfortunately be absent from work for the next few days. Naturally I hope to return to work as soon as possible.

In the meantime, however, there is one thing that should be attended to in my absence. Before I fell ill, I was in the process of checking the proofs of the new brochure and would be grateful if someone could complete the job.

I look forward to seeing you in a few days' time.

(109 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

credulous (1.1):	willing to believe without proof
a conclusion (1.2):	an ending
improbable (1.4):	not likely to happen, unlikely
presumed (1.6):	believed to be, assumed to be
plotting (1.7):	secretly planning
totally (1.8):	completely
bring about (1.9):	cause to happen

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

- used to, used to, would
- We'd like you to *accept* this present from the class.  
I *agreed* to go immediately.

3. George's umbrella, that woman's handbag, Keats' poetry, the children's clothes, the soldiers' uniforms, in six hours' time, a hundred pounds' worth
4. *After having been* discovered, he gave himself up to the police.  
*After having been told* the way, we found the place with no problem.

3

### Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

根据课文, (d) Two brothers, each presuming the other long since dead, meeting again by chance (两兄弟, 双方都以为对方早就死了, 偶然又相遇了) 为正确选项; 而 (a) Having for a hero a man once presumed dead (一个曾被认为死了的人作为主人公)、(b) The happiness a hero might feel on being reunited with his mother (某主人公同母亲重聚可能感受到的喜悦) 以及 (c) Any character being so wicked as to plot against the hero (某个居心叵测地策划暗算主人公的人物) 都与文中所述意义不符, 因此为错误选项。

2. (c)

根据课文第 13~14 行 "Franz poured scorn on the idea, pointing out that his brother had been killed in action during the war (弗朗兹对此不屑一顾, 指出他兄弟已经在战争中阵亡了)", 得知 (c) Franz was so sure his brother was dead he did not take her seriously (弗朗兹坚信他兄弟已经死了, 根本不把她说的当回事) 为正确选

项;而 (a) she was told for the first time that Hans had been killed (她第一次听说汉斯已经被打死了)、(b) Franz objected to the idea of being associated with a workman (弗朗兹反对与一个工人有关系这个想法)以及 (d) they were both too shy to ask the workman if this was so themselves (他们两个人都不好意思自己去问那个工人是否如此)都与文中所述意义不同,因此均为错误选项。

3. (c)

根据课文第 21 ~ 22 行 “Hans returned to his family home, but the house had been bombed and no one in the neighbourhood knew what had become of the inhabitants (汉斯重返故里,但他的家已被炸毁,左邻右舍谁也不知原住户的下落)”,得知 (c) He inquired after his family's whereabouts but found no trace of them (他询问他家里人的去向,但是他们毫无踪迹)为正确选项;课文中说,临近战争结束时汉斯受伤并被送往医院,而不是在战争结束后被送往医院,因此 (a) He went to hospital to have his wounds attended to (他到医院去疗伤)为错误选项;根据课文第 20 ~ 21 行 “Meanwhile, his unit was lost and all records of him had been destroyed (与此同时,他所在的部队被击溃,他的所有档案材料全部毁于战火)”,得知 (b) He deserted his unit and walked back to his home town (他脱离他的队伍,步行回到家乡)为错误选项;课文第 22 ~ 23 行 “Assuming that his family had been killed during an air raid, Hans settled down in a village fifty miles away where he had remained ever since (汉斯以为全家人都在空袭中遇难,于是便在距此 50 英里外的一座村子里定居下来,直至当日)”表明汉斯以为家人都已经不在人世,因此 (d) He settled in a village near his home,

hoping his family would find him (他在家乡附近的一个村庄定居, 希望他家里人会找到他)为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (b)

本题考查介词“of + 关系代词”表示“数/量”的用法。在定语从句中, of 可以放在 whom 和 which 之前和一些表示数和量的词之后, 如: Both players, neither of whom reached the final, played well. (两名运动员都未进入决赛, 但都表现得很好。) The treasure, some of which has been recovered, has been sent to the British Museum. (这些宝藏已送往大英博物馆, 其中有一些是失而复得的。) 因此 (b) most of which were 为正确选项; (a) mostly being 和 (c) most of them were 属于句子结构错误; (d) which would be most 结构上是对的, 但是语义与文中所述意义不符。

#### 5. (d)

本题考查动词时态的一致性。本题为并列句结构, 连词 and 前后的动词时态应该一致, 前面使用的是过去完成时态, 后面使用过去完成进行时, 表示过去一直在做某事, 因此 (d) had been wickedly plotting 为正确选项; 而 (a) wickedly plotting 和 (b) wickedly plotted 所用时态有误; (c) been wickedly plotting 中缺少助动词 had, 此处 had 不能省略。

#### 6. (a)

本题考查动词 stop 的用法。“to stop doing something”表示“停止做某事”, 而“to stop to do something”表示“为做某事而停下来”。根据课文第 11~12 行“... he stopped to talk to a workman(……他停下来同一个工人交谈)”, 本题正确选项应该是 (a) in order to talk to a workman;

(b) a workman for a talk 表示“他叫住一个工人同他交谈”,与文中意义不符,为错误选项;(c) talking to a workman 表示“他停止了同一个工人的交谈”,而在 (d) so that he talked to a workman 中应使用 he could talk,因此均为错误选项。

7. (b)

本题考查名词性从句的关系代词的用法以及其所引导的从句的词序。本题 (b) what he was called 为正确选项;而 (a) what was he called 中的词序有误,was 应该放在代词 he 的后面;(c) how he was called 中的疑问词 how 表示的是方式,故为错误选项;(d) if he was called 中的动词 called 之后缺少宾语,也为错误选项。

8. (b)

本题主要考查 each、all 和 every 的用法。all 和 every 意思相同,都表示总体的概念,而 each 则表示个别的概念。如: Each applicant has five choices. (每个申请人有 5 种选择。) Every teacher was consulted./All the teachers were consulted. (所有的老师都被咨询到了。) (b) all records of him 为正确选项。(a) each of his records 为错误选项。在 (c) all records of his 中不应使用 his。在这里, his 表示他拥有的档案材料,而不是关于他的档案材料之意。(d) every record of his 与(c)为同样的错误。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (a)

表示“多久之前”应该用 ago,而不能用 back,因此 (a) ago 为正确选项;而 (b) back 为错误选项;(c) before hand 的意思是“事先”和 (d) previously 的意思是“先前地”,都不能与表示具体时间的词连用。

10. (c)

根据课文所述, 汉斯和弗兰克长得十分相似, 此句要表达的也是他们俩长得非常相似。(c) looked very alike 中的形容词 alike 意即“长得相像”; 而 (a) had a close look 意即“仔细地瞧”, (b) had the same look 意思是“具有同样的表情”, (d) looked the same way 意思是“朝一个方向看”, 因此均为错误选项。

11. (a)

根据文中所述意义, 本句要表达的是她正确的可能性非常渺茫。形容词 remote 常用来表示机会或可能性极小, 如: I'm afraid your chances of success are rather remote. (我担心你成功的机会相当小。) 因此 (a) remotest 为正确选项; 形容词 scarce 的意思是“短缺, 稀少”, 故 (b) scarcest 为错误选项; (c) greatest 意即“最伟大的”, 用于此处与文中所述意义不符; (d) lightest 意即“最轻的”, 不能与 chance 搭配使用。

12. (d)

根据文中意义, 本句要表达的是“他是怎么活下来的”。(d) come about 意即“发生”, 如: Can you explain how it come about that you were an hour late? (你能解释一下你迟到一小时是怎么回事儿吗?) 本题所要表达的意思是“他是怎么活下来的”; 而 (a) become、(b) arrived 和 (c) resulted 都不能用于此处来表示本题所要表达的意思。

## Lesson 37

### The Westhaven Express

#### 开往威斯特海温的快车

1

#### 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. Boarded train—many local people got on—not surprised
2. Not surprised, either—train stopped—Widley
3. Train dawdled—began to wonder—train just chugging along
4. Finally, 2 hours later—Westhaven—spoke to station master
5. Denied existence of express—argued
6. Footnote: 'This service—suspended'

##### 摘要写作参考答案

When many local people boarded the train with the writer, he was not surprised. Nor was he surprised when the train stopped at Widley. But when it stopped at each station, he began to wonder why it was going so slowly. Finally, when the train reached Westhaven, the writer spoke to the station master who denied the existence of an express. They argued and the writer was shown this timetable footnote, which said: 'This service has been suspended.'

(79 words)

## 作文参考答案

### A disastrous train journey

When I finally boarded the train, I was looking forward to a pleasant journey to the village of Slowleigh where my friends live. I sat in my seat, got out a book and was already reading when the train started.

According to the timetable, the train was due to arrive in Slowleigh at 4.30. I had been so interested in my book that I had a shock when I looked at my watch. It was almost 4.30. I closed my book and waited for the train to slow down. It didn't. In fact, the train was going very fast—and that was Slowleigh, wasn't it?! The train went straight on. I asked the other passengers why the train hadn't stopped and they told me it was the express to the city. I didn't believe it.

Then the ticket collector came along. He looked at my ticket and I tried to explain, but in the end I had to pay the full fare to the city.

By the time we arrived in the city it was six o'clock. The journey had lasted two hours and I was miles away from my original destination. I rang my friends and said I would get a fast train back. Then I checked the timetable: there *was* no fast train back to Slowleigh, only a slow one, at 7 o'clock. By the time I finally reached Slowleigh Station, it was nine o'clock at night. My pleasant little train journey had taken 4.5 hours!

(250 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

I have just heard that Joanna has given birth to a baby girl. Congratulations to you both! You must both be very

proud parents and I bet she looks like Joanna! You've heard all the old jokes, so I won't repeat them—except to say that I know you will have some sleepless nights from now on!

I hope that Joanna and your new daughter are both well. You must let me know what she weighs and who she really looks like. I hope to be able to visit you all very soon. Let me know when I shall be welcome.

All my love

(104 words)

2

### 词汇练习参考答案

punctual (1.1):	on time
unshakable faith (1.2):	a firm belief or trust
delayed (1.3):	made late
cancelled (1.4):	called off
temporarily dislocate (1.5):	disrupt for a short time
consulting (1.9):	reading, looking at (for information)
a mere (1.10):	only, just

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. The wall is *too high (for me) to climb*.  
The wall is *low enough (for me) to climb*.
2. I can't stand *queueing at the cinema*.  
I don't mind *helping you*.
3. *Never* had I seen anything like it before.

*Hardly* had I started when they told me to stop.

*Little* did she know that she was being watched.

4. Two minutes *passed* before anything happened.

The time is exactly two minutes *past* twelve.

5. My friend *refused* to lend me any money.

He *denied* that he had stolen the money.

6. I *borrowed* three books from the public library.

Then I *lent* one of them to a friend.

### 3

### 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

##### 1. (b)

根据课文第 9~10 行 "... I noted with satisfaction that there was an express train to Westhaven. It went direct from my local station and the journey lasted a mere hour and seventeen minutes (……我满意地了解到有一趟去威斯特海温的快车。这是趟直达车, 旅途总共才需 1 小时 17 分钟)", 得知作者之所以感到满意是因为那是趟直达车, 所需时间很短, 因此 (b) he wanted to know the quickest way of getting to Westhaven by rail (他想知道乘坐火车去威斯特海温最快的是哪趟车) 为正确选项; 而 (a) he wanted to find out how long the express train to Westhaven took (他想了解乘坐这趟快车去威斯特海温需要多长时间) 和 (c) he did not notice how many stations there were on the way to Westhaven (他没有注意到去往威斯特海温途中有多少站) 都与课文内容不符。根据文中所述, 作者不是看错了时间, 而是没有注意到时刻表上那趟火车旁边注明该趟火车已被取消的星号, 因

此 (d) he misread the information concerning the time the journey took (他看错了那趟旅途所需的时间) 为错误选项。

2. (c)

根据课文第 14~15 行 “But when the train dawdled at station after station, I began to wonder (但是, 当火车一站接着一站往前蠕动时, 我便产生了怀疑)”, 得知 (c) After the train had stopped at several small stations (火车在几个小站停车之后) 为正确选项; 而 (a) When the train had reached the station after Widley (当火车过了威德里到达下一站时) 与文中所述不同, 为错误选项; 课文中第 14 行 “Even a mighty express train can be held up by signals (即便是特别快车也可能被信号拦住)” 已经明确地表明火车偶尔被信号灯拦住是很正常的, 因此 (b) When the train had been held up by signals (当火车被信号灯拦住时) 为错误选项; 文中是说火车的时速是 30 英里, 而不是行进了 30 英里, 因此 (d) After the train had covered a distance of thirty miles (当火车行进了 30 英里之后) 也为错误选项。

3. (a)

根据课文第 16~17 行 “One hour and seventeen minutes passed and we had not even covered half the distance (1 小时 17 分过去了, 走了还不到一半路程)”, 得知作者一直认为他所乘坐的火车是那趟快车, 因而他对火车行进得那么慢而感到十分气愤, 因此要找站长说说此事。这样, (a) the train scheduled as an express train having in fact been a slow one (时刻表上那趟快车实际上是趟慢车) 为正确选项; (b) the lack of colour in the timetable (时刻表缺少色彩) 不是他去找站长抱怨的原因。作者认定他所

乘坐的火车是趟快车才去找站长抱怨的,因此 (c) the lack of any express trains from his local station to Westhaven (从他的所在地到威斯特海温缺少快车)为错误选项;在作者找到站长之前并不知道这趟火车已经暂停运行,因此 (d) the fact that the Westhaven express had been suspended from service (威斯特海温快车暂停运行)为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (b)

本题考查动词 expect 的用法。动词 expect 后面可以跟“that 引导的宾语从句”,如: I expect (that) she'll pass the exam. (我认为她会通过这次考试。)还可以跟“动词不定式”,如: He expects to fail the exam. (他认为他通不过这次考试。)此外,还可以跟“宾语 + 动词不定式”,如: I expect him to fail the exam. (我认为他通不过这次考试。)因此, (b) trains to be 为正确选项,其中 trains 为宾语, to be 为动词不定式;而其他 3 个不符合上述各用法,故为错误选项。

#### 5. (c)

本句为倒装句。在正确选项 (c) Only were it to snow 中,该表达形式为由 were 引导的非真实条件状语从句。由于整个句子由 only 引导,因此主句中的主语 railway services 被置于情态助动词 might 之后构成倒装句。(a) If only it snowed 中的 if only 常用来表达某种强烈的愿望,此处从语义上讲不通。此外,if only 置于句首时句子往往不用倒装。在 (b) Only in case it snows 中, in case 表示“以防万一而带着某物或做某事”之意。如果用于此句中,无论在语义上还是在逻辑关系上都讲不通。此外,可以说 just in case 而不用 only in case 表达。(d) Only

when snow 构不成完整的条件句,其句子结构有误。

6. (a)

本题有关用介词 in 表达“做某事所需多长时间”的用法。

(a) 为正确选项;而其他 3 个在结构上都讲不通。

7. (d)

本句为一个并列句,表达“时间过去了 1 小时 17 分钟,可是我们还得行进一半的路程”。(d) and we had 为正确选项。(a) before we had 和 (c) when we had 是由 before 或 when 引导的时间状语从句,无法用于该句子中,主要是逻辑不通。如果主句表达“已经过了多长时间”,后面所用时间状语从句表示的应该是某件事或行为已经发生,而不是将要发生的事,如:Four hours had passed when he finished his homework. (他完成作业时,已经过去 4 个小时了。)(b) before having 在结构上就是错的。本句的主语是 one hour and seventeen minutes,但是 before having 的逻辑主语则是 I。分词短语的逻辑主语通常需与主句的主语相一致。

8. (c)

本题主要考查情态助动词 can、may、might 的用法。这 3 个情态助动词都可用来表示“索要某物”。一般索要某物多用 can。如:Can I have some tomatoes? (我能来些西红柿吗?)而使用 may 和 might 的语气更为客气。但是在此句中,是用于动词 ask 的过去形式之前一同来引导间接引语,其形式必须为过去形式,因此这里只能用 (c) might;而 (d) was able to 则用于谈论某人“有能力”做某事,而不用于请求等。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (d)

课文第 14 行“Even a mighty express train can be held up

by signals (即使是特别快车也可能被信号所拦住)”中使用的短语动词“hold up”意即“拖延,使延迟”,因此(d) delayed (拖延,使延迟)与此义吻合,为正确选项;(a) halted 的意思是“使停住”与“hold up”的词义不同;(b) retarded 和 (c) slowed up 的意思是“使减速,放慢”,与 hold up 的意思不同,因此均为错误选项。

10. (d)

课文第 18 行“I determined to lodge a complaint as soon as we arrived (我决定一到目的地就给铁路部门提意见)”中使用的是由 as soon as 引导的时间状语从句,(d) immediately (马上)与 as soon as 所表达的意思相同,因此为正确选项;而 (a) firstly (首先)、(b) punctually (准时地)以及 (c) straight (直接地)都与 as soon as 所表达的意思不同,因此为错误选项。

11. (b)

课文第 20 行“*There was a note of triumph in my voice ... (我带着一种胜利者的调子……)*”中的“*a note of triumph in my voice*”与 (b) *Sounding triumphant* 语义相同,分词短语“*Sounding triumphant*”在句子中作方式状语。(a) *Noting my triumph* (注意到我的胜利),与文中所述意义不符,此外其在结构上也是错误的。该分词短语的逻辑主语与主句中的主语不一致。(c) *On a triumphant note* (以胜利的口吻),直接以某种口气说话,而 *a note of triumph in my voice* 所表达的是说话时带着一种使人隐约能感觉到的胜利者的调子,因此两者意思不同,名词 *voice* 表示“噪音,声音”。如果要表示以某种口吻或语气说话,应该用名词 *tone* 表示,如 *in an angry tone of voice* (以生气的口气),因此 (d) *In my triumphant voice* 为错误选项。

12. (a)

课文中用的是动词不定式“to look again”，意即“再看一看”，(a) take another look 与此同义；而 (b) review it、(c) overlook it 以及 (d) have second sight 分别表示的“审阅”、“忽略，宽容”和“第 2 次看”，均与文中意义不符。

# Lesson 38

## The first calendar

### 最早的日历

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Long puzzled by prehistoric markings—walls, bones, tusks
2. People—made markings—nomads—last Ice Age
3. Finally historians—read difficult code
4. Passage of days—phases of moon—primitive calendar
5. Connection between pictures of hunting scenes—markings

#### 摘要写作参考答案

Historians have long been puzzled by prehistoric markings on walls, bones and tusks. The people who made the markings were nomads during the last Ice Age. Finally historians have managed to read this difficult code and realized that they depict the passing of the days and phases of the moon. They are in fact a primitive calendar. There is a connection between the pictures of hunting scenes and the markings with them.

(71 words)

#### 作文参考答案

Studying the past

Future historians will have plenty of sources from which to

learn about twentieth-century man. Not only will they have the written word, they will also have films, video, audio cassettes, CDs and CD-ROMs. In fact, they will have so much source material that they will hardly know where to start!

If they study all the material available, they will be able to build up a complete social and political history of our time. They will know exactly how we dressed, what we ate in every different country and they will know exactly what our homes were like. They will know what our towns and cities were like and what forms of entertainment we enjoyed. In fact, they will not only *learn* about our forms of entertainment, they will be able to enjoy a lot of them, too—our music, plays, musical shows, video games, our art, our literature, . . . And they will be able to read and see the news day by day as it happened.

They will learn in detail the way we fought our wars—the way we used jet fighters, helicopters, ships and tanks. They will be able to learn every detail of great moments in history, and everything about leading figures of the time as well as the lives of ordinary men and women.

In future, the study of history will provide interest and excitement for a lot of people, the past will be brought to life and history will no longer be boring.

(249 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

We have been writing to each other now for about five years and, although we have exchanged lots of photos of each other and our families, we have never met face to face.

At last there is a chance for us to meet. I will be visiting

Canada with my parents next year and naturally I want to come and see you. I just can't wait to meet for the first time.

We are planning to fly to Canada early in April, but can you please let me know if there is any time when you and your parents will be away?

(102 words)

## 2 词汇、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

record (1.2):	write down
select (1.3):	choose
great mass of evidence (1.3):	large number of facts
accumulates (1.4):	collects, builds up
solely (1.4):	only
bewildering (1.6):	confusing
insignificant (1.9):	unimportant

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. have assumed, came, was faced, seems, is, have *long* been puzzled, have been engraved, made, lived, began, ended (See also text.)
2. agree with, account for, mistake ... for, cope with, correspond with, apologize for, blame ... for, reason with, satisfied with, quarrel with, wait for, search for
3. What's the difference *between* this and that?  
When I was with them, I always knew I was *among* friends.

**Comprehension 理解**

## 1. (b)

根据文中所述, 导致历史学家误认为日历的出现与农业的问世有关的主要原因是他们没有理会早期人所留下的各种图案的含义, 因此 (b) disregarding the markings that early man had been responsible for (不理睬早期人类所做的痕迹) 为正确答案。(a) relying solely on the written word (主要靠文字记载) 与文中所述意义不符。(c) supposing that nomadic man had no reason to understand the seasons (以为游牧人没有了解季节的必要) 在课文中并未提到。(d) not connecting the passage of days with the phases of the moon (未将昼夜更迭与月亮圆缺联系在一起) 与文中第 16~17 行 “They have found that it is connected with the passage of days and the phases of the moon (他们发现代码与昼夜更迭和月亮圆缺有关)” 不符。文中并不是说历史学家未将昼夜更迭与月亮圆缺联系在一起, 而是说经过研究, 历史学家发现那些代码与昼夜更迭和月亮圆缺有关。

## 2. (d)

根据课文第 15~16 行 “By correlating markings made in various parts of the world, historians have been able to read this difficult code (历史学家通过把世界各地留下的这种痕迹放在一起研究, 终于弄懂了这种费解的代码)” 和第 18 行 “It has long been known that the hunting scenes depicted on walls were not simply a form of artistic expression (大家早就知道, 画在墙上的狩猎图景并不是单纯的艺术表现形式)” 得知, (d) the markings made by

various nomadic groups all have a definite pattern (由各个游牧部族雕刻的那些痕迹都具有一定的图案)为正确选项;历史学家们早就对雕刻在墙壁上、骨头上和象牙上的痕迹困惑不解,但是这些雕刻并不是新的发现,因此 (a) nomads engraved the bones and tusks of the animals they killed (游牧民在他们猎杀的动物的骨头上和象牙上雕刻)为错误选项;人们早就知道游牧民以狩猎和捕鱼为生,这一点不是新的科学发现,因此 (b) nomads lived by hunting and fishing (游牧民靠狩猎和捕鱼为生)为错误选项;同样,游牧民在各地游牧也早已为人所知,因此 (c) nomads travelled widely in various parts of the world (游牧民在世界各地到处游牧)为错误选项。

3. (a)

从课文中得知,那些刻痕大多是狩猎、捕鱼的图案,反映了当时游牧民的生活,因此 (a) have taught historians something about the nomadic way of life (给历史学家揭示了游牧民的生活方式)为正确选项;(b) have no other content than their artistic merit (除了它们的艺术价值之外,没有任何其他内容)与课文第 19 行“*They had a definite meaning* (它们具有一定的意义)”所述不符,为错误选项;(c) are not thought to be connected with an ancient calendar system (不认为它们与某种古代的日历体系有关)与课文第 17 行“*It is, in fact, a primitive type of calendar* (事实上是一种最原始的日历)”意思相反,为错误选项;课文第 19~20 行“*It is possible that there is a definite relation between these paintings and the markings that sometimes accompany them* (有时,这种图画与墙壁上的刻痕共存,它们之间可能有一定的联系)”中表达的是有时图画与刻痕共存,并不是总在一起,因此 (d) are

invariably accompanied by odd dots, lines and symbols (都一成不变地同奇怪的点、线和符号共存)为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (d)

该句的结构是 be 动词后面跟 as if 引导的方式状语从句。课文中指出,未来的历史学家将能通过电影、录像、光盘等身临其境般地观看我们做事,应该用将来时。因此 (d) will be 为正确选项;其他 3 个的动词时态和形式都不正确,因此为错误选项。

#### 5. (c)

本题有关主语从句的关系代词的用法问题。英语中除了用 that 引导主语从句之外,还可以用疑问词 whether, when 等引导主语从句。此外我们可以用 what (而不是 that which) 代替定语从句形式的“the things that”引导主语从句。本题中(c) what 就等于 the things that, 用于引导主语从句。其他 3 个都不能用来引导主语从句,故为错误选项。

#### 6. (h)

本句为复合句,由(b)中的分词短语 having correlated 作方式状语,表示“通过将刻痕联系在一起”而弄懂了那些令人费解的符号。在(a) with correlating 中,介词应该是 by 而不是 with。在(c) which correlates 中,which 应该代替的是先行词 this difficult code。code 本身不能同刻痕联系在一起,而是由历史学家将它们联系起来。在(d) for they correlate 中,for 为并列连词,表示原因。虽然结构上是对的,但是语义与文中所述意义不符。

#### 7. (c)

本句要表达的是存在某种可能性,情态助动词 may 常用来表示可能性,因此(c) There may 为正确选项。(a) It

could 中情态助动词 could 可以表示可能性,但是此句应该用表示存在的 there be 结构,不能用 it 作句子的主语,故为错误选项。情态助动词 can 虽然也可以用来表示可能性,但是它不用于表示存在的 there be 结构中,表示存在某种可能性可以用 could, may 或 might, 如: There could be something in the blood. (血液中可能有什么东西。)因此(b) There can 为错误选项。(d) It might 也是因为不是表示存在的 there be 结构,所以为错误选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

#### 8. (b)

课文中提到历史学家们一直对那些点、线等困惑不解,一直想弄明白它们的意思,(b) 中的 puzzle out 意即“冥思苦想而弄明白”,与课文所述相符,故为正确选项;(a) 中的 puzzle 意为“困惑”;(c) riddle 的意思是“筛”,用于此处语义不通;(d) 中的 detect,意为“发现”,与文中意义不符,因此为错误选项。

#### 9. (a)

课文中使用的是 various parts of the world (世界各地),本题中出现的 4 个选项中只有选项 (a) different 与 various 同义,意即“各种,各类”;其他 3 项都与 various 的语义不同,因此为错误选项。

#### 10. (a)

课文中使用的是 this difficult code (这种费解的代码),(a) these puzzling signs (这些令人困惑不解的符号)语义与此相同,为正确选项;(b) this hard law (这种严厉的法律)、(c) these difficult signals (这些费解的信号)以及 (d) this uneasy letter (这封令人不自在的信)均与文中意义不符,因此为错误选项。

11. (c)

本题有关动词 come 的用法。动词 come 后面跟动词不定式表示“开始”，(c) came to exist (开始存在) 为正确选项；在 (a) came to existence 中 came 后应该跟动词不定式，而不是名词；在 (b) came to existing 中，came 后应该是动词不定式，而不是动词的-ing 形式；在 (d) were existential 中，形容词 existential 的意思是“与存在有关的”，用于此处语义不通。

12. (a)

以狩猎和捕鱼为生的游牧民的生活方式就是四处游牧，因此 (a) wandered from place to place (从一个地方漫游到另一个地方) 为正确选项；而 (b) lived in villages (住在村子里)、(c) first learnt to write (首先学会写字) 和 (d) learnt how to farm the land (学会了如何耕种土地) 均与文中意义不符，因此为错误选项。

# Lesson 39

## Nothing to worry about

### 不必担心

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Boulders disappeared—stretch of plain—clumps of bushes
2. Ahead—huge fissure—Bruce stopped
3. We examined it—50 yards long, 2 feet wide, 4 feet deep
4. Bruce raced along—then back on plain
5. Village now 15 miles away
6. Next obstacle—shallow pool—Bruce charged in—came to halt in middle—run out of oil

#### 摘要写作参考答案

When the boulders disappeared, there was a wide plain covered with clumps of bushes. Ahead was a huge fissure and Bruce stopped. We examined it and found it was fifty yards long, two feet wide and four feet deep. Without thinking, Bruce raced the car along it and then we were back on the plain. The village was 15 miles away and the next obstacle was a very wide shallow pool. Bruce charged in and stopped in the middle.

(79 words)

## 作文参考答案

Bruce remained unperturbed

It was typical of Bruce to announce 'cheerfully' that there was no oil in the engine! For the rest of us, it was a disaster. We all got out and began shouting at him and then at each other. *What could we do? We were standing in the middle of a very large pool up to our ankles in water with a car that was useless.*

We tried to push it, but of course it was absolutely impossible. All we managed to do was to push it deeper into the soft mud. In the end we all walked to next village where we tried to get a taxi so that we could take some oil (and petrol) back to the car.

We couldn't find one driver who would take us over the rough road. Fortunately there was a small garage and we paid a large sum of money to the garage owner to rent a jeep. With a can of oil and an extra can of petrol we all climbed in and set off.

When we eventually got back to the pool, we attached a rope from the jeep to the car and pulled the car out of the water. We were not surprised to find that the engine was badly damaged, and would not even start with the oil we had brought back. Disaster again, but Bruce was undismayed!

(230 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

I am having a great holiday here in T . . . Pat and I have done all the typical tourist things and have seen most of the sights.

However, I'm afraid we are both running out of money—and we both have to pay our hotel bill at the end of the week. Pat has managed to get some more through his bank, but I would be very grateful if you could send me another \$ 250 through the Landmark Bank.

(78 words)

2

### 词汇练习参考答案

boulders (1.3):	large stones or rocks
perturbed (1.4):	worried
underestimated (1.6):	guessed that difficulties were not as bad as they really were
bumped (1.9):	moved along in an uneven way
swerved (1.9):	moved quickly in one direction, then in another
hammered (1.10):	hit repeatedly
ominously (1.10):	as if giving a warning that something unpleasant is going to happen

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. I *got* him to tell me the truth.  
He *got* me to translate the article into English.
2. He *suggested that* I should go with him.  
He *insisted that* I should stay to lunch.
3. Can he wait a few minutes longer? I wonder if *he can wait a few minutes longer*.

When will he arrive? I wonder when *he will arrive*.

4. What a wonderful garden!

What a terrible day!

5. How *are you getting on* in your new job?

She *has just got over* a serious illness.

*Did she get through* her exams all right?

6. *He said* that the village wasn't very far away.

*He told* us that the village was 15 miles away.

### 3

### 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

课文中布鲁斯不顾路面布满石头,坑坑洼洼,多么颠簸而高速行驶,作者担心路面的石头会将油箱砸漏,把发动机砸坏。所以当路而不再有石头时,车上的乘客松了口气。因此,(c) It seemed less likely that they would meet with disaster (好像他们不太可能遇到灾难了)为正确选项;(a) Bruce could now drive even faster (布鲁斯现在能开得更快一些)与文中所述意义不符。车上的乘客一直担心他开得太快发生危险,而不是希望他开得再快一些。课文中他们过了布满石头的路面,又越过那条大裂缝之后,布鲁斯告诉他们到那个村子还有 15 英里的路程,总共到那个村子的路程是 20 英里,因此 (b) They had covered the greater part of the distance to the village (他们已经行驶了去往那个村子路程的一大半)为错误选项。看到而前的大裂缝,他们觉得事情更糟糕了,因此 (d) They had seen the huge fissure that lay ahead of them (他们已经看到横在他们前面的那条大裂缝)为错误选项。

2. (a)

根据课文第 15 行 “In response to renewed pleadings, Bruce stopped (我们再次央求布鲁斯小心, 他这才把车停下来)”, 得知 (a) the passengers had begged him to do so (乘客央求他, 他才把车停下来) 为正确选项; 布鲁斯虽然将车停下来, 但是他本人并未下车去看那条大裂缝到底有多长和有多宽, 因此 (b) he wanted to know the exact dimensions of the fissure (他想知道那条大裂缝的确切的长、宽以及深度) 为错误选项; 布鲁斯是在乘客的再三要求下才停车的, 而不是为了让乘客下车才停车的, 所以 (c) he thought it was safer to drive across it without the passengers (他认为不带着乘客过那条大裂缝要更安全) 为错误选项; (d) he was not sure whether the car was wide enough to bridge it (他不清楚那辆车是否够宽能架在那个裂缝上) 与文中所述意义不相关, 也为错误选项。

3. (a)

就文中所述, 当车在池塘中间停住时, 布鲁斯却兴致勃勃地宣布发动机里没油了, 这足以证明任何事都不会使布鲁斯不安。因此, (a) he was not the sort of person to be perturbed by anything (他不是个遇事慌乱的人) 为正确选项; 课文中的描写表明他是个非常卤莽的人, 而不是个勇敢的人, 因此 (b) he was extremely brave in face of danger (在危险面前特别勇敢) 为错误选项; 课文中已经明确地说明那是个浅水塘, 车停在池塘的中间也并不是因为池塘太深, 而是因为没油了, 因此 (c) he had underestimated the depth of the pool (他低估了池塘的深度) 为错误选项; (d) when it came to crossing water, his driving was not good enough (当要过水塘时, 他的驾驶技术就不够熟练了) 与文中所述不相关, 因此为错误选项。

## Structure 结构

### 4. (d)

本题有关动词 believe 的用法。短语动词“believe in”的意思是“确信,坚信”,用于此句中表示他坚信车必须以最高速度行驶,这与文中所述意义相符,因此为正确选项;动词“believe”后面通常直接跟宾语或 that 引导的从句,而不能直接跟分词,所以 (a) driving in 为错误选项。根据课文第 7 行“... he believed that a car should be driven as fast as it could possibly go (……他认为不管路面情况如何,车必须以最高速度前进)”,得知布鲁斯认为车必须以最高速度行驶,而不是认为他要以最高速度行驶。因此,虽然 (b) he would drive 在句子结构上是正确的,但在语义上不对,因此为错误选项。动词“believe”后面不能直接跟动词不定式,而应该跟“宾语 + 动词不定式”,如: The jury believed her to be innocent. (陪审团认为她无罪。)因此 (c) to drive 为错误选项。

### 5. (a)

本句是个由疑问副词 how 引导的感叹句。(a) How relieved we felt 为正确选项。当动词 feel 后面跟名词,用于表示“感觉,体验”某种感受或触动时,不能用进行时。因此,(b) What a relief we were feeling 为错误选项。只有当 so 与 that 连用时,才能将 so 与其所修饰的形容词置于句首,并将句子的第一部分倒装,用以进行强调。而本句中后面使用的是 when,而不是 that,因此 (c) So relieved we felt 为错误选项。在由疑问副词 how 引导的感叹句中,形容词 relieved 应该紧跟其后,因此 (d) How we felt relieved 为错误选项。

### 6. (d)

根据课文第 21 行“Bruce charged at it, but in the middle,

the car came to a grinding halt(布鲁斯向水塘冲去,但车开到水塘当中,嘎吱一声停住了)”,得知车冲到池塘当中停住了。在 (d) was in the middle of charging through it 中,charge through 意即“冲过去”,本选项的意思是“在冲过去的中途停住了”,与文中意义相符,因此为正确选项;在 (a) had charged through it midway 中,应将 midway 置于 charged 和 through 之间,因此该选项为错误选项;charge through 的意思是“冲过去”,再加上 to the middle (到了中间),这样在语义上讲不通,因此 (b) charged through it to the middle 为错误选项;在 (c) charged midway through it 中,应该使用过去完成时态,表示车停住之前已经到达池塘中间,因此该选项为错误选项。

7. (b)

本题有关间接引语中的时态的用法。由于主句的动词为过去时,作间接引语的宾语从句应该用过去完成时,表示从句中的动词动作发生在主句动词动作之前,因此 (b) had run 为正确选项;其他 3 个选项都因所用动词时态不对,而为错误选项。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8. (c)

课文中使用的是形容词 mere (仅仅,不超过),该词与此处所用的 only 同义,因此 (c) only 为正确选项;(a) simply 表示“仅仅,只不过”,不能用来修饰具体的量词;(b) boringly (乏味地)和 (d) insignificantly (微不足道地)词义和词性都不合适,故为错误选项。

9. (a)

根据课文所述,(a) hinder our progress 为正确选项,表示除了一簇簇灌木丛外没有什么能阻挡我们前进;(b) spoil our course 所表达出的“破坏我们的行程”之意,与文中意

义不符,因此为错误选项;作者他们乘坐的是汽车而不是火车,显然(c) hold up our train 为错误选项;动词 harm 常用于表示对人的伤害,因此(d) harm our way (伤害我们的行程)为错误选项。

10. (c)

课文中所用的过去分词 renewed, 作形容词使用,意即“再次的”,表示经过他们再次的请求布鲁斯才停住车。(c) repeatedly 所表达的意思与其相同,故为正确选项。(a) afresh 的意思是“重新,再”,与 renewed 意思不同,因此为错误选项。(b) aloud (大声地)和 (d) forcibly (强烈地)都与 renewed 的语义不同,因此为错误选项。

11. (b)

本句表达的是距那个村庄还有 15 英里,所以此处应该用介词 to, 而不能用介词 from。from 表示“从”,因此(c) from 为错误选项;(a) until 和 (d) before 也都不能用来表达“距某处”之意,因此也为错误选项。

12. (c)

本句表达的是“从一边到另一边”的宽度为半英里,所以(c) from side to side (从一边到另一边)为正确选项;而(a) side by side (并肩,并列)、(b) from top to bottom (从顶到底)以及(d) up and down (上下)的意思都与所要表达的意义不符,因此均为错误选项。

# Lesson 40

## Who's who

### 真假难辨

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Policeman arrived—asked workmen—go away—threatened force
2. Policeman telephoned help—four policemen arrived
3. Workmen refused to stop—policemen threatened—take pneumatic drill
4. Workman lost temper—threatened call police; silly—already under arrest
5. Workman asked—make telephone call—permission granted—policeman accompanied him—pay phone
6. Workman actually rang police—all realized—victims of hoax

#### 摘要写作参考答案

When a policeman arrived, he asked the workmen to go away. Later four more policemen arrived. The workmen still refused to stop and the police threatened to confiscate their pneumatic drill. One workman then threatened to call the police, which was silly because they were already under arrest. When another workman asked to make a telephone call, a

policeman accompanied him to a phone. The workman actually rang the police and they realized they had been victims of a hoax.

(80 words)

### 作文参考答案

Arrest the police!

The policeman who accompanied the workman to the pay phone still did not realize that they had been the victims of a practical joke. When he and the worker returned to the scene of the hoax right outside the university gates, the other workman was still quarrelling with the police and resisting arrest.

Following the worker's call to the police station, it was not long before more police arrived on the scene—and it is at this point that the story becomes very complicated! The workmen told the police who had just arrived that the first lot of policemen were actually students *dressed up as policemen*. The second lot of police therefore threatened to arrest the first lot of police, but before they did so, they asked for their identity cards. The first lot ignored this request and said that they really were policemen, but that the *workmen* were students. The workers had to prove their identity, too, they said.

None of them had to prove their identity by showing identity cards, because at this point two or three of the policemen started laughing, and then the workmen started laughing, and in the end they were all laughing. They finally realized that they had all been victims of a hoax—and not one of them could remember what the student had looked like. 'After

all,' said one workman, 'they all look the same to me.'

(237 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

Thank you very much for your last letter. It was really good to hear from you again and to read about the long trip you intend to make and your offer to take me with you.

Yes, I would love to come. You are going to visit a part of the country that I have never been to, so naturally I'd like to come along. And I shall of course share the expenses-- petrol, food and accommodation, and any other expenses. However, you didn't say how much you think the trip will cost, so perhaps you could let me know.

(100 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

a particular type (11.2-3):	a special kind
put out (1.4):	extinguish
deception (1.4):	trick, something that deceives someone
victims (1.6):	people that suffer from other people's actions
hung up (1.9):	put the phone down
silly (1.11):	stupid, childish
grateful (1.12):	thankful

## 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

1. We *put up* our tent in the corner of the field.  
Could you *put us up* for a couple of nights?  
We can't *put up with* her bad behaviour any longer.  
They have *put off* the game until next week.
2. Everyone found it funny *except me*.  
*Except for/Apart from* this one mistake, your composition is excellent.
3. We all got up, washed, *dressed* and left the house early.  
Most children like *dressing up*.
4. I *watched* the whole procession from where I stood.  
Her eyes *followed* him wherever he went.
5. I'm surprised you're *in such a good temper*.  
She is always *in a good mood*.  
Don't speak to her. She's *in a very bad temper*.  
I'm not *in the mood* to play games.

### 3

### 多项选择练习

#### Comprehension 理解

##### 1. (a)

根据课文第 5~6 行“Students often create amusing situations which are funny to everyone except the victims (大学生们常常做的是制造一种可笑的局面,使大家笑上一场,当然受害者是笑不出来的)”,(a) deceiving people into behaving in a way which amuses everyone but themselves (欺骗人们做出引起大家但是并不令他们自己发笑的某种行为)与课文所述相吻合,因此为正确选项;课文第 3~4 行“Inviting the fire brigade to put out a

nonexistent fire is a crude form of deception which no self-respecting student would ever indulge in (请消防队来扑灭一场根本没有的大火是一种低级骗局,有自尊心的大学生决不会去做)”中已经明确表明,让消防队来扑灭一场并不存在的大火是低级骗局,而本题说的是 a good hoax,因此 (b) doing something like calling the fire brigade to a nonexistent fire (做出诸如请消防队来扑灭一场并不存在的大火之类的事情)为错误选项;在 (c) at least two parties being led to believe the other is fraudulent(至少使双方都相信另一方是假冒的)中所提到的只是戏弄人的一种骗局,并不是成功骗局的模式,因此也是错误选项;(d) people disguising themselves to look like other people (人们把自己装扮得像其他人)同选项 (c) 一样,只是戏弄人的骗局的一种,并不是成功骗局的模式,因此为错误选项。

2. (c)

根据课文第 14 ~ 15 行 “... and politely asked the workmen to go away. When he received a very rude reply from one of the workmen ... (……有礼貌地请工人离开此地;但其中一个工人粗鲁地回了几句时……)”,得知 (c) the workmen refused to take his request that they should move seriously (工人们没有把让他们离开的要求当真)为正确选项。而 (a) the student hid in an archway to see what happened next (那个学生躲在一个拱形门廊里观看接下来发生的事情)与文中所述意义不符。课文中说在警察到来之前他就藏在那儿了,而不是在警察到来的时候他才藏在那儿的。(b) he told the workmen if they disobeyed him he would call four policemen (他告诉工人们如果他们拒绝服从,他要叫 4 个警察来)与文中所

述意义不符。课文中说那个警察先是礼貌地请他们离开,当遭到拒绝之后才威胁说要强行将他们赶走。警察并不是因为他们是学生才对他们礼貌,因此 (d) he was polite to the workmen as he had expected them to be students (因为他认为他们是学生所以礼貌地对待那两个工人)为错误选项。

3. (c)

根据课文第 22~23 行“Only when he saw that the man was actually telephoning the police did he realize that they had all been the victims of a hoax (当他看到那个工人真的是给警方挂电话,才恍然大悟,原来他们都成了一场骗局的受害者)”,得知 (c) When the policeman saw whom the workman was ringing from the pay phone (当那个警察看到那个工人从投币电话那儿要给谁打电话时)为正确选项;根据课文,当一个工人生气地说要叫警察时,警察还未意识到那些工人不是学生,因此 (a) When one of the workmen angrily said he was going to call the police (当一个工人生气地说他要叫警察时)为错误选项;当一个工人要求给警察挂电话时,警察未意识到他们不是学生,因为警察还陪着他去打电话,因此 (b) Not until one of the workmen asked if he could telephone the police (在一个工人要求他是否能给警察挂电话时)为错误选项;工人们并未被带到警察局,因此 (d) Only after they had arrested the workmen and taken them to the station (在他们将工人们逮捕并带到警察局之后)为错误选项。

**Structure 结构**

4. (d)

本题有关动词 seem 的用法。动词 seem 后面跟带 to 的动词不定式,因此 (d) to be more entertained by 为正确选

项; (a) entertained by more 缺少 to 和构成被动式的 be。此外, more 不应放在 by 后面, 因为要表达的是“更喜欢”, 而不是 by more practical jokes。在 (b) to have been entertained more by 中使用的是不定式的完成式, 动词不定式的完成式表示已经完成的动作, 而此处只是陈述一个现象, 因此为错误选项。在 (c) more to be entertained by 中, more 的位置放错。more 应该放在它所要修饰的动词前后。此处 more 用来修饰 to be entertained, 正确的位置是 to be more entertained。

5. (a)

本题有关由 should 引导的条件状语从句的用法。在英语中, 除了用 if 还可以用 should 或 were 等引导一个条件状语从句。正确选项 (a) should the police 就是一个由 should 引导的倒装的条件状语从句, 等于 if the police should。根据本题的句子结构, 本句的空白处只能用一个条件状语从句, 因此 (b) the police might 为错误选项。本句的整体结构是, 在主句中使用动词 tell 的过去式 told, 其后的宾语从句表达的是将要发生的事, 因此应该用过去将来时, 而 (c) if the policeman did 中使用的是过去式 did, 故为错误选项。在 (d) was a policeman to 中使用的是 be to 的结构, 该结构常用于表示“计划好的”, 不能作为某种条件用于条件句中, 故为错误选项。

6. (d)

本句中的 (d) informing them of this, 是用介词 for 引导的分词短语结构, 作原因状语。该分词短语的逻辑主语是 the student, 表示“他们之所以感激那个学生是因为他提前告诉了他们这件事”, 因此为正确选项; 而在 (a) they had been informed this 中, informed 后面应该有介词 of, 因为动词 inform 的用法是“to inform somebody

of/about something”;在 (b) having informed them this 中也是缺少了介词 of;被告知那件事的是警察和工人,可是此处 for 引导的介词短语的逻辑主语是 the student, 所以该分词短语中不应用被动形式,因此 (c) being informed of this 为错误选项。

7. (c)

正确选项 (c) as he pleased 表达的意思是“悉听尊便”,结构是由连接词 as 引导一个方式状语;而 (a) as it pleased him、(b) how he pleased 以及 (d) that pleased him 在结构上都讲不通,因此均为错误选项。

8. (c)

在书面语和较正式的讲话中,可以将 only 放在句首表示强调。only 放在句首时,句子应该倒装,如: Only here was it safe to prepare and handle hot drinks. (只有在这儿准备和调制热饮料才安全。) Only then did she realize that she still hadn't phoned her mother. (到那时她才意识到她还未给她妈妈打电话。)因此 (c) did he realize 为正确选项;而 (a) he realized、(b) he understood 和 (d) he did realize 都未倒装,因此均为错误选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (b)

正确选项 (b) at other people's expense 意即“以别人的代价”,本句所表达的是“……一个学生假扮成警察,以别人的代价来取悦自己”。而 (a) by joking with people 表达的是“同人们说笑”。当 joke 作名词时既可以表示“说笑”,也可表示“开某种玩笑”,可是当 joke 作动词使用时,只表示“说笑”,因此为错误选项。(c) by making fun of people 的意思是“通过嘲笑/取笑人们”。(d) to other people's surprise 的意思是“令其他的人们吃惊”,与文中

意义不符,因此为错误选项。

10. (a)

课文中使用的 rude reply (粗鲁的回答) 与选项 (a) impolite retort 同义, 名词 retort 意即“粗鲁的回答”; 而 (b) harsh response (刺耳的答复)、(c) rough report (粗俗的报告) 和 (d) sharp return (尖刻的回答) 都与文中意义不符, 因此均为错误选项。

11. (d)

本题有关动词 protest 的用法。当该词表达“反对, 抗议”等意思时, 后面可以跟介词 against、about 或 at, 因此 (d) against 为正确选项; 而 (a) with、(b) for 和 (c) to 均为错误选项。

12. (a)

课文中使用的是动词 seize (夺), (a) get hold of 与此同义; 其他 3 个选项 (b) keep hold of (抓牢, 抓紧)、(c) hold back (阻挡, 阻止) 和 (d) hold on to (保持住) 都与文中所述意义不符, 因此均为错误选项。

## Lesson 41

### Illusions of pastoral peace

#### 宁静田园生活的遐想

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Never travel miles—see friends—live nearby
2. Never worry—last train home after theatre
3. Exhibitions, films, plays—short bus ride
4. Shopping—pleasure—variety—never need to make do—second best
5. Moments of beauty, too—warm glow of ads—wet nights
6. Peace at weekends

#### 摘要写作参考答案

You never have to travel miles to see friends because they live nearby. Nor do you have to worry about catching the last train home after the theatre. The latest exhibitions, films and plays are all a bus ride away. Shopping is a pleasure, too. There is so much variety that you never have to make do with second best. The city can be beautiful and peaceful, too—beautiful with the glow of neon advertisements, and peaceful at weekends.

(79 words)

## 作文参考答案

*Plan and ideas for composition (a)*

Title: Give me the country!

Introduction: Never understood city-lovers—city a place to visit, to go shopping, to see special exhibitions, etc.—not live in

Development: Advantages—living in country—quiet—more healthy—less traffic—fresh air—fresh food from farms or village shops—people polite and friendly . . .

Disadvantages—living in city—noisy—dirty—stressful—people always in rush—rude, unfriendly

Conclusion: Always a mystery why some country people say—like to live in city

### *Composition*

I have never understood city-lovers. For me a city is a place to visit for a few hours to go shopping, to see special exhibitions, shows, plays and films. But it's not a place to live in, even though thousands do. Usually they are tied to the city by their jobs or perhaps even by family.

There are so many advantages to living in the country. It is quiet and more healthy. There is far less traffic on the roads and the air is so much fresher. Instead of buying everything in packets from a supermarket, in the country we can always buy fresh food from farms or village shops every day—milk, fruit, fresh eggs, vegetables and meat. And we don't have to look at 'Use by . . .' labels to see when we must use something by: we know that everything is fresh. And the people in the

country are always so polite and friendly too—as long as you obey the unwritten rules of the countryside, that is.

On the other hand, there are so many disadvantages to living in a town or city. The first thing most country people notice is the noise and dirt. It must be the traffic, but many country people find it difficult to breathe in the city. And it is stressful, too: people always seem to be in a rush, and they are so often rude and unfriendly.

There are so many advantages to living in the country that it is a mystery to me why some country people say they would like to live in the city. In fact, I just cannot understand how anyone can even *consider* living in the city.

(282 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

I was very pleased to hear that you are coming to the city for a few days next month. I think it's good for you to see occasionally what life has to offer! And there is so much you will be able to do!

Of course I can put you up. You know you don't really need to ask. As long as I am going to be here (and I will be during the time you want to visit), you can always use my guestroom. Let me have your exact dates and I will make sure the guestroom is ready.

(100 words)

## 词汇练习参考答案

extol the virtues (1.6):	praise the good things
illusion (1.7):	false idea
superior to (1.8):	much better than
maintains (1.9):	says, argues
glinting (1.10):	shining in small flashes
tolerate (1.14):	bear, stand, put up with
beyond me (1.15):	beyond my understanding

## 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

## 3 多项选择练习

## Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

根据课文第 5-6 行“Though they extol the virtues of the peaceful life, only one of them has ever gone to live in the country and he was back in town within six months (尽管他们都交口称赞宁静的乡村生活的种种优点,但其中只有一人真去农村住过,可是不足 6 个月就回来了)”,得知作者和其他人的不同之处在于其他人说的和做的不一致,因此 (d) He thinks them hypocritical to maintain a preference for country life (他认为他们坚持说偏爱乡村生活是一种虚伪)为正确选项;而 (a) They often visit the country but he has only spent one weekend there (他们经常到乡村去,可是他只在那儿呆过一个周末)与课文中说

的他们只有一人在乡村呆过不足 6 个月不符, 因此为错误选项; (b) Unlike them, being brought up in the city, he can appreciate its worth(与他们不同, 由于他是在城市长大的, 他能够体会它的价值)所述, 并不是他与朋友的不同之处; 根据课文所述是他的朋友总是说乡村人多么友好, 因此 (c) In contrast to them, he finds city people friendlier than country people (与他们形成对比的是, 他觉得城市人比乡村人更友好)也为错误选项。

2. (b)

作者在文中提到住在城里可以随时拜访朋友、看戏、购物, 与 (b) His choice of entertainment is wide and within easy reach of him (他的爱好广泛, 能便利地满足自己的爱好) 相符, 因此为正确选项; 文中只是说住在城里用不着跋涉好几英里去拜访朋友, 而未说他更经常地款待朋友, 因此 (a) He can entertain his country friends more often than they can him (他款待朋友的次数比他的朋友款待他的次数多)为错误选项; 他之所以能看到最新的戏剧, 并不是因为他乘坐的是公共汽车, 而是因为住在城里非常方便, 因此 (c) As he travels by bus and not by train, he can see the latest plays (由于他乘坐公共汽车而不是火车, 因此他能观赏到最新的戏剧) 为错误选项; 住在城里有许多方便, 看戏只是其中之一, 因此 (d) He does not need a major operation when planning a visit to the theatre (对他来说安排去看戏并不是件大事)也为错误选项。

3. (a)

文中所提到的“城市在寒冷的冬夜广告灯箱发出的暖光, 会给人某种安慰”, 正好与前文提到的“在电视机前度过的漫长、寂寞的冬夜”形成鲜明的对比, 因此 (a) alludes to the comparative cheerlessness of winter nights in the

country (暗示乡村那相对郁闷的冬夜)为正确选项;而 (b) means that if more people settled in the city they would find peace (意思是如果更多的人住在城里他们就能得到宁静)、(c) advertises the fact that the city is a warmer place than the country (宣传城市比乡村温馨这一事实)以及 (d) implies that the country is less peaceful than the city at weekends (意思是说周末乡村不如城市宁静)均与文中所述意义不符,因此为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (c)

英语中表示“出生”时,通常使用“to be born”的过去式。本句中说“I”出生于和生长在城市,这样(c) was born 为正确选项;而其他选项所用时态都不正确。

#### 5. (a)

本题有关动词 tire 的用法。动词 tire 与介词 of 连用时表示“使疲劳,疲劳”,tire of 后面需跟动词的-ing 形式,如: She never tires of talking about her work. (她谈起她的工作从不知疲倦。)因此(a) never tires of 为正确选项;用形容词短语 tired of 可以表达类似的意思,如: I'm tired of watching television; let's go for a walk. (我看电视看烦了,我们去散散步吧。)而(b) is never tiring of、(c) is never tired 和 (d) is never tiring when 都为错误选项。

#### 6. (c)

本题有关词序的问题。正确的词序安排为 (c) a short distance away by bus, 其中方式状语 by bus 放在主语补语 a short distance away 的后面;其他 3 个选项的词序都不正确,因此为错误选项。

#### 7. (b)

本题有关复合连词“as ... as ...”的用法。“as ... as

...”用来表达两者之间的比较,头一个 as 为副词,其后可以跟形容词也可以跟副词,“so”也可以用于此种结构,但常用于否定句之中,也可以用“as many/much + 名词 + as”的结构形式表达,但是只能使用“as many + 名词 + as”,而不能使用“so many + 名词 + as”的结构形式,因此 (b) as many 为正确选项;而 (c) so many 与其他两个选项均为错误选项。

8. (b)

本题中动词 mystify(使迷惑)用于被动语态,表示“被……所迷惑”,其后应该跟由介词 by 引导的、为动词 mystify 的逻辑主语的词语,因此 (b) by the fact that 为正确选项;而 (a) why、(c) for what 以及 (d) with 在结构上都是错误的,因此均为错误选项。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (a)

课文中使用的是副词 virtually (几乎,差不多)与 pretty well (几乎,差不多)同义,因此为正确选项;而其他 3 个选项的词义与副词 virtually 均不同,故为错误选项。

10. (b)

课文中使用的是动词 do,与本题选项 (b) manage 同义。该词常与 can 和 could 连用,表示“能处理/应付(某事)”之意,因此 (b) manage 为正确选项;而 (a) make (制作)、(c) succeed (成功)和 (d) pass (通过)用于此处都与课文所表达的意思不符,故为错误选项。

11. (b)

课文中使用的是“As the play draws to its close... (当戏快演完时……)”,这样 (b) nears its end 与其同义,其中的 near 为动词,意思是“接近”,因此为正确选项;而 (a) reaches its climax (达到高潮)、(c) ends its run (结束

它的连演) 以及 (d) draws the curtain (落下帷幕) 都与文中所述不符, 因此为错误选项。

12. (a)

课文中使用的是形容词 impressive (感人的, 令人难忘的), 与 (a) impact (影响) 意思相近, 故 (a) 为正确选项; 而 (b) imposition (强加, 干预)、(c) imprint (印记) 以及 (d) impression (印象) 均为错误选项。

## Lesson 42

### Modern cavemen

#### 现代洞穴人

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Entered narrow gap on plateau—climbed down—reached narrow corridor
2. Edged way along—came to waterfall—dropped to underground lake
3. Plunged into lake—special rubber suits—let current take them to other side
4. Squeezed through cleft in rocks—enormous cavern—size of concert hall—saw great stalagmites and stalactites
5. All they could hear—water dripping from high dome

#### 摘要写作参考答案

On entering a narrow gap on the plateau, they climbed down and reached a narrow corridor. They edged their way along and came to a waterfall which dropped to an underground lake. They plunged into the lake in special rubber suits and let the current take them to the other side. On squeezing through a cleft in the rocks, they discovered an enormous cavern where they saw massive stalagmites and stalactites. All they could hear was water dripping from above.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### *Plan and ideas for composition (a)*

Title: Caught in a cave

Introduction: Went out for day on beach—walked round headland—found deserted beach—marvellous day swimming, sunbathing, reading—late afternoon began to pack up

Development: Took time—began to walk to headland—suddenly realized—tide coming in fast—walked faster—tide reached headland rocks  
Saw cave in cliff—hoped to climb—went in—couldn't see way out—started back—tide coming in cave—found a 'chimney'—climbed up—managed to reach the top of cliff

Conclusion: Never so frightened in life—never do it again

### *Composition*

One day last summer Rob, a friend of mine, decided to go out for a day on his own. He took a day off work and went to the beach. He walked round the headland a mile from the town and found a deserted beach. He couldn't believe it; there was no one else there. He spent a marvellous relaxing day there swimming, sunbathing and reading, and for the whole day he was the only one on the beach. Then, late in the afternoon, he decided to pack up and go home.

He took his time drying himself, changing and packing his things into the shoulder bag he had brought with him, and then began to walk towards the headland. As he was walking along the beach, he suddenly realized that the tide was coming in; it

was coming in very fast, and he began to get a little worried. He walked faster, but soon the tide had reached the headland and there was no way that he could walk around.

He looked round and saw a cave in the cliff. As he hoped to climb up inside it, he went in. Unfortunately, he just couldn't see a way out, so he started back. It was too late; the tide was coming in the cave and as he looked down from the point he had reached, the sea was already covering the floor of the cave and beginning to rise up the chimney in the cave. He turned round and started climbing again—and eventually found a smaller chimney that he managed to climb up to reach the top of the cliff.

He had never been so frightened in his life. He promised himself that he would never do it again.

(292 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

I am writing to say how sorry I am that I didn't invite you to my party last Saturday night. It wasn't until the middle of the evening that I realized you weren't there, and by then it was too late to do anything. You may not believe this, but your name was the first on my list of guests for the party when I prepared it on my computer. I can only assume that when my sister printed it off and sent the invitations, she didn't notice your name was missing.

(92 words)

## 词汇练习参考答案

relatively (1.2)	comparatively, quite
desire for solitude (1.2):	wish to be alone
lures (1.3):	attracts, tempts
arouse (1.6):	wake up, excite
precise (1.9):	exact, detailed
confront (1.11):	be faced with and have to deal with
is barely noticeable (1.15):	can hardly be seen

## 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

## 3 多项选择练习

## Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

根据课文第9~10行“it can take as long as eight days to rig up rope ladders and to establish supply bases before a descent can be made into a very deep cave (有时需要花费整整8天的时间来搭起绳梯,建立供应基地,然后才能下一个很深的洞穴里)”,得知(d) may have to spend as much as a week planning his descent (可能得花费一个星期的时间为下洞进行准备)为正确选项;而(a) must be motivated by the desire to make an unexpected discovery (必定受获得意外发现的欲望的驱使)与课文第4~5行“it is impossible to give a satisfactory explanation for a pot holer's motives (要对洞穴探险者的动机做出满意的解释

是不可能的)”不符,因此为错误选项;课文中谈到探测非常深的洞穴不是在星期日下午漫步的人所能胜任的,因此 (b) is prepared to spend a whole weekend away from his home (准备离家一个周末)为错误选项;课文中谈到的是需要有军事行动般的周密部署和预见能力,而非需要军队的合作,因此 (c) needs military co-operation in making preparations for the descent (在为下洞进行准备时需要军队的合作)为错误选项。

2. (a)

根据课文第 16~17 行 “Since its discovery, it has become a sort of pot-holer’s Everest (自从被发现以后,这个洞成了洞穴探险者的珠穆朗玛峰)”得知,这个洞被比喻成了珠穆朗玛峰,攀登珠穆朗玛峰被登山者看成是最困难的事,那么到这个洞穴去探险就是洞穴探险者最困难的事,因此 (a) represents the ultimate challenge to any pot-holer who is truly dedicated (对于任何真正献身于此的洞穴探险者来说它代表着最极限的挑战)为正确选项;从课文中得知这个洞穴被发现之后对它已经有过多次探险,因此 (b) was recently explored for the first time since its discovery (自从被发现之后最近才第一次得到勘探)为错误选项;课文中提到洞穴探险者要蹒过洞穴里的浅溪,而不是洞穴外的溪流,因此 (c) has to be approached by following a stream which leads underground (必须沿着一条通往地下的溪流才能接近它)为错误选项;而 (d) consists of a large cavern, the size of a huge concert hall (包括一个大洞穴,其大小相当于一个大音乐厅)并不是这个洞穴与众不同的关键所在,因此为错误选项。

3. (b)

根据课文第 27~28 行 “After switching on powerful arc

lights, they saw great stalagmites ... (他们打开强力弧光灯, 看见一株株巨大的石笋……)”得知, (b) lit it up by using the arc lights they had carried down with them (用他们带下去的弧光灯将其照亮)为正确选项;而那些洞穴探险者在进入那个大洞穴之前不得不从岩石缝中挤身过去,而不是到达大洞穴时不得不从岩石缝挤身过去,因此 (a) had to squeeze into a cleft in the rocks at the side (不得不从洞壁的岩石缝中挤身过去)为错误选项;文中说弧光灯照射在石灰石上,石灰石像彩虹一样闪闪发光,因此 (c) saw a rainbow shedding its light on the limestone around them (看到一道彩虹将光线洒在他们周围的石灰石上)为错误选项;在这些洞穴探险者进入大洞穴之前,他们听到连续不断的轰鸣声,而不是进到大洞穴时听才到这种声音,因此 (d) 'could still hear the waterspout falling into the pool behind them (仍然能听到强大的水柱落在他们身后水潭里的声音)为错误选项。

#### Structure 结构

##### 4. (c)

本题有关表示可能性的情态助动词的用法。情态助动词 *might* 和 *may* 用于表达现在或将来某事可能发生,故本题中 (c) *may make* 为正确选项;而 (a) *would make* 中的 *would* 不能用来表示可能性; (b) *can make* 中的 *can* 只能用于否定形式,表示“不可能”;而 *might have* 或 *may have* 表示过去可能发生过但是并不确切,本题中表示将来的可能性,因此 (d) *might have made* 为错误选项。

##### 5. (c)

本题有关并列成分的形式的一致性问题。在原题中,连词 *and* 前的部分为现在分词短语 *getting rope ladders rigged up*,那么它后面的部分也应为现在分词短语,因此

(c) establishing supply bases 为正确选项; 而 (a) to establish bases supplied 和 (d) bases established and supplied 与连词 and 前的形式不一致, 因此为错误选项; 在 (c) supplying bases established 中, supplying 作形容词修饰 bases, 与连词 and 前的结构不一致, 故为错误选项。

6. (b)

动词的-ing 的形式可直接用于某些从属连词之后作状语, 因此 (b) entering 为正确选项; 而其他 3 个在结构上或时态上都不正确, 故为错误选项。

7. (d)

本题有关反身代词的用法。当动词的间接宾语与主语为同一人时, 该间接宾语应使用反身代词, 即 myself, ourselves, herself, himself, themselves 等, 因此 (d) themselves be carried by 为正确选项; 而在 (a) them be carried with 中除了代词用错外, 介词 with 应该为 by; 在 (b) their being carried by 中, 代词用错, 动词 let 后应该跟动词原形, 因此 being 也是错误的; (c) themselves carry 结构有误, 而且语义也不正确。

8. (b)

本题有关“no other ... than ...”的用法。“no other ... than ...”的意思是“除了……没有……”。本题所表达的是“除了水发出的声音之外, 听不到任何其他声音”, 因此 (b) than that 为正确选项; 而其他 3 个在句子结构上都不正确。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (c)

课文中的原文是“*It can take as long as eight days to rig up rope ladders and ... (有时需要花整整 8 天时间来搭起绳梯而且……)*”, (c) up to 所表达的意思与 as long as 相

同,因此为正确选项;而 (a) around 表示“大约”, (b) more than 表示“多于”, (d) at least 表示“至少”,都与原文所表达的意思不同,故为错误选项。

10. (a)

课文中使用的是名词“flaw”,意即“小裂缝”,选项 (a) fault与 flaw 同义,表示“小裂缝”,因此为正确选项。而 (b) gap 表示“裂口,豁口”, (c) cleft 表示“裂缝,裂口”, (d) fissure 表示“(狭而深长的)裂缝,裂隙”。虽然这几个词都为同义词,但是只有 fault 与 flaw 所表达的意思完全相同。

11. (d)

课文中的原文是“*They had to edge their way along this* (他们不得不侧着身子往前走)”。由于那是一条狭窄的走廊,他们不得不侧着身子小心翼翼地往前走,因此 (d) move cautiously (小心翼翼地移动) 为正确选项;而 (a) sidle nervously (紧张地羞怯而行)、(b) file sideways (从旁边列队而行)和 (c) walk sharply (轻快地走)都与原文不符,故为错误选项。

12. (b)

课文中使用的是形容词“icy (冰冷的)”, (b) freezing (冰冷的) 与其同义,故为正确选项;而 (a) frozen 的意思是“结冰的,冻上的”, (c) chilly 的意思是“冷飕飕的”, (d) iced的意思是“结冰的,冻上的”,都与 icy 所表达的意思不同,故为错误选项。

# Lesson 43

## Fully insured

### 全保险

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Divers found it—difficult to haul out of water
2. Sides smooth—impossible to attach ropes / chains
3. Eventually—chains to one end—pulled to canal bank on winch
4. Overbalanced—slid back
5. Now fixed clamps to both sides of dish—lifted vertically
6. With winch—hailed dish above surface—finally on to dry land

#### 摘要写作参考答案

The divers found the dish, but it was difficult to haul out of the water. The sides were so smooth it was almost impossible to attach chains to it. Eventually chains were attached and they pulled the dish to the canal bank on a winch. Unfortunately it overbalanced and slid back. They then fixed clamps to both sides and fastened chains to lift it vertically. With a winch they hauled the dish above the surface and on to dry land.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### *Plan and ideas for composition (a)*

Title: The sinking pie dish

Introduction: Dish—anchored to side of canal after launch—  
eighteen feet long, six feet wide—sides about  
three feet high

Development: Number of teenagers—canal path—dish looked  
fascinating—great for party—climbed into  
dish—first thing—slipping and sliding  
everywhere—all fell down in the bottom of the  
dish

Dancing to large portable radio—dish began to  
move—down one side—then down one end—  
teenagers moved to other end—started  
dipping—all slid into a pile—rim of dish reached  
level of water—water started to come in—  
teenagers couldn't climb back up to other end—  
water started pouring in

Capsized—sank in seven feet of water—all  
teenagers safe

Conclusion: Teenagers—not much damage, but—not held  
party on dish—wouldn't have sunk—insurance  
company wouldn't have had to pay to salvage it

### *Composition*

It was the biggest pie dish in the world and, floating on the canal, looked very inviting. It had been anchored to the side of the canal after it had been launched and was as big as many of the boats on the canal. It was about eighteen feet long and about six feet wide, and the sides were about three feet

high.

When a number of teenage girls and boys came along the canal path early in the evening, they thought the dish looked fascinating. There were about ten of them and they all jumped or climbed into the dish one by one. The first thing that happened was that they started slipping and sliding everywhere and all fell down in the bottom of the dish because it was so smooth. They all laughed a lot.

Then one of them turned on the large portable radio that he had brought with him and some of them started dancing. (At least there was no one near the canal to complain about the noise.) Suddenly the dish began to move in the water. It went down one side, and then down one end, and the teenagers moved to the other end. Then it started dipping that end and they all slid into a pile. At that point the rim of the dish reached the level of the water. Once that happened, the teenagers couldn't climb back up to the other end, and the water started pouring in. It capsized in minutes and sank in seven feet of water. Fortunately they all managed to swim to the bank and were safe.

The teenagers may not have done much damage, but if they hadn't held their party on the dish, it wouldn't have sunk and the insurance company wouldn't have had to pay to salvage it from the canal.

(306 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

I have just learned from an article in last week's local paper that you and Jane were involved in a car accident. I was really

very sorry to read the news. If I had known earlier (from your family or from a friend), I would have contacted you both earlier. However, the main thing is that you are both OK.

When you and Jane have recovered completely from the experience, I would like you to come over and see me for an evening.

Please accept my very best wishes.

(89 words)

2

### 词汇练习参考答案

a standard practice (1.2):	a normal, regular act or course of action
in the event of (1.5):	if there is
premium (1.6):	the amount of money you pay for an insurance policy
salvaging (1.8):	saving (a sunken ship) from the bottom of the sea
annual (1.11):	yearly, once a year
launched (1.13):	put into the water
capsized (1.15):	turned over

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

**Comprehension 理解**

## 1. (b)

根据课文第 8~9 行 “But the claim made by a local authority to recover the cost of salvaging a sunken pie dish must surely be unique (但某当局为打捞一只焙制馅饼的盘子提出索赔, 倒是件新鲜事儿)”, 得知 (b) was asked to pay the costs of the salvaging operation (被要求支付打捞作业的费用) 为正确选项; 而文中没有提到保险公司索要高额保险金的事, 所以 (a) demanded a high premium in view of the unusual size of the dish (鉴于那个盘子非同寻常的尺寸而索要高额保险费) 为错误选项; (c) agreed to pay the cost of transporting the dish by canal (同意支付通过运河水运的费用) 以及 (d) arranged for the dish to be recovered from the canal (组织从运河里打捞那只盘子) 都与文中所述意义不符, 故为错误选项。

## 2. (c)

根据课文第 18~19 行 “... but hauling it out of the water proved to be a serious problem (……可是把盘子捞出却是一个很大的难题)”, 得知 (c) found it difficult to devise a way of getting it out of the water (发现很难找出个办法设法把它弄出水面) 与课文所述意义相符, 因此为正确选项; 而课文第 18 行 “They had little difficulty in finding it... (他们没费什么劲就找到了它……)”, 已明确说明寻找落水的盘子没费什么劲, 因此 (a) had some difficulty finding it as they had been drinking locally (由于他们在当地一直在喝酒, 因此找盘子费了一些劲) 为错误选项; 没费劲就找到了盘子并不是因为盘子没有沉到底, 因此

(b) had little difficulty finding it as it had not sunk to the bottom (由于它没有沉到底, 所以没费什么劲就找到了它)为错误选项; 虽然几经周折才将盘子打捞上来, 但是并没有将盘子损坏, 因此 (d) damaged the dish when they attached hawsers and chains to the rim (他们将粗缆绳和链条固定在盘子边缘时损坏了盘子)为错误选项。

3. (c)

根据课文第 27 行“Water streamed in torrents over its sides with such force that it set up a huge wave in the canal (波浪从盘子两侧急涌而出, 在运河里掀起一股大浪)”, 得知 (c) the great quantity of water which poured off the dish when they were getting it out (当他们将盘子拖出水面时从盘子上倾泻而过的水流)为正确选项; 而 (a) the sinking of the pie dish (盘子下沉)并不是导致运河掀起大浪的原因, 故为错误选项; 同样, (b) the dish sliding back into the water (盘子又滑回到水中)也不是导致运河掀起大浪的原因; 而 (d) the party of teenagers (孩子们举行的集会)导致了盘子沉到运河里, 可是并不是导致运河掀起大浪的原因。

4. (b)

根据课文第 23~24 行“This time they fixed heavy metal clamps to both sides of the dish so that they could fasten the chains. The dish now had to be lifted vertically . . . (这次, 他们用沉重的金属夹子把盘子夹住, 以便往盘子上安装铁链。这次, 盘子必须垂直吊出水面……)”, 得知 (b) securing the winch chains with metal clamps and lifting it vertically (用金属夹子将绞车铁链固定并将它垂直吊起)为正确选项; 而 (a) resting one of its edges on the bank and attaching chains to the other (将它的 - 侧架在

岸上,将铁链固定在它的另一侧)与课文所述意义不符,因此为错误选项;文中提到有一人启动急修车的引擎,而不是登上急修车,因此(c) one of the men getting on to the truck so as to pull at the chains (其中一人登上急修车以便拉动铁链)为错误选项;文中说当盘子被绞车拉出水面时人们迅速地将盘子弄到地面上,而不是由这些人们直接将盘子从水里捞出来,因此(d) some men who hauled it to the surface of the water at tremendous speed (一些将盘子以极快的速度拉出水面的人)为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 5. (b)

本题有关比较状语从句“the ... the...”的用法。两个定冠词 the 后面都跟形容词或副词的比较级形式。这种结构用以表示一件事的变化直接影响到另一件事。这样(b) the more you will have 为正确选项,在“the more”后面省略了 money;在(a) the higher you will have 中使用的是形容词 high 的比较级形式,high 本身不能直接用来修饰 money,因此为错误选项;在(c) more you will have 中缺少了定冠词 the,因此为错误选项;而(d) you will have higher 的结构有误,因此也为错误选项。

#### 6. (a)

本题有关动词 hear 的用法。当动词 hear 用来表达“听说,得知”时,其后多用 that 引导的宾语从句,短语动词“hear of”可以表示相同的含义,但是常用于疑问句和否定句中,在“hear of”后面可以直接跟宾语,还可以在宾语后面跟动词的-ing 形式,因此(a) of a shipping company making 为正确选项;而其他 3 个选项都没有介词“of”,而且都不是从句结构,因此为错误选项。

7. (d)

本题的结构为“so ... that ...”结构。“that”用来引导一个结果状语从句。结果状语从句的主语是“attaching hawsers and chains to the rim”，因此谓语动词应该是动词过去式的单数形式，故(d) was 为正确选项；而(a) had 为用词错误；(b) were 为复数形式，与主语不一致；而在(c) it was 中“it”为多余。

8. (c)

本题有关时间状语从句的动词时态用法。时间状语从句不能用将来时态，常用一般现在时表示现在或将来，用过去时表示过去将来。由于该句的主句是过去时，因此(c) rebounded 为正确选项；过去进行时用来表示过去正在进行的情况或动作，而该句不是表示正在进行的动作，因此(a) was rebounding 为错误选项；(b) has rebounded 也是用来表示现在或将来，因此为错误选项；(d) would rebound 为过去将来时，如前所述，时间状语从句不能用将来时态，无论一般将来时还是过去将来时都不能用，因此为错误选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (c)

课文中描述的是“3个工人轮番潜入水中”与(c) time and again 相同，故为正确选项。(a) now and again 的意思是“有时，时常”，与文中意义不符，为错误选项。(b) one after another 的意思是“一个接一个”，与文中意义不符，为错误选项。(d) many a time 的意思是“常常，经常”，也与文中意义不符，为错误选项。

10. (a)

课文中使用的是“a powerful winch was put into operation (一台大功率的绞车开动起来)”与(a) got going (被运行

起来) 同义, 因此该项为正确选项; 而 (b) made to work 表示“使正常工作”, 与文中意义不符, 因此为错误选项; “to take someone to task”表示“(因某人的错误或失误而) 严厉地斥责某人”, 因此 (c) taken to task 与文中意义不符, 故为错误选项; 而 (d) given a function 表示“赋予某种功能”, 与文中意义不符, 因此也为错误选项。

11. (d)

课文中使用的是“*For one agonizing moment* (在令人忐忑不安的瞬间)”, 这样 (d) painful (焦虑不安的) 与课文所表达的意思相符, 因此为正确选项; 而 (a) dangerous (危险的)、(b) frightening (令人惊恐的) 以及 (c) exciting (令人激动的) 都与文中所述意义不符, 故为错误选项。

12. (b)

课文中使用的是介词 *to*, (b) *on to* 用于此处与介词 *to* 所表达的意思相同, 因此为正确选项; 而 (a) *over*、(c) *astride* 和 (d) *upon* 中的介词都不能替代介词 *to*, 故均为错误选项。

# Lesson 44

## Speed and comfort

### 又快捷又舒适

1

写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Nothing—match planes—speed and comfort
2. Plane—destination—rapidly
3. Travel in comfort—watch film—sip champagne
4. Breathtaking view of world—appreciate shape of landscape
5. Sight of cloud plains
6. Smooth journey—easy to read or sleep—arrive fresh—uncrumpled

#### 摘要写作参考答案

Nothing matches a plane for speed and comfort. An aeroplane reaches its destination rapidly. You travel in complete comfort, often watching a film or sipping champagne. You have a breathtaking view of the world and you can really appreciate the landscape. When you are above the clouds, the sight of cloud plains is extraordinary. The journey is so smooth that it is easy to read or sleep, and you always arrive fresh and uncrumpled at the end of the flight.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### *Plan and ideas for composition (b)*

Title: The disadvantages of travelling by air

Introduction: All forms of travel—advantages and disadvantages—flying has many advantages (e.g. speed)—but many disadvantages

Development: Booking—different airlines, different prices—then the *real* time—e.g. for a two-hour flight—time to get to airport, checking in, etc.—at other end, customs, passport control, waiting for luggage, etc.

On flight itself—squashed in—sitting next to strangers—airline food—two small toilets for hundreds of people—noise of engines and air-conditioning system

For some people—constant sense of danger—will we arrive safely?—will any of the engines fail?...

Conclusion: So many disadvantages—rather by road or sea—but millions will go on flying

### *Composition*

All forms of travel have advantages and disadvantages. Flying has many advantages that regular international travellers will tell you about, but it has many disadvantages.

When you travel by train, you turn up at the railway station, buy a ticket to your destination, go onto the platform and get on the train when it arrives. With travelling by air, booking itself is a major problem. Immediately you are faced with choices because different airlines offer the same flights for

different prices. Personally I never know which to choose.

And then there's the *real* time. When they tell you that it is a two-hour flight, add at least *five* hours to that. Remember first of all that you have to get to the airport (by car, bus, coach or train). Then you have to check in—usually at least an hour before take-off—go through customs and passport control, and then wait in the departure lounge (bored out of your mind!) until your flight is called. Boarding takes at least half an hour, and then you sit in the aircraft waiting to take off. At the other end, after your flight, again you are subjected to customs and passport control before waiting for your luggage before you catch your transport from the airport to your real destination.

On the flight itself you are squashed in, often sitting next to strangers who might have strange or bad habits, such as an irritating cough. They always give you a meal, but airline food often tastes like plastic and there is rarely any choice. There are just two small toilets for hundreds of people and there is the constant drone of engines and the hum of the air-conditioning system.

For some travellers, too, there is a constant sense of danger: Will we arrive safely?—Will any of the engines fail?—What if there's a mad hijacker on board?...

Flying has many disadvantages but millions will still go on flying.

(329 words)

## 书信写作参考答案

Enclosed is a ticket for a performance of Shakespeare's *Hamlet* at the Centre Theatre next Saturday evening. It's a present from me and, no, I haven't gone mad! Three months ago I saw an advertisement for this particular performance and immediately booked a ticket for it. Now, I suddenly find that I must go home to see my family, so I will not be able to attend the performance.

As I know you enjoy going to the theatre so much, and I know you are studying *Hamlet* for an English exam, I thought you would be able to use it. —Enjoy the performance.

(103 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

- cramped and stuffy (1.4): very crowded and with warm stale air (from body heat)
- monotonous (1.6): regular, tiring and with an uninteresting lack of variety
- lulls (1.7): makes . . . sleep
- in snatches (1.7): from time to time
- destination (1.9): the place you are travelling to
- stretch your legs (1.13): get some exercise
- sacrifice (1.16): give up or lose

## 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

3

### Comprehension 理解

1. (d)

根据课文所述,乘火车和汽车旅行既枯燥乏味又不舒服,因此 (d) the tedium and discomfort of the journey (旅行的枯燥与不舒适) 是乘火车和汽车旅行所共有的不利因素,因此为正确选项。而 (a) the fact that one cannot get to sleep on either form of transport (在两种交通工具上,人们都无法入睡) 与文中所述意义不同。课文中说火车“车轮与铁轨间单调的咔嚓声很快就会送你进入梦乡”,而在谈论汽车旅行时未提睡觉的事,因此为错误选项。课文中谈到在火车上“看书只能解决部分问题”,而在谈到乘汽车旅行时说“连看书都几乎不可能”,因此 (b) the fact that one cannot concentrate on what one is reading (人们无法集中精力读书) 为错误选项。乘汽车旅行时,只有在快车道上行驶时才能以高速行驶,但是大多数情况下是在服务设施缺少、交通拥挤的公路上行驶,行驶速度不快,因此 (c) the monotony of travelling at fast speeds along railway lines or roads (沿着铁路线或公路单调地高速行驶) 为错误选项。

2. (c)

根据课文第 23 行“The real escapist can watch a film and sip champagne on some services (真正会享受的人还可以在有些航班上看一场电影和喝香槟)”,可以断定 (c) being able to watch a film or drink champagne (能看

场电影或喝香槟)为正确选项;而 (a) the thought that one has not long to wait before arriving (抱着用不了多久就会到达的想法)并不是使人分散注意力的方法;文中提到在30,000英尺高空旅行而不是呼吸高空中的空气令人心旷神怡,因此 (b) the exhilarating quality of the air one breathes at 30,000 feet (人们在30,000英尺高空呼吸到的令人心旷神怡的空气)为错误选项;根据文中所述, (d) the marvellous views of land or clouds you can see from the plane (你能从飞机上看到大地或云海那奇妙的美景)并非为航空旅行提供的使人分散注意力的方法。

3. (c)

根据文中第 29 ~ 30 行 "... you will arrive at your destination fresh and uncrumpled. You will not have to spend the next few days recovering from a long and arduous journey (……当你抵达目的地时,你感到精神焕发,毫无倦意,用不着因为漫长旅途的辛苦而花几天时间休息来恢复精神)",得知 (c) have the satisfaction of knowing you could not have got there any faster (满意地知道你不可能更快地到达那儿)为正确选项;乘飞机旅行十分快捷,因此不觉得疲劳,而不是因为下飞机后有时间睡觉而不感到疲劳,因此 (a) not feel exhausted as you will have had plenty of sleep (由于你会有充足的睡眠而不觉得疲劳)为错误选项;文中提到乘坐飞机旅行十分昂贵,因此 (b) feel the expense was worth the comfort and speed of the 500-mile flight (觉得付出的费用所换回的舒适和 500 英里时速的飞行速度是值得的)为错误选项;文中提到抵达目的地时觉得精神焕发,但是没提到衣服不整,所以 (d) at least feel fresh though your clothes might be a mess (至少觉得精神焕发,尽管你的衣着可能皱皱巴巴)为错

误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (d)

本题有关由疑问词 *whether/if* 引导的宾语从句的用法。当需要用一般疑问句作句子宾语时, 可以使用 *whether/if*, 并将疑问句语序改为陈述句语序, 本题的结构就是由 *whether/if* 引导由一般疑问句“*Would they prefer to go by land, sea or air?*”演变过来的宾语从句作动词不定式 *to decide* 的宾语。因此 (d) *if* 为正确选项; 而其他 3 个选项中的疑问词都不能用于该句中引导宾语从句, 故均为错误选项。

#### 5. (b)

本题是个并列结构的条件状语从句。(b) *lucky and get* 为正确选项; “*get a sleeper*”为短暂性动作, 不能用进行时, 因此 (a) *luckily getting* 为错误选项; “*to be to*”常用来表示“安排好或计划好做某事”之意, 而此处“*to get a sleeper*”并不是表示计划好的行为, 此外副词 *luckily* 的位置也不正确, 因此 (c) *to get luckily* 为错误选项; 副词 *so* 后面只能跟由 *that* 引导的从句, 而不能用动词不定式, 因此 (d) *so lucky to get* 为错误选项。

#### 6. (a)

“*provided that*”作连词引导条件状语从句, 与 *if* 相同。本句所表达的意思是“当然, 如果大海风平浪静的话, 可以享用美味食品”, 因此 (a) *provided* 为正确选项; 而 (b) *in the event* 所表达的意思是“结果, 到头来”, 不能用来引导一个条件状语从句, 故为错误选项; (c) *in case* 用来引导目的状语从句, 表示“以免”, 为错误选项; 而 (d) *if only* 虽然有时可以代替 *if*, 引导条件状语从句, 但是本题题干中已经有了 *that*, 不能说“*if only that*”, 因此为错误选项。

7. (c)

本题的句子结构是将“it”作先行主语,把作逻辑主语的“their being . . .”置于句尾的句子结构形式。这样,(c) is a great disadvantage 为正确选项。而 (a) has been a grave disadvantage 为完成时,与文中所述不符。文中只是阐述了一个事实,而并未强调这一事实的延续性,故不能用现在完成时。(b) is the great disadvantage that 与原题的结构不一致。而 (d) has been the great disadvantage of 在时态和结构上都与所要求的不一致,故为错误选项。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8. (d)

课文中使用的是“you are likely to get seasick (你就可能晕船)”。而在 (d) prone to seasickness 中,“prone”所表达的意思与“likely”相同,即“可能”,因此为正确选项。而在 (a) probably seasick 中,副词“probably”表示某一陈述极可能是正确的,而并非表示“可能会”之意,故为错误选项。(b) bad at sailing 表示不擅长航海,与文中所述意义不符,因此为错误选项。(c) sick of the sea 所表达的是厌烦大海,也与文中意义不符,因此也为错误选项。

9. (b)

动词“equal”所表达的含义是“达到与……相同的水平/标准”,常与 as、in 或 for 连用,因此(b) 为正确选项;而在 (a) match with 中,“match”为及物动词,后面应直接跟宾语,而不能跟任何介词,故为错误选项;在 (c) equal with 和 (d) equal to 中“equal”为及物动词,后面不能跟任何介词,故为错误选项。

10. (a)

(a) relax in 与课文中使用的“settle back in”同义,表示“放松地躺在”,因此为正确选项;而在 (b) sit up in 表示

“端正地坐”，与课文所表达的意思不符，因此为错误选项；(c) sit on 所表达的意思是“拖延”，故为错误选项；而 (d) install 所表达的意思是“安装；正式任命”，也为错误选项。

11. (c)

课文中所用的“sight”为名词，表示“奇观”。这样 (c) spectacle 与其同义，也表示“奇观”，因此为正确选项；而 (a) scene 的意思是“景色，景象”，与原文中的“sight”意思不同，故为错误选项；(b) vision 的意思是“看见的东西”或“幻觉”，与文中“sight”意思不同，因此为错误选项；(d) scenery 的意思是“风景，景色”，也与“sight”的意思不同，也为错误选项。

12. (b)

课文中所用的“recovering”一词表示“恢复精神”。而短语动词“get over”与动词“recover”同义，故 (b) over 为正确选项；短语动词“get above”通常与 oneself 连用，表示“自以为了不起”的意思，故 (a) above 为错误选项；“get up from”表示“从某处起来/站起”，故 (c) up from 为错误选项；短语动词“get away from”的意思是“从某处离开”，或“逃离某处”，与课文所要表达的意思不符，因此 (d) away from 为错误选项。

## Lesson 45

### The power of the press

#### 新闻报道的威力

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Immediately—plane arrived—reporters and photographers
2. Rise to fame—swift—TV and papers—everyone in country
3. Newspapers and mags—huge sums for exclusive rights
4. Gifts from baby products manufacturers
5. Old farmhouse replaced by expensive new home
6. Lawyers employed—act as spokesmen
7. Parents paid price for fame—never possible—lead normal lives

#### 摘要写作参考答案

Immediately the news got out, a plane arrived with reporters and photographers. The family's rise to fame was swift and soon the media had told the whole country. Newspapers and magazines offered huge sums of money for exclusive rights to the story, while gifts poured in from baby products manufacturers. The family's old farmhouse was replaced by a new home, while lawyers were employed as spokesmen. The parents paid the price for fame: they would never again lead normal lives.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

*Plan and ideas for composition (a)*

Title: From football pools to fame

Introduction: 'Rags to riches'—not quite right for John—but not far wrong

Development: His life ordinary—lacked excitement—25—no sport—no girlfriend—didn't drive—bicycle instead—led ordinary life—but happy  
Friend suggested he do the football pools—way of winning a lot of money—if predictions correspond to real football scores—win lots of money—he won a million—bought a new car, big house—met a girl—married her—started arguing—got a divorce—now alone again—a sad millionaire

Conclusion: Lesson of story: never listen to friend's advice—now sad millionaire—but gives lots to charity

### *Composition*

There is a well-known expression in English to describe rising from poverty to a state of being very rich or wealthy: it's called going 'from rags to riches'. It doesn't usually mean that a person has been living in rags and then becomes extremely rich. The expression is not quite right to describe what happened to John, but not far wrong.

John's life had been very ordinary and certainly lacked excitement. He was 25 years old, but he didn't take part in any sport, he didn't have a girlfriend and he didn't drive a car. Instead he went everywhere on his bicycle. In fact he led a

pretty boring life, but he was happy.

Then one day a friend suggested he do the football pools. (In England this is a way of winning a lot of money. If your predictions correspond to real football scores, you can win lots of money.) John did the football pools and won a million pounds. He went mad with the money. He bought a new car and a big house. And then he met a girl and married her. It was all too quick. Very soon they started arguing and soon they got a divorce. Now John is alone again, and living in his big house as a sad millionaire.

The lesson of the story is this: never listen to the advice of a friend. If John had never done the football pools, he would never have become a sad millionaire. On the other hand, he is now able to give a lot of money to charity—to help people less fortunate than himself.

(271 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

Dear Sir,

I write with reference to the article which you published in your paper two days ago about the Swifts and their four new children.

It may be a little unusual for a woman to give birth to quads (or quadruplets, to give them their proper name), but surely the event did not deserve a full page with photos! A short paragraph would have been enough: we did not need to know the ages of the parents, the father's job, and so on.

Surely there is a lot more important news from around the world to fill the pages of your newspaper.

Yours faithfully,

(105 words)

## 2

### 语法、词汇练习

#### 词汇练习参考答案

restrict (1.1):	keep within limits, control
equally (1.5):	in the same way, just as much
contention (1.6):	assertion, argument
untold (1.7):	indescribable
acquired (1.10):	got, gained
perpetual struggle (1.12):	continual fight
in obscurity (1.15):	in a state of not being famous or well known

#### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

## 3 多项选择练习

### Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第 6~7 行 “Acting on the contention that facts are sacred, reporters can cause untold suffering to individuals by publishing details about their private lives (记者按事实至上的论点行事, 发表有关别人私生活的细节, 有时会给当事人造成极大的痛苦)”, 得知 (b) facts in themselves, however unpleasant they may be, must be respected (事实本身, 无论多么令人不快, 都必须得到尊

重)与文中所述意义相符,因此为正确选项;而 (a) in a democracy, the individual deserves more attention than politics (在民主制度下,个人比政治更引起人们的关注)并不是新闻界为自己发布有关个人隐私的权利的理论根据,因此为错误选项;(c) people not only enjoy reading about others but about themselves as well (人们不仅喜欢读到有关他人的报道,也喜欢看有关自己的报道),不仅不是原题所述内容的原因,同时也与文中所述意义相反。课文第 5 行 "... it is extremely doubtful whether we would equally enjoy reading about ourselves (……但是否同样喜欢看关于自己生活的报道,就很难说了)",所表达的是人们不会喜欢看关于自己的报道,因此为错误选项;(d) they only use their power to influence events of national importance (他们仅仅利用他们手中的权利影响具有全国性意义的事件)也并不是新闻界为自己发布有关个人隐私权利的理论根据,故也为错误选项。

2. (d)

根据对上一题的分析,可以得知 (d) they believed it was the right thing to do (他们认为那么做是对的)为正确选项。因为既然新闻编辑和记者遵循事实至上这一原则,那么他们自然认为就应该报道事实。记者们并不是为了捍卫新闻报道的自由而进行报道,所以 (a) they always defend the freedom of the Press (他们总是捍卫新闻报道的自由)为错误选项;而 (b) they know that stories about people sell a lot of newspaper (他们知道有关个人的报道会销售大量的报纸)虽然是报道个人消息的必然结果但是课文中并未提及,而且也并不是作者进行报道的原因,因此为错误选项;而 (c) they wanted to change the lives of these poor people (他们想改变这些穷人的生活)也为

报道所带来的结果,而并非记者进行报道的原因,故为错误选项。

3. (d)

根据课文第 20 ~ 21 行“Gifts poured in not only from unknown people, but from baby food and soap manufacturers who wished to advertise their products (不但素昧平生的人寄来了大量的礼物,婴儿食品、婴儿肥皂制造厂商为了替自己产品做广告也寄来了大量的礼物)”得知,许多商业组织为了推销自己的产品而对这个家庭倍感兴趣,因此 (d) mainly from commercial organizations who wanted to promote their sales (主要来自那些想要促销自己产品的商业组织)为正确选项。而 (a) of national importance because of the rise in the birth rate (因为出生率的提高而具有全国性意义)并不是他们引起人们兴趣的原因,因此为错误选项。(b) charitable, for people of all kinds were concerned about their poverty (慈善性的,由于各行各业的人们都对他们的贫困十分关切)也非引起人们兴趣的原因,故为错误选项。课文中谈到,由于记者再三要求,他们不得不聘请律师充当他们家的发言人而举办记者招待会,而不是请律师出席记者招待会,因此 (c) so overwhelming that even lawyers attended their press conferences (极为强烈,甚至律师都参加了他们的记者招待会)也为错误选项。

**Structure 结构**

4. (b)

课文中谈到的是公众对有关个人的事比对政治事件更为感兴趣,英语中表达“对……感兴趣”常用“to be interested in something”,因此 (b) in stories about people than in 为正确选项;而 (a) in people's stories than 所表达的是人们

所讲的事,而不是有关个人的事,故为错误选项;在(c) with stories about people than 中介词用错,应该使用 in 而不应该使用 with,此外连词 than 后面也应该有介词 in,因此为错误选项;在(d) by people's stories than by 中也是介词用错,不应用介词 by 而应用介词 in,因此为错误选项。

5. (a)

本题有关 such 和 so 的用法。such 可以作限定词,后面跟“名词词组 + that 从句”表示“太……以至于……”之意。有时其后可以直接跟 that,而不需跟名词词组,该用法较为正式,因此(a) such that not only can they 为正确选项;而在(b) so that not only they can 和(d) so that not only can they 中 so 后面必须跟“形容词 + that 从句”结构,否则句子不完整,因此均为错误选项;并列连词“not only ... but also ...”在使用中要保持平衡,即两者后面所跟随的句子成分必须相一致,如果选择(c) such that they cannot only,那么由于 not only 后面跟随的是动词, but 后面也应跟动词,但是题干中 but 后面跟随的是整个从句,故为错误选项。

6. (a)

本题是个复合句,由 so 引导一个结果状语从句。整个句子的时态为过去时态,(a) was 为正确选项;本句缺少的是主句动词,而(b) being 和(c) having 不能单独作主句动词,故为错误选项;该句只是陈述一件过去的事,而不强调动作的延续性,因此(d) had been 为错误选项。

7. (b)

本题有关动词 remain 的用法。“remain”后面可以跟名词、形容词、副词、介词、过去分词或现在分词表示“继续保持某种状态”之意,因此(b) remained quietly sleeping

为正确选项；动词 *remain* 不能用于进行时态，因此 (a) *were remaining quietly sleeping* 为错误选项；当 *remain* 表示“留下来”时，后面可以跟动词不定式，但在此处所表达的不是这个意思，因此 (c) *remained to sleep quietly* 为错误选项；形容词“*remaining*”表示“留下来的；剩余的”之意，只能用在名词前面，在 (d) *remaining were quietly sleeping* 中“*remaining*”作形容词修饰名词而应该放在名词前，所用词序有误，此外所表示的意思也与文中所要表达的意义不同，故为错误选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

#### 8. (a)

本题要表达的是“有关人们的事情常常引起人们极大的兴趣”，当 *interest* 作名词使用表达“某事令某人感兴趣”时，其结构为“*something is of interest to somebody*”，因此 (a) *of great interest to everyone* 为正确选项；而 (b) *in the public interest* 所表达的意思是“对公众有利”，与题目所要求的意义不符，因此为错误选项；(c) *a matter of publicity* 所表达的意思是“有关宣传的事”，与题义不符，故为错误选项；在 (d) *publicly attended* 中“*attend*”可以表达“注意（听）某事”，但是只能作不及物动词，后面跟介词 *to*，此处将“*attend*”用于被动语态是错误的，不及物动词不能用于被动语态。

#### 9. (d)

本题表达的是“报纸对普通人的生活具有巨大的威力”，课文中使用的动词是 *exert*（具有），(d) *wield* 与 *exert* 同义，故为正确选项；而 (a) *press* 表示“强烈要求”、(b) *invoke* 表示“实施”与 (c) *impose* 表示“强加于”均与“*exert*”所表达的意思不符，故为错误选项。

10. (c)

课文第 22 行“Reporters kept pressing for interviews so lawyers had . . . (记者纷纷要求会见……)”中使用的是“kept pressing for”, 意即“不断地要求”, 因为 (c) made repeated requests for (再三要求) 与其同义, 故为正确选项。而 (a) went on strike for (为……而罢工)、(b) went on printing (继续印刷) 和 (d) were continually hurrying to (不断地涌向) 都与“kept pressing for”所表达的意思不符, 因此为错误选项。

11. (c)

本句所表达的是“作为那个家庭的代言人”。(c) on behalf of (代表, 以……的名义) 与题义相符, 因此为正确选项; 而 (a) on account of (因为, 由于)、(b) instead of (代替, 替代) 和 (d) for the sake of (由于, 为了……利益) 都与本题所要求的词义不符, 故均为错误选项。

12. (a)

课文中说 5 胞胎成了商业化的受害者, 因此 (a) victims of commercialization (商业化的受害者) 为正确选项; 课文中说这些孩子出生后即成了商业化的受害者, 并不是说他们真正成了被买卖的具体的东西, 而是说他们成了某种抽象意义上的商品, 因此 (b) something to be bought and sold (被买卖的东西) 和 (d) a product of the market (市场的产品) 均为错误选项; (c) a public convenience (公众的方便) 与文中所述意义不符, 也为错误选项。

## Lesson 46

### Do it yourself

#### 自己动手

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Looked at machine—reckoned—only minor adjustment needed
2. Not so simple—mower refused to work—dismantled it
3. Traced cause of trouble—broken link in drive chain
4. Bought new chain—reassembled mower—still didn't work
5. Not surprised—bits left—didn't fit anywhere—gave up

#### 摘要写作参考答案

The author looked at his machine and reckoned that only a minor adjustment was needed. After adjusting a few things, the mower still refused to work, so he dismantled it and traced the cause of the trouble; there was a broken link in the drive chain. After buying a new chain and reassembling the mower, it still did not work. However, he was not really surprised because there were bits left that did not fit anywhere—so he gave up.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

*Plan and ideas for composition (a)*

Title: The dripping tap

Introduction: Dripping tap—didn't want to call in a plumber—charge a lot of money—so did it myself—surely a fairly easy job—what can go wrong?

Development: First thing—turn off water at mains—couldn't find it—finally found it under the kitchen sink—never noticed it before—turned it off  
Turned on kitchen tap—stopped running—unscrewed tap—took off old washer—new washer wouldn't go on—cut it a little—went on, no problem—put everything back together—turned on mains—pleased—five minutes later, tap started dripping worse than ever

Conclusion: Never again—will always call in professional

### *Composition*

Friends have often told me that one of the simplest plumbing jobs in a house is changing the washer on a dripping tap. We had a dripping tap in the kitchen. It had been dripping for weeks. I didn't want to call in a plumber because they charge a lot of money, so I decided to do it myself. Surely it's a fairly easy job, I thought. What can go wrong?

I really did not think that it would be difficult. I knew that the first thing I had to do was to turn off the water at the mains. Unfortunately, I couldn't find where to turn off the water. Was it under the sink in our kitchen? Or was it outside somewhere? Eventually I found it under the kitchen sink on a

pipe coming up from the ground that I had never noticed before.

When I had turned off the mains tap, I turned on the kitchen tap until it stopped running. So far, so good! Then I gaily embarked on the task of unscrewing the tap and taking off the old washer. When I tried to put the new washer on, however, I realized that I had a problem. Whatever I did, it just wouldn't go on. So I cut it a little and it went on with no problem. Then I put everything back together and turned on the mains. I was so pleased with myself—until, five minutes later, the tap started dripping worse than ever.

As a result of the experience, I have made a decision. I will never attempt to change a washer again, and I will call in a professional for any plumbing, building or electrical job that ever needs doing in the house.

(291 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

When we last met two years ago, I told you about the trouble I was having at work and you gave me some very valuable advice. I was worried about promotion, and you told me to work hard and be patient.

I am writing now to thank you and to say that you were absolutely right. In fact, I really can't thank you enough. I have worked hard over the past two years, and I have waited. And now I have just heard that I am going to be promoted next month.

I am going to be head of my section in the department.

(104 words)

## 词汇练习参考答案

increasingly (1.2):

more and more

plead ignorance (1.3):

say that you don't  
know anything about

gaily embark on the task (1.5):

happily start the job

installing (1.7):

putting in

novices (1.9):

beginners

repeatedly (1.17):

often, time after time

## 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

## Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第 18~19 行 "It had broken down the previous summer, and though I promised to repair it, I had never got round to it (那台割草机去年夏天就坏了, 尽管我答应修, 但一直没抽出时间)", 得知 (c) She suspected it would otherwise remain unrepaired and the grass uncut (她怀疑否则割草机还得不到修理, 草也得不到修剪) 为正确选项; 课文中说妻子让他叫个人来修理他们的割草机而不是让她丈夫修理, 故 (a) To get her husband to mend it, believing him to be a born carpenter (相信她丈夫天生就是个木匠, 因此让他修理割草机) 为错误选项; 课文中说她丈夫去年夏天答应修理割草机, 但是没修, 并没有说他

今年已经答应修理,因此也谈不到她忘记了此事,故 (b) She had forgotten that her husband had promised to mend it (她忘记了她丈夫已经答应修理它)为错误选项;她丈夫过去答应修理割草机,但是从未修理过,因此 (d) Her husband had repeatedly tried mending it already without success (她丈夫已经三番五次地尝试修理它,可是没成功)为错误选项。

2. (d)

根据课文第 23 行“The mower firmly refused to mow, so I decided to dismantle it (割草机还是纹丝不动,于是我决定把它拆开)”,得知 (d) what repairs he had already carried out had not proved adequate (他所进行的修理被证明是于事无补)为正确选项;作者之所以要拆开割草机是因为他修理之后割草机仍然纹丝不动,并不是因为他有时间拆卸割草机,因此 (a) it was a Saturday and he had the time to spare (那是个星期六,他有时间)为错误选项;由于作者不知道为什么割草机仍然不工作才打算拆开看看,而并不是他已经发现了故障原因,因此 (b) he had discovered the cause of the trouble (他已经发现了故障原因)为错误选项;作者拆开割草机的目的是进行修理,而不是为了证实它为什么不工作,因此 (c) he thought it was sure way of proving it would not work (他认为那是证实它不工作的最保险的办法)为错误选项。

3. (d)

根据课文第 29 ~ 30 行“When my wife nagged me to do something about it, I told her that either I would have to buy a new mower or let the grass grow. Needless to say our house is now surrounded by a jungle(妻子喋喋不休地让我想点办法,我告诉她,要么买一台割草机,要么让草

长下去。不用说,我家现在已被丛林包围)”得知,作者的妻子让他对坏了的割草机想想办法,而没说让他去买一台割草机,此外当作者提出两种选择后,结果是家被丛林包围,由此可知他妻子并未打算让他买台新机器,因此 (d) his wife was not prepared to let him buy a new lawn mower (他妻子并没准备让他买个新割草机)为正确选项;由于作者不会修理,所以割草机安装完毕后还有一些零件没装上,并不是因为他丢了几个零件才使得割草机不能工作,因此 (a) he lost several pieces of the mower in the process of dismantling it (在拆卸割草机时他丢失了几个零件)为错误选项;割草机没修好而不是因为生锈不能工作,因此 (b) by now the lawn mower is too rusty to cut the grass with (现在割草机已经锈迹斑斑不能用来割草了)为错误选项;由于割草机未修好才使得他家被丛林包围,此处丛林也并不是真正意义上的丛林,而是一种夸张的说法,意即草长得很高,因此 (c) besides not having cut the grass, he has failed to cut down the trees (不但没有割草,他也没能把树砍倒)为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (c)

本句中使用了“not as... as”这一结构进行比较,因此 (c) not nearly as 为正确选项;在 (a) increasingly less 中 less 为比较级,其后不应跟随 as 引导的状语从句,而应该跟随 than 引导的从句,因此为错误选项;在 (b) becoming not so 中否定词 not 应该置于系动词 are 的后面,而不应置于现在分词 becoming 的后面,因此为错误选项;(d) becoming less 与 (a) 所犯错误一样,故也为错误选项。

5. (d)

本题有关不可数名词 *furniture* 的用法。*furniture* 为不可数名词, 形容词 *shaky* 修饰 *furniture* 表示“摇摇晃晃的家具”, 这样 (d) *shaky* 为正确选项; 而 (a) 中的 *shaked* 一词为错词, *shake* 的过去分词为 *shaken*。由于 *furniture* 为不可数名词, 其前不能使用不定冠词, 此外 *shaken* 指被摇晃的, 因此 (b) *a shaken* 为错误选项; 在 (c) *a shaky* 中也是因为用了不定冠词 *a* 而为错误选项。

6. (a)

本题有关直接引语的词序以及用否定疑问句形式提出建议。课文中使用的是“*suggest + that* 引导的宾语从句”结构。英语中有多种表达建议的方法, 其中之一就是用否定疑问句“*why don't you ...*”这一结构婉转地、说服性地向对方提出建议, 由此可知 (a) *why don't you* 为正确选项; 而 (b) *why you don't* 不是疑问句的语序, 因此为错误选项; 英语中常用“*Would you be kind enough to ...?*”表达请求, 在 (c) *would you be kind to* 中缺少 *enough*, 因此为错误选项; (d) *do you kindly* 中用了助动词是 *do*, 而此处应该用情态助动词 *would*, 因此为错误选项。

7. (b)

本题有关短语动词“*to get round to*”的用法。该短语动词中的 *to* 为介词, 其后应该跟名词或动名词, 表示“找时间做某事”, 因此 (b) *to repairing* 为正确选项; 在 (a) 中 *to repair it* 为动词不定式, 不能用于“*to get round to*”后面, 故为错误选项; (c) *repairing* 中缺少介词 *to*, 故为错误选项; 而在 (d) *to repairing it* 中 *it* 多余, 因为句子中的关系代词 *which* 本身就起到“*to get round to*”的宾语作用, 不需再用 *it*, 因此为错误选项。

## Vocabulary 词汇

### 8. (c)

课文中说“由于出版了不计其数的教人自己动手做事的书报杂志,没有人再能说对某事一无所知”,也就是说没有人再有理由说对某事一无所知,因此(c) legitimate excuse (正当的理由)为正确选项;(a) wise precaution 的意思是“明智的预防”,(b) literary discussion 的意思是“文学讨论”,(d) reasonable allowance 的意思是“合理的补贴”,以上3个选项的语义都与句子所要表达的意思不符,故为错误选项。

### 9. (b)

课文中使用的是副词 particularly, 副词 especially 与其同义,意即“特别是”,因此(b) especially 为正确选项;而(a) mostly (主要地,通常)、(c) rather (宁愿,宁可)和(d) specially (专门地)均与原义不同,故为错误选项。

### 10. (a)

课文里使用的是“to put things right”,意即“将任何事情办妥当”,选项(a) in order 与此处的“right”同义,故(a)为正确选项;而其他3个选项主要为搭配错误,一般不与“to put things”搭配使用,故均为错误选项。

### 11. (c)

文中为“... with several curiously shaped bits of metal which did not seem to fit anywhere (……还剩下几个形状奇特的零件似乎哪里也装不上去)”,(c) go 用在该处表示“哪儿也放不进去”,与文中意义相符,因此为正确选项;而(a) fasten 是“上紧,拧紧”的意思,与文中意义不符,因此为错误选项;(b) suit 是“适合”的意思,与文中意义不符,因此为错误选项;而(d) fix 是“固定,上紧”的意思,与文中意义不符,故为错误选项。

12. (b)

课文中所用的是“Needless to say (不用说)”,意即“不用说,你就能想像出会是什么样子”。因为 (b) As you can imagine (你可以想像出)与课文所述意义相同,因此为正确选项;而 (a) As a matter of fact (事实上)虽然在语义上讲得通,但是与课文中所表达的意思不符,故为错误选项; (c) As a result (结果是)在语义上也讲得通,但也与课文中所表达的意思不符,因此为错误选项; (d) As a last resort (作为最后的手段,最后)所表达的意思与文中意义不符,故为错误选项。

## Lesson 47

### Too high a price?

#### 代价太高?

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Noise invades daily lives
2. Recent survey—worst—dogs barking at night
3. Also lawn mowers—late-night parties—noisy neighbours—vehicles—planes and helicopters—large radios
4. Mobile phones—public places
5. Survey—‘old-fashioned’ source of noise—snoring—men worst offenders—only small percentage of women snore—they suffer

#### 摘要写作参考答案

Noise constantly invades our daily lives. According to a recent survey, the worst noise is dogs barking at night, although the noise of lawn mowers, late-night parties, noisy neighbours, vehicles, planes and helicopters and large radios all adds. While the use of mobile phones in public places, it seems, is annoying, the survey revealed that one ‘old-fashioned’ source of noise is snoring, with men the worst offenders; only a small percentage of women snore, but they suffer most.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### *Plan and ideas for composition (a)*

Title: 'You are what you eat'

Introduction: Meaning of expression—applies to some—not to others

Plenty of fruit and vegetables—lean meat—keep healthy...

Development: Fatty foods and 'junk foods' (beefburgers, etc.,) ...

Problem—physical health not simply result of diet—also metabolism, exercise and way of life/lifestyle—sit at desk all day—watch TV—can't expect to be healthy

Conclusion: I eat well and sensibly—take exercise—still 150 pounds—too much for my age and height

### *Composition*

It has often been said that 'you are what you eat'. But what does that mean? It certainly does not mean that if you eat enough carrots, you will begin to look like one! It means that you will be healthy if you eat healthy food, and your health will not be so good if you eat 'junk food'. And obviously it applies to some people, but not to others. A friend of mine is mainly a vegetarian, she eats mostly fruit and vegetables, with some fish, and she is extremely healthy. She even has a meal occasionally with fried eggs, fried bacon and chips, but it doesn't seem to do her any harm. Basically she eats a diet which is 90% healthy. So, I suppose, she is what she eats.

There is a problem, however, and it is this. Your physical

health is not simply the result of what you eat and drink: it is also partly a result of your own metabolism, the amount of exercise you take and the general way you live (your lifestyle, if you like). If you eat healthy food, but sit at a desk all day and then sit all evening watching television, then of course you can't expect to be really healthy.

I eat well, I think. I eat fresh meat, fruit and vegetables when I can. I do not eat much fatty food, I do not eat much prepared food (frozen meals) and very rarely have a fried meal. I take regular exercise, particularly walking and cycling, and I don't drink much alcohol. But I still weigh 150 pounds, which is too much for my age and height.

(276 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

You have often said that you would like to visit the UK. Well, here's your chance!

I have just seen an announcement in the university office asking for names of students from other countries that we students could recommend for a free month's holiday course here in Edinburgh during the next summer holidays. Basically, it will be a free English language course with free accommodation. You would have to pay for your own air fare here and back. Naturally, I would make sure that I would be here in Edinburgh during your time here.

Let me know what you think.

(100 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

dump (1.3):	throw away
sheer volume (1.5):	simply the amount
rubbish (1.5):	things/material that are/is thrown away
leads to (1.8):	results in
dairy (1.11):	milk
abandon (1.11):	give up
organically-grown (1.12):	grown in a natural way, without the help of chemicals

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

## 3 多项选择练习

### Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

课文第 5—6 行“... but the sheer volume of rubbish we produce worldwide threatens to overwhelm us (……但是, 我们在世界范围内仅产生的垃圾的量就有把我们覆盖的危险)”, 该句中所用的动词不定式“to overwhelm”的意思是“打败, 使无能为力”, 课文中所表达的意思就是我们在世界范围内所产生的垃圾会使我们无能为力, 无法控制。因此 (c) is already beyond our control (已经超出了我们的控制能力) 与文中所述意义相符, 因此为正确选项; 而 (a) is heaped up like a great mountain (堆积如山)、(b) is

spread over the world like a blanket (像一条毯子覆盖在地球之上) 和 (d) is like a tide that will rise and drown us (像将要卷起并吞没我们的大浪) 都与课文内容不符, 故均为错误选项。

2. (b)

根据课文第 7~8 行“The need to produce ever-increasing quantities of cheap food leads to a different kind of pollution (日益增长的对廉价食物的需求导致了另一种形式的污染)”, 得知 (b) the twin pressures to produce more food and at lower cost (以更低的成本生产更多的食物的双重压力), 与日益增长的对廉价食物的需求同义, 因此为正确选项; 大量地使用杀虫剂和化肥只是手段, 目的还是为了生产出廉价的食物, 因此导致农业污染的根本原因不是杀虫剂和化肥, 因此 (a) the intensive use of pesticides and fertilizers (杀虫剂和化肥大量使用) 为错误选项; 而 (c) the conflict between good hygiene and cheap meat production (有益健康与廉价肉类生产之间的冲突) 不是导致农业污染的原因, 因此为错误选项; (d) the unrealistic price of organically-grown vegetables (有机培植的蔬菜不现实的价格) 也并不是导致农业污染的原因, 故也为错误选项。

3. (a)

根据课文第 18~19 行“A recent survey of the effects of noise revealed (surprisingly?) that dogs barking incessantly in the night rated the highest form of noise pollution on a scale ranging from 1 to 7 (最近一个有关噪音作用的调查〈令人吃惊地〉指出, 夜间连续不断的狗叫声在一个从 1 级至 7 级的刻度表上应列为最严重的噪音污染)”, 得知 (a) dogs barking all night (狗成晚地吠叫) 为正确选项;

而 (b) people using mobile phones (使用手机的人们) 对许多人来说是一种噪音, 但是对大多数人来说, 并不是最令人难受的噪音, 因此为错误选项; (c) heavy trucks in quiet villages (在安静的村庄行驶的重型卡车) 以及 (d) noisy neighbors having parties (举行集会的吵闹的邻居) 都是噪音, 但并不是课文中所说的最令人难以忍受的噪音, 故为错误选项。

4. (c)

根据课文第 29~30 行“Against these figures, it was found that only 5% of women snore regularly, while the rest are constantly woken or kept awake by their trumpeting partners (与这些数字相比, 只有 5% 的妇女经常打鼾, 而其余的则经常被与她们同睡而像吹号似地打着呼噜的男人吵醒或弄得睡不着)”, 得知 (c) women of all ages 为正确选项; 显然打鼾的主要是男性, 而受害的则主要是女性, 因此 (a) young males in particular (特别是年轻的男性) 和 (b) a majority of middle-aged men (大多数中年男人) 为错误选项; 课文中指的是所有的女性, 而未说特别是年轻女性, 因此 (d) young women especially (特别是年轻妇女) 为错误选项。

**Structure 结构**

5. (a)

课文中使用的是定语从句结构, “four ways” 为先行词, 省略了介词 in 和关系代词 which。本题中使用的是介词短语作定语的结构, 因此 (a) of dealing with 为正确选项; 该句中也可以用动词不定式作定语修饰 ways, 但是在动词不定式前不能用关系代词 which, 因此 (b) which to deal with 为错误选项; (c) can be dealt with 是被动语态,

在语义上不是 to deal with the ways, 而是 to deal with rubbish, 故为错误选项; 动词不定式没有进行时态, 故 (d) to be dealing with 为错误选项。

6. (c)

本题有关词序用法的问题。all 或 all of 能用于指示代词 this、that、these 和 those 之前, 所以 (c) all of these four 为正确选项; 而 (a) these all four、(b) of these all four 和 (d) all these of four 在词序上都是错误的。

7. (a)

课文中使用的是现在分词短语“going off”, 作定语修饰名词短语“burglar alarms”, 本题中使用的是定语从句结构, 由定语从句修饰名词短语 burglar alarms。因此 (a) that go off 为正确选项; 该处只是一般的陈述, 而不是说正在响着的防盗警铃, 因此在此定语从句中不能使用正在进行时态, 故 (b) that are going off 为错误选项; 当关系代词作从句中的主语时该关系代词不能省略, (c) go off 中没有关系代词, 因此为错误选项; 在 (d) which going off 中不应有关系代词 which, 直接用分词短语“going off”作定语即可, 因此为错误选项。

8. (a)

本题有关 it 的强调用法。句子中的真正主语是“that we dislike most”, it 代替该从句, 置于句子之首, 起强调作用。因此 (a) it is 为正确选项; 而其他 3 个选项在结构上都讲不通, 因此为错误选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (c)

本题有关“to play a role”这一固定搭配的用法。“to play a role”表示“充当某个角色, 起某种作用”, 本句的意思是“新

技术在噪音污染方面也起到一定的作用”。(c) played a role 为正确选项；而“do one's bit”意即“做自己的那份工作”，因此 (a) done its bit 为错误选项；(b) done a share 与 (a) 意思相同，故也为错误选项；(d) given its all (倾其所有) 的语义与文中所述意义不符，因此也为错误选项。

10. (c)

课文中使用的是短语动词“to object to (反对, 反感)”。(c) take exception 的意思是“对……反感, 被……惹恼”，该短语与其的语义相近，因此为正确选项；而 (a) except 中的动词 except 的意思是“排除”，与其意义相去甚远，因此为错误选项；(b) offend 的意思是“惹恼, 激怒”，句子要表达的意思是许多人被手机所惹恼，而不是他们惹恼手机，因此为错误选项；(d) take offence 的意思是“感到受到伤害”，这个短语后面跟介词 at 而不是介词 to，因此该选项为错误选项。

11. (a)

课文中使用动词“revealed (揭示)”，而 (a) brought to light 与此同义，故 (a) 为正确选项；(b) gave birth to 的原意是“生孩子”，用于描写性语言中的意思是“导致”，该短语的词义与文中所述意义不符，故为错误选项；(c) came to be 的意思是“发生”，(d) took the lid off 的意思是“公布于众, 公开”，因此上述两个选项都为错误选项。

12. (b)

正确选项 (b) By comparison with 这一介词短语的意思是“与……相比较”。(a) Comparing with 为分词短语。在英语中一般分词短语的主语应该与主句的主语为同一主语。本题中的主句主语是 it，而分词短语的主语为表

示人的代词, 所以该选项为错误选项。通常使用“by comparison with”或“in comparison with”这两个介词短语表示“与……相比较”, 因此 (c) In comparing 和 (d) In comparing with 均为错误选项。

# Lesson 48

## The silent village

### 沉默的村庄

#### 1 写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Village—one street—looked forbidding
2. Seemed deserted—goat—sat down—picnic lunch
3. Suddenly surrounded by children in rags—silent—motionless
4. Walked down street—followed by children—village came alive—faces in windows—men and women in doorways
5. Clearly unwelcome
6. Hurried back to stream—and boatman

#### 摘要写作参考答案

The village contained one street and looked forbidding. Apart from a goat, it seemed deserted, so they sat down and had a picnic. Looking up, they suddenly found themselves surrounded by children in rags. The children were silent and motionless. As they walked down the street followed by the children, the village came alive with faces in windows and people watching them silently from doorways. The visitors were clearly unwelcome. They hurried back down to the stream and the boatman.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### *Plan and ideas for composition (b)*

Title: An unexpected swim

Introduction: Reached the stream—no one there—no boat, no boatman

Development: At first surprised—mistaken the place? walked along bank—definitely not there

Tried to attract attention of anyone on other side—stranded

Sat down on bank of stream—discussed problem—wife suggested something—take off shirts, tie personal belongings in them—swim to other side

Walked back to hotel

Conclusion: Most surprising thing—walked into hotel still wet—no one said word

### *Composition*

When we reached the stream where we had stepped out of the ferry and where the boatman said he would wait, there was no one. There was no boat and no boatman.

At first we were surprised and thought that we had perhaps mistaken the place where he said he would wait. We walked along the bank of the stream for a few hundred yards in one direction, and then in the other. He was definitely not there. I was worried that the villagers would be coming down the mountain after us, but we couldn't see anybody, and the only noise was the noise of the running stream. We called across the stream to attract the attention of anyone on the other

side, but nothing happened. It seemed that we were stranded.

We sat down on the bank of the stream and just looked at each other.

'Come on,' I said. 'We've been in worse situations than this. What about that time we got lost in the forest in Germany, and the time the car broke down in Australia?'

'You're right,' she said, cheering up. 'There is something we can do.'

And, since I certainly couldn't think of anything better, we did just what she suggested. We both took off our shirts, tied our personal belongings in them (purse, money, passport, keys and so on), tied the shirts round our waists, and waded into the water until we had to swim. And we swam to the other side, where we squeezed out our shirts and put them on again wet. Then we walked back to our small hotel in the town.

Perhaps the most surprising thing was that when we walked into the hotel still wet from our swim across the stream, no one said a word!

(301 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

I am writing to congratulate you on the occasion of your eighty-fifth birthday. I have been trying to imagine all the things that have happened during your life and all the questions I could ask you. You must remember the Second World War (1939-1945). What do you remember about it? And what about the Coronation of Elizabeth II, and Kennedy's assassination, and the Gulf War, and the death of Princess

Diana, and lots of other events like that? You must tell me all about them sometime.

Once again, many congratulations on your 85th birthday!

(96 words)

2

### 词汇练习参考答案

inaccessible (1.2):	difficult or impossible to reach
hospitable (1.3):	welcoming, friendly
hostile (1.5):	aggressive, unfriendly
vicinity (1.8):	neighbourhood, surrounding area
end abruptly (1.13):	suddenly come to an end
traced (1.13):	found ... by following a path
eventually (1.17):	finally

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

3

### Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

根据课文第 12~13 行“Taking a path which led out of the town, we crossed a few fields until we came to a dense wood. We expected the path to end abruptly, but we found that it traced its way through the trees (我们走上了一条出镇的小路, 穿过几块农田, 来到一片茂密的树林。我们原以为小路会到此终止, 没想到它在树林中继续向

前延伸)”,得知 (a) followed a path which they found to their surprise led them into a wood (沿着一条小路走下去,令他们吃惊的是小路把他们引进一片树林)为正确选项;根据课文所述,他们离开小镇并不是为了参观远处的教堂和远处的村庄,而是想躲避嘈杂的人群,因此 (b) went exploring for churches further afield, having seen those nearby (他们由于看过了那些近处的教堂而去探寻远处的教堂)和 (c) decided to visit a small village some distance away from the town (决定去参观一个远离城镇的小村庄)为错误选项;他们不是在参观巴尔干的一个市镇时发现他们的本国同胞一旦与世隔绝就对人抱有敌意,而是在参观了一个偏僻的小村庄后,因此 (d) discovered their own countrymen to be hostile when they are cut off (发现他们的本国同胞一旦与世隔绝就对人抱有敌意)为错误选项。

2. (b)

根据课文第 19~20 行“Even under a clear blue sky, the village looked forbidding, as all the houses were built of grey mud bricks. The village seemed deserted . . . (农舍全用灰色的土坯建成,即使在晴朗的蓝天底下,村庄看上去也会令人感到难以亲近。村里似乎无人居住……)”,得知 (b) it had a deserted and gloomy appearance (它看上去灰暗冷清)为正确选项。文中未说通往村庄的路陡,而只是说那是一条“straggling unmade road (未经修筑的弯弯曲曲的道路)”,此外那条路也并不是使村庄显得令人难以亲近的原因,因此 (a) the road leading up to it was so steep and rough (通往村庄的路又陡又坑洼不平)为错误选项。那个村庄坐落在陡峭山坡上,而且当时是在晴朗的蓝天底下,因此 (c) the mountain threw its shadow over

the small brick houses (那座山将它的阴影投射在那些小砖房子上)为错误选项。刚开始时,那个村庄似乎无人居住,可是后来窗口露出了一张张的面孔,因此 (d) there was nobody in the village (村庄里空无一人)为错误选项。

### 3. (c)

根据课文第 29 ~ 30 行“The most frightening thing of all was that not a sound could be heard. There was no doubt that we were unwelcome visitors (最令人害怕的是到处没有一点声音。毫无疑问,我们的来访是不受欢迎的)”,得知 (c) Nobody said a single word as they watched them walk down the street (当他们注视着他们沿着街道行走时没有人说一个字)为正确选项;任何人都没有出来迎接他们,因此 (a) Apart from the children, no one had come out to greet them (除了孩子们没有人出来迎接他们)为错误选项;人们并不是躲起来了而是不欢迎他们,因此 (b) When they had first gone through the village, the people had hidden (当他们初次穿越村庄时,人们躲起来了)为错误选项;人们并不是腼腆而是不欢迎他们,因此 (d) The men were too shy to speak to them and the women too shy to come out (男人们腼腆得不好意思同他们说话,妇女们腼腆得不好意思走出来)为错误选项。

## Structure 结构

### 4. (d)

本题有关现在分词短语作时间状语的结构问题。(d) Seeing为正确选项。如果将 (a) Being able to see 放进句子中,句子结构是正确的,但是在语义上与主句衔接不上,故为错误选项;(b) It could be seen 与原题中的“that the path continued on the other side”放在一起构成一个完整的句子,无法与后面的主句衔接,故为错误选

项;而在 (c) At the sight of 中介词 of 后面应该接名词而不应该接从句,因此为错误选项。

5. (a)

(a) ferry us across 为正确选项,意思是“将我们摆渡过河”,其中的 across 为副词。(b) ferry 为及物动词,其用法为“+ 宾语 + 副词/介词”,如(a),因此该选项有误。在选项 (c) take to the other side 中动词 take 为及物动词,后面应该跟宾语,因此为错误选项。课文中出现的是“do so”,而 (d) 是 do that,两者的差别在于 so 和 that。动词 do 后而用 so 表示“做前而提到的某个动作”,而代词“that”通常用来指前而已提到的或已经知道的某件事、人或事件,因此 (d) 为错误选项。

6. (a)

介词 with 可以用于名词词组后而表示某种特性,如 an old house with steep stairs and dark corridors(一座有着很陡的台阶和黑暗走廊的老式房子)。本题的句子所表达的是“两侧排列着小房子的未经修筑的道路”,因此 (a) with 为正确选项;而 (b) which 为关系代词,后面应该引导的是个从句,可是该句中填空处后面并不是个从句,因此为错误选项;(c) by 虽然是个介词,但表示某种特性时通常用介词 with 而不用介词 by,因此为错误选项;(d) and 用来连接两个并列的成分,可是此处 unmade road 和 small houses 并不是并列的,后者是用来修饰前者的,因此也为错误选项。

7. (c)

本题有关主语从句的结构问题。本句整体结构为“主语从句 + 系动词 + 补语(从句)”。(c) What frightened us most 为主语从句,为正确选项;而 (a) It frightened us most 中的“it”,非先行词 it 又非强调词 it,用在此处与后

面的表语从句“that not a sound could be heard”在语义上重叠,故为错误选项;(b) The thing that most frightened us 与原题中的 of all 无法衔接,如果原题中没有 of all,该项就是正确选项了,故为错误选项;(d) We were most frightened by 在结构上无法和原题部分衔接,原题中缺少的是主语,而不是一个主谓结构的句子,因此也为错误选项。

8. (d)

本题是一个并列结构的定语从句,从句中的主语为“the boatman”。wait 是一个延续性动词,在本句中表示“一直在等”。由于主要动词 hope 为过去式,因此使用的是过去进行时态,而连词后面所要表达的是过去将来的时间概念,因此 (d) would ferry 为正确选项;由于该处表达的是“过去将来的时间概念”,而不是表示“过去正在或一直在”的概念,因此 (a) was ferrying 和 (b) ferrying 均为错误选项;在 hope 这类表示希望、期待等的动词后面往往用将来时态,在 hope 后面也可以用现在时表示将来,而当 hope 为过去式时,应该用表示过去将来的 would 如选项 (d),因此 (c) ferried 为错误选项。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (b)

表示“呼呼大睡”时常用副词 fast 或 sound 修饰 asleep,因此 (b) sound 为正确选项;而其他 3 个选项中的副词 (a) dead、(c) quickly 和 (d) hard 所表示的含义都不是熟睡的意思,因此均为错误选项。

10. (c)

课文中用来描述那个篱笆墙的形容词是 dilapidated,意即“陈旧破烂的,倒塌的”,4 个选项中只有 (c) in a state of disrepair (年久失修的)与此同义,因此为正确选项;而

(a) no longer in use(不再使用的)、(b) sheltered by trees (被树阴遮挡的)和(d) made of very hard timber(用硬木做成的)都与课文中的描述不符,故为错误选项。

11. (b)

课文中使用的动词是“seemed (看上去,显得)”,(b) appeared所表达的意思与动词 seemed 相同,因此(b)为正确选项;而(a) came、(c) turned 和(d) looked 都与 seemed 表达的意思不符,因此均为错误选项。

12. (a)

课文中使用的是动词“glared”,其所表达的意思是“凶狠地盯着”,(a) stared 表示“死盯着”,由副词 angrily 修饰时所表示的意思与 glare 相同;而(b) frowned 意即“皱着眉头”,(c) grimaced 意即“面露痛苦,厌恶的表情”,(d) winked 意即“眨眼睛”,都与 glared 意义不同,故为错误选项。

## Lesson 49

### The ideal servant

#### 理想的仆人

#### 1 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. On return with guests—told Bessie—prepare dinner
2. Meal below standard—Bessie couldn't walk steadily—bumped into furniture—mumbled at guests
3. Brought in pudding—tripped—pudding crashed on dining table
4. Guests amused—Harriet horrified
5. Realized—Bessie drunk—dismissed her immediately

##### 摘要写作参考答案

On her return with a party of guests, Aunt Harriet asked Bessie to prepare dinner. Not only was the meal below standard, Bessie could not walk steadily, and she bumped into furniture and mumbled at the guests. When she brought in the pudding, she tripped and the pudding crashed onto the dining table. While the guests were very amused, Aunt Harriet was horrified. She realized Bessie was drunk and dismissed her immediately.

(72 words)

## 作文参考答案

### *Plan and ideas for composition (b)*

Title: It is a good thing domestic servants have become a great rarity.

Introduction: Domestic servants still exist—work for film stars, pop stars, other famous people—but very few—great age of servants is past

Development: Reasons why small number of domestic servants: small number of big houses needing domestic servants—many country houses in Britain—bought by National Trust—many helpers voluntary

Houses owned privately—now run much more efficiently—open gates to general public

Such large houses—some domestic staff—but employ other people

Conclusion: Personally pleased—no more / very few domestic servants

Most work for someone else—but ‘servant’ idea connected with past centuries

### *Composition*

Domestic servants still exist, but nowadays, instead of working for rich old ladies, they only work for members of the royal family, aristocrats, film stars, pop stars, successful businessmen and other rich and famous people, and there are really very few of them. The great age of domestic servants is past.

There are many reasons why there is such a small number of domestic servants now. The first thing, of course, is that

there are very few families that own big houses that need domestic servants. Many of the large country houses in Britain that need servants have been bought by an organisation called the National Trust and many of the people who help to run these properties are voluntary. They are certainly not 'servants' and they believe that they are helping to preserve the heritage of Great Britain.

The houses that *are* still owned privately are now run much more efficiently than they used to be, and very few entertain guests as they used to do. Instead, they open their gates to the general public, and so they need the same staff that major entertainments need. True, such large houses have some domestic staff, but they employ many other people who would not like to think of themselves as 'domestic servants'—waiters and waitresses in their cafés, cleaners, car park attendants, ticket collectors, guides, office staff, and so on.

I am personally pleased that there are so few people in domestic service now. Most of us work for someone else, it's true, but the whole idea of being a 'servant', a 'domestic servant', is an idea connected more with past centuries than the twentieth or twenty-first centuries.

(279 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

Thank you very much for your cheque which I received at the end of last week for my 21st birthday. It was extremely kind of you and is far more than I deserve.

Naturally you would like to know what I intend to do with the money. For some time now I have wanted to buy a

computer, so I am going to buy one that takes floppy disks and CDs, and one that has games and that I can use to send e-mail messages.

Once again, many many thanks for the money.

(94 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

air her views (1.2):	express her opinions
favourite (1.2):	most loved
persisted in (1.7):	continued to
immaculate (1.9):	spotlessly clean
invisible (1.11):	can't be seen
enlightened (1.14):	wise, free from accepted ideas
domestic staff (1.15):	servants in the home (cleaners, cook, butler, etc.)

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

## 3 多项选择练习

### Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第9行“*No matter how many guests were present, the great house was always immaculate (不管去多少宾客,大房子里总是收拾得干干净净)*”,得知(b) *he always found the house spotlessly clean (他总是发现房子*

干净得一尘不染)为正确选项;他姑妈平时就统帅着一支看不见的用人大军,而不是招待客人时才雇用人,因此 (a) his aunt would employ a great many servants whenever she invited guests (每当他姑妈宴请客人时,她总是雇用许多仆人)为错误选项;由于他姑妈过于挑剔,经常换用人,才使得她没机会知道她们的名字,因此 (c) he never stayed long enough to learn the names of the servants (他一向呆得时间都很短,因而不知道那些用人的名字)为错误选项;他姑妈尽管很难伺候,但是却比较开明,并且从来不让用人们每天工作超过 8 小时,因此 (d) his aunt was hard to please if her staff only worked an eight-hour day (如果他姑妈的雇员每天只工作 8 小时就很难令她满意)为错误选项。

2. (d)

根据课文第 18~19 行“During that time she so gained my aunt's confidence, that she was put in charge of the domestic staff (在此期间,她赢得了姑妈的信任,甚至当上了大管家)”,得知姑妈之所以让贝西当管家是因为对她信任,因此 (d) because my aunt trusted her (因为我姑妈信任她)为正确选项;而 (a) as a result of her hard work (由于她工作勤奋)、(b) because she was loyal to my aunt (因为她对我姑妈忠诚)以及 (c) because she had such good qualifications (因为她如此能干)都不是姑妈让她当大管家的主要原因,因此为错误选项。

3. (d)

根据课文第 27~28 行“Aunt Harriet was horrified. She reluctantly came to the conclusion that Bessie was drunk (哈丽特姑妈着实吓了一跳。她不得不认定贝西是喝醉了)”,得知 (d) because it was only then that she realized

how drunk Bessie was (因为到那时她才意识到贝西醉成了什么样子)为正确选项;课文中说姑妈离开庄园一周后返回时发现了贝西的“weakness”,此处“weakness”指“小小的弱点”,而不是说贝西很弱,因此 (a) to see how weak Bessie had become during her absence (发现在她不在的那段时间贝西变得多么虚弱)为错误选项;姑妈被吓了一跳并不是因为客人们觉得那很滑稽,而是她意识到贝西喝醉了,因此 (b) because the guests all found the incident very amusing (因为客人们都觉得那件事很滑稽)为错误选项;文中未提布丁做得好坏,因此 (c) because the pudding was not up to Bessie's usual standard of cooking (因为布丁不如贝西以往做得那么好)为错误选项。

4. (c)

根据课文第 30~32 行“After her departure, Aunt Harriet discovered that there were piles of empty wine bottles of all shapes and sizes neatly stacked in what had once been Bessie's wardrobe (贝西走后,哈丽特姑妈发现在贝西以前用过的衣柜里整整齐齐地放着一堆堆形状各异、大小不一的酒瓶子)”,得知 (c) found a great many bottles of wine in Bessie's wardrobe (在贝西的衣柜里发现许多酒瓶子)为正确选项;文章写到贝西离开后没再谈到姑妈找用人的事,因此 (a) still hoped to find a servant who would please her in every respect (仍然希望找到一个在各方面都令她满意的用人)为错误选项;课文中未提姑妈是否继续摆筵席,因此 (b) was so disillusioned by Bessie that she gave up entertaining lavishly (贝西令她如此心灰意冷使得她不再大摆筵席了)为错误选项;课文中并未提及姑妈是否追查这些酒瓶是如何到贝西的衣柜里去的,因此 (d) could not understand how so many bottles had

disappeared from her cellar (不能理解这么多酒瓶是如何从她的酒窖里消失的)为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 5. (d)

本题有关 however, whatever, whoever 这类词的用法。在英语中带-ever 的复合词可以引导让步状语从句, (d) However many 为正确选项;而 (b) Whatever many 和 (c) Whoever the many 为错误选项;no matter 也可以引导让步状语从句,但是应该与疑问词(who, when, where, how)等连用,因此(a) No matter the number of 为错误选项。

#### 6. (c)

本题有关非限定性定语从句的用法。在英语中,引导非限制性定语从句的关系代词必须是 who、whom、whose、which 与 where,而不能用 that,因此 (c) which was 为正确选项;在 (a) that it was 中 it 多余,因为 that 本身就是从句的主语,此外 that 不能用于非限定性定语从句,因此为错误选项;而 (b) what was 中的 what 不能用来引导定语从句,只能用来引导名词性从句,故此为错误选项;(d) being 为现在分词,构成分词短语时其主语需跟其主句的主语相一致,该处其主句主语为 my aunt 而 being 的主语为 a policy,故此为错误选项。

#### 7. (c)

本题有关形容词“incapable”的用法以及与“impossible”的区别。形容词 incapable 后接介词 of 而不能接动词不定式,表示“不能够做某事”;而形容词 impossible 常用来表示“某件事不可能做到”或“某件事不可能是真的或对的”,即其主语不能是表示人的代词或名词。由于原题中的主语是 Bessie,因此 (c) incapable of walking 为正确选

项;而 (a) impossible to walk 和 (d) not possible for walking 均为错误选项;在 (b) incapable to walk 中,形容词 incapable 后面跟的是动词不定式,因此为错误选项。

8. (a)

本题有关动词“drink”的用法。动词 drink 既可以作及物动词也可以作不及物动词使用,作及物动词使用时表示“喝某种饮料”,作不及物动词使用时表示“喝酒”。“drunk”既是 drink 的过去分词又是个形容词,表示“喝醉的”。“drink”既可以作可数名词也可以作不可数名词,作可数名词使用时指“某种饮料”,但作不可数名词时指“酒”。综上所述,(a) been drinking 为正确选项,指“她一直在喝酒”,暗示她喝得醉醺醺的;而 (b) drunk 在此为 drink 的过去分词,与 had 构成过去完成时,表示“她喝过酒”而并不表示她喝醉了,因此为错误选项;(c) drank 在结构上无法与 had 相连;而使用 (d) some drinks 时,则指她喝了一些酒,但并不意味着她喝多了,因此为错误选项。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (c)

本题考查动词 fail 的用法。课文中使用的是“could not find words to praise”,意思是“不知该用什么言辞赞扬”。(c) Words failed 为正确选项。此处动词 fail 为及物动词,表示“令某人失望,离开某人”。(a) Not a word was said by 指“一句话未说”,与原义不符,为错误选项。(b) Words were lost on 和 (d) Word did not come to 都不符合英语习惯,为错误选项。

10. (b)

课文中使用的是形容词“industriousness”,其意思是“勤奋”,与 (b) hard work 同义,故 (b) 为正确选项;而

(a) factory(工厂)、(c) dusting (掸灰) 和 (d) business (事务) 都与 industriousness 的意思不同, 故均为错误选项。

11. (d) (本题教师用书上答案给错)

课文中使用的是不及物动词 tripped, 其意思是“脚在……绊了一下”, (d) stumbled on 与其同义, 故为正确选项; 而 (a) fell over(摔倒)、(b) slipped on (滑倒) 和 (c) trespassed (侵入) 都与文中所述意义不符, 因此均为错误选项。

12. (c)

课文中使用的是“long before”, 而 (c) well before 与其同义。“well”在这里作副词使用以加强语气, 与 long 的作用相同; 而 (a) far in front of 指“远远在……前面”, (b) much behind 指“远远落在后面”, (d) long ahead of 指“远远超前于”, 都与“long before”的意思不符, 故均为错误选项。

# Lesson 50

## New Year resolutions

### 新年的决心

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Exercised early morning—two days—before anyone found him out
2. Sat at breakfast—condition betrayed him
3. Enthusiasm waned
4. Jan. 10th—back to normal—decided to keep mind fresh for reading
5. Sat in room few evenings reading
6. One evening—went down and sat in front of TV—then dozed off
7. Now bought book to help resolution to read

#### 摘要写作参考答案

The writer exercised early in the morning for two days before anyone found out. When he sat at breakfast the second day, his condition betrayed him. His enthusiasm waned so that by January 10th, things were back to normal. However, he decided to keep his mind fresh for reading. He read on his own until one evening he went down and sat in front of the television, but he dozed off. He has now bought a book on

speed reading!

(80 words)

### 作文参考答案

*Plan and ideas for composition (a)*

Title: Broken resolutions

Introduction: New Year resolutions—made to be broken? — some people serious—most know they won't succeed—so ridiculous resolutions

Development: Last time made list of resolutions—five years ago—always do college work on time—keep room tidy—have nothing to do with girls in nearby college—write home once a week—wash clothes regularly—have haircut once a month—Impossible! —girlfriend helped—eventually gave up in despair

Conclusion: Don't make New Year resolutions any more—little point—why break habits—years to establish

### *Composition*

Are New Year resolutions made to be broken? *I* think so. Some people are serious about them of course, but most know that they won't succeed in keeping them. That's probably why they make resolutions such as 'I must be polite to Aunt Harriet' when they only see Aunt Harriet twice a year! —or 'I must cut down on my smoking' when they only ever have a cigarette after a family lunch on Sundays! Such resolutions, then, are not only ridiculous, but hardly resolutions at all!

The last time I ever made a list of resolutions was five

years ago. I remember now that I resolved always to do my college work on time, to keep my room tidy, to have nothing to do with the girls in the nearby girls' college, to write home at least once a week, to wash my dirty clothes regularly and to have a haircut once a month. What was I thinking of?! For most college students such resolutions would be impossible—and of course they were for me!

I kept three of the resolutions for a week, and a girlfriend from the nearby girls' college helped me to keep two more (the ones about keeping my room tidy and washing my dirty clothes regularly!) for another week. After that, I gave up in despair. Instead, I resolved just to try to be just a little bit more tidy and a little more thoughtful, generally.

I don't bother to make New Year resolutions any more since I have proved to myself and others that I can't keep them. There seems to be little point in breaking habits which have taken years to establish.

(279 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

It is about a month since I last wrote to you. At that time I was studying in a language school. However, since then I have left the school and managed to find a job.

Before I left home, I know that I promised I would write to you once a week—and I had every intention of doing it. I'm sorry I haven't written as often as I promised, but I do not always have very much news. I'll write and tell you all about the job next time.

I really will try to write more often in future.

(100 words)

## 词汇练习参考答案

mentally (1.1):	in our minds/heads
formidable (1.2):	challenging, frightening
recur year in year out (1.3):	happen every year/year after year
beyond attainment (1.8):	cannot be achieved
inveterate (1.8):	firmly established in a bad habit
frustration (1.9):	feeling of annoyance and dissatisfaction
carrying out (1.14):	doing

## 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

## Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

在课文第 13 行, 作者写道: “I limited myself to two modest ambitions ... (我只给自己定下两项适中的任务……)”, 这表明作者知道计划定得多了反而完不成, 因此选择了两项自认为能够完成的任务。由此得知 (c) was careful to choose two which he thought were within his scope (仔细地选择了两项他认为能够完成的任务) 为正确选项; 而作者并未说不选择他原来喜欢选择的事情, 因此 (a) decided against choosing any of his old favourites

(决定不选择任何一项他原来喜欢选择的事情)为错误选项;原题中的“*In making his New Year resolutions (当他下新一年的决心时)*”,表示正在下决心,而不是已做出决定,因此在未做出决定之前也就谈不上将决定是否告诉任何人,故此 (b) *did not tell his family of them in case they announced them in public (没告诉家人他的决定,怕他们将他的决定公布于众)*为错误选项;为了不让家人发现他的计划,他决定早起 11 分钟,并未提他起床需要多长时间,因此 (d) *underestimated the time it would take him to get up in the mornings (低估了他早上起床所需的时间)*为错误选项。

2. (a)

根据课文第 21 行“*I sat down at the breakfast table in an exhausted condition. It was this that betrayed me (我坐到桌边吃早饭,一副筋疲力尽的样子。正是这副模样泄露了我的秘密)*”,得知 (a) *notice how tired he looked when he came to breakfast (当他来吃早餐时注意到他看上去多么疲劳)*为正确选项;而 (b) *heard him jumping about on the carpet in the living room (听到他在起居室的毯子上跳来跳去)*、(c) *came down earlier than usual and saw him doing his exercises (比往常下来得早一些,看到他在锻炼身体)*和 (d) *saw him reading instead of looking at television (看到他在看书而不是在看电视)*都与文中所述意义不符,故为错误选项。

3. (d)

根据课文第 28~30 行“*One night, however, feeling cold and lonely, I went downstairs and sat in front of the television pretending to read. That proved to be my undoing, for I soon got back to my old bad habit of dozing*

off in front of the screen (可是,有一天夜里,我感到又冷又孤单,便来到楼下坐在电视机前假装看书。这下我可完了,因为不一会儿我就恢复了以前的坏习惯,在屏幕前打起瞌睡来)”,得知 (d) he has not been able to resist the hypnotic effects of television (他没能挡住电视令他昏昏欲睡的诱惑)为正确选项;作者之所以没能读更多的书,是因为放弃了读书而不是因为他的阅读速度慢,因此 (a) he is not able to read quickly enough in the time he has available (他不能在他有限的的时间里快速地阅读)为错误选项;作者也并不是喜欢看电视,因为一看电视他就打瞌睡,因此 (b) he enjoys watching television more than he does reading(他更喜欢看电视而不是阅读)为错误选项;房间冷,感到孤单并不是他未完成读书计划的原因,因此 (c) his room is too cold for comfort and he misses his family (他的房间冷得难受,而且他想念家人)为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (d)

本题有关时态用法问题。课文中使用的是介词 beyond。在句中,介词 beyond 表示状态,所以用一般现在时即可表示将来的概念。在本题中使用的是表示行为的动词“attain”,因此必须用一般将来时态表示将来的概念,故 (d) will never attain 为正确选项;而 (a) never attain、(c) are never attaining 和 (b) would never attain 所用时态均不正确。

#### 5. (b)

本题有关几个情态助动词的用法。“should”常用来表示“应该”,本题所表示的是“比我们应该表现的还要愚蠢”,

因此 (b) should 为正确选项。“would”表示“在某种情况下某事肯定要发生”，因此 (a) would 为错误选项。“need”可以作情态助动词，表示“有必要做某事”，因此 (c) need 为错误选项。“ought”也为情态助动词，所表达的意思有时与“should”相同，可以表示“应该”，但是其后必须跟“to”，因此 (d) ought 为错误选项。

6. (c)

本题有关反身代词的用法。在英语中，当动作作用于做出动作者自身时，动词宾语要用反身代词，本题中是表示将自己的身体扭曲成某种形状，因此 (c) twisted myself into such 为正确选项；在 (a) so twisted me into 中连词 so 不能和连词 and 连用，此外动词“twisted”后面跟随的是宾格代词 me，而不是反身代词 myself，而且句子后面的 that 从句是个结果状语从句，前面应该用表示程度的形容词“such”修饰“uncomfortable positions”，构成“such... that”结构，故为错误选项；在 (b) so twisted myself into 中不应有连词 so，而应该在 into 后面用 such，因此为错误选项；而在 (d) twisted me into such 中应该用反身代词 myself 而不是 me，因此为错误选项。

7. (b)

本题有关“介词 + 动名词短语”作方式状语的用法。(b) by spending 为正确选项，在该句中作方式状语；而 (a) to spend 是动词不定式，不能作方式状语，因此为错误选项；(c) my spending 为动名词短语，在句子中只能充当名词性的句子成分，而不能作方式状语，故为错误选项；(d) to have spent 为不定式的完成式，不能在句子中作方式状语，故为错误选项。

## Vocabulary 词汇

### 8. (a)

课文中使用的是“to keep my resolutions to myself”, 意即自己的计划对外保密。“to keep something private”所表达的意思是“对某事保密”, 与课文所表达的意思相符, 故 (a) private (私密的) 为正确选项; 而 (b) personal (个人的)、(c) intimate (亲密的) 和 (d) solitary (孤寂的) 都不能表达此义, 故均为错误选项。

### 9. (c)

课文中使用的是副词“nevertheless”。“nevertheless”的意思是“尽管如此, 虽然, 不过”, (c) 短语“just the same”或“all the same”与 nevertheless 所表达的意思相同, (b) little by little (渐渐地) 和 (d) By all means (当然) 均与 nevertheless 所表达的意思不符, 故为错误选项。

### 10. (c)

课文中使用的是短语动词“trooped in”, 意即“成群结队”, 而选项 (c) flocked in 意即“成群结队”之意, 由此得知 (c) 为正确选项; 而 (a) gathered round (聚集在某人周围)、(b) marched by (从……旁列队走过) 和 (d) joined in (参加, 加入) 都与 trooped in 所表达的意思不符, 故均为错误选项。

### 11. (b)

课文中使用的是动词“waned”, 意即“逐渐变小/变弱”。而选项 (b) evaporated 意即“蒸发, 消失”, 由此得知 (b) 为正确选项; 而 (a) faded (褪色, 失去光泽)、(c) ran out (跑出, 流出) 和 (d) fell out (跌落) 都与 waned 所表达的意思不符, 故均为错误选项。

### 12. (b)

课文中使用的是短语动词“got back”，意即“回到，恢复”。而 (b) slipped back 意即“回到，陷入（原来的坏习惯）”，与 got back 意思相符，故为正确选项；而 (a) returned（回来，返回）、(c) went back（回去）和 (d) took again（又拿起来）都与“got back”所表达的意思不符，故均为错误选项。

# Lesson 51

## Predicting the future

### 预测未来

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Bagrit predicted—computers small enough—hold in hand
2. Provide information—traffic jams—suggest alternative routes
3. Used in hospitals—help doctors diagnose illnesses
4. Relieve office workers/accountants—dull repetitive work
5. Failed to predict Internet—as communication—as source of information
6. As predicted—computers smaller, more powerful, cheaper

#### 摘要写作参考答案

According to Bagrit, computers would be small enough to hold in the hand, and they would be able to provide information about traffic jams and suggest alternative routes. They would be used to help doctors diagnose illnesses, and in business would relieve office workers of dull, repetitive work. However, he failed to predict the use of the Internet as a vehicle of communication or a source of information. But as predicted, computers have become smaller, more powerful and cheaper.

(79 words)

## 作文参考答案

### *Plan and ideas for composition (a)*

Title: Computers in 20 years' time

Introduction: Predicting what computers will be like—guessing game

Development: Development so fast—computers already smaller, more powerful, cheaper than ever—in 20 years, what? Lets' speculate.

1. Everyday shopping by computer—virtual-reality shopping
2. Education—computer-notebooks
3. Travel—computer-driven aircraft, cars, lorries, etc.
4. Medicine and health—brain surgery—computer-operated limbs

Conclusion: Who knows? —wait and see

### *Composition*

Predicting what computers will be like in 20 years' time or what they will be able to do is a guessing game. If Leon Bagrit could not predict everything, what chance have I got? However, because prediction is just a calculated guess, I will try!

The development of the computer since the 1960s has been very fast. From large mainframe computers which filled whole rooms to small lap-top computers which you can carry in a shoulder bag or large handbag, it has taken only forty years. Computers are already smaller, more powerful and cheaper than they have ever been. So what might happen in the next twenty years? Let's speculate.

In twenty years' time it's possible that many people will be doing their everyday shopping by computer. The 'virtual-reality' shop will be available through your TV set. You will be able to 'walk through' your supermarket on screen, click or tick what you want, and then order it—and it will be delivered. In education, most students could be using computer-notebooks which make notes for them as they listen to a lecture or watch a demonstration experiment. In the world of travel, aircraft already have computer systems that will control auto-pilot. In twenty years' time, computers could actually pilot aircraft—with no need for a real, live human pilot at all.

Computers already help doctors diagnose disease and other health problems, and help in the control of body systems during operations. What else might they do in the future? They might actually control certain kinds of surgery (brain surgery, for example) where the human hand cannot always keep still enough, and power computer-operated limbs.

So there are some ideas. But who knows what might really happen? No one. No one can see into the future. We shall just have to wait and see.

(307 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

As you are coming in tomorrow after I have left, I thought I should write you a few notes.

You already have a set of keys, but I have also left a set of keys with our neighbours opposite, John and Jane Smith. If you need anything, please ask them.

You won't have to bother about the post because I have asked the Post Office to keep all our mail till we come back. Everything else is as I told you, but please remember to leave the answerphone on when you go out and write a list of messages for me.

Enjoy yourself, but please look after the house.

(108 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

predicting (1.1):	saying what will happen
imagined (1.2):	seen in the mind
whole (1.7):	complete
functions (1.9):	jobs, tasks
primitive (1.10):	very simple, undeveloped
humble (1.14):	small, low
in common use (1.15):	used by almost everybody, employed generally

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

## 3 多项选择练习

### Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第 4 ~ 6 行 "In the 1970s, computers were common enough, but only in big business, government

departments, and large organizations (在 70 年代, 计算机已经相当普及了, 但只用在大的公司、政府部门和大的组织之中)”, 得知 (c) in widespread use (被广泛地使用) 为正确选项; 而 (a) notoriously unreliable (极不可靠)、(b) rather rare (相当少见) 和 (d) not at all common (根本不普及) 都与文中陈述不符, 故为错误选项。

2. (b)

根据课文第 10 ~ 11 行 “In 1975, a primitive machine called the Altair, was launched in the USA. It can properly be described as the first ‘home computer’ and it pointed the way to the future (1975 年, 美国推出了一台被称为‘牛郎星’的原始机型。严格地说, 它可以被称为第一台“家用电脑”, 而且它也指出了今后的方向)”, 得知 (b) put computing power within the reach of ordinary people (使普通人能用到计算机功能) 为正确选项; 而 (a) did not need specially written software to run it (不需要为运行它而需要专门写的软件)、(c) helped to establish Microsoft DOS as the standard system (帮助建立了作为标准系统的微软 DOS) 和 (d) was widely copied by IBM and other big manufacturers (被 IBM 和其他大的生产厂家大量模仿) 均为错误选项。

3. (d)

根据课文第 19 ~ 22 行 “Bagrit foresaw a time... when they would be used in hospitals to help doctors to diagnose illnesses, when they would relieve office workers and accountants of dull, repetitive clerical work (巴格瑞特预示有一天……计算机在医院里可以帮助医生诊断病情, 计算机可以使办公室人员和会计免除那些枯燥、重复的劳动)”, 得知 (d) computers in commerce would take over

many repetitive tasks(计算机在商界可以替代许多重复性的工作)为正确选项;在课文中的第 18 行,作者写道,“Bagrit dismissed the idea that computers would learn to ‘think’ for themselves and . . . (巴格瑞特根本不接受计算机可以学会自己去‘思考’和……)”,从中得知巴格瑞特根本不认为计算机可以像人那样去思考,因此(a) we would be able to teach computers to think like human beings (我们可以教会计算机像人类那样去思考)为错误选项;根据课文第 23 行“Of course, Leon Bagrit could not possibly have foreseen the development of the Internet . . . (当然了,莱昂·巴格瑞特根本没有可能预测到国际互联网……)”,得知(b) computers would bring about the development of the Internet (计算机可以促进国际互联网的发展)为错误选项;根据课文第 19~22 行的叙述,得知计算机在医院里可以帮助进行诊断,而不是代替医生进行诊断,因此(c) computers in hospitals would diagnose illnesses and prescribe treatments (医院里的计算机可以诊断病情和治疗)为错误选项。

4. (b)

根据课文第 27 行“Computers have become smaller and smaller, more and more powerful and cheaper and cheaper. This is what makes Leon Bagrit’s predictions particularly remarkable (计算机已经变得体积越来越小、功能越来越多、价格越来越低,这就是莱昂·巴格瑞特的预测非凡的地方)”,得知(b) size, power and cost (体积、功能和价格)为正确选项;而(a) ability to relieve people of boring tasks (使人们摆脱枯燥工作的能力)、(c) use in traffic management (在交通管理方面的应用)和(d) commonplace use in offices and hospitals (在办公室和

医院中广泛的应用)都与文中所述意义不符,故均为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 5. (c)

本题有关 *it* 作先行主语的用法。(c) *to predict* 为正确选项。动词不定式为句子中的真正主语,*it* 是先行主语。*it* 作先行主语时,句子中的真正主语是动词不定式、动名词或名词从句。*it* 作先行主语时经常与形容词、名词或动词连用,这样(a) *when predicting* 和 (b) *the prediction of* 都不能作为真正的主语用于由 *it* 作先行主语的句子中,故为错误选项;虽然由 *that* 引导的名词从句可以在 *it* 作先行主语的句子中作真正主语,但是在 *difficult*、*easy* 等这类形容词后多用介词“*for* + 名词或代词 + 动词不定式”的形式构成,而不用 *that* 引导的从句,因此 (d) *that we predict* 为错误选项。

#### 6. (a)

本题用 *could have* 表达过去的某种可能性,但事实上并没有这种可能,这是一种虚拟语气的用法。那么它是过去对未来的某种推测,因此其后的宾语从句应该用表示过去将来的情态助动词“*would*”,故 (a) *there would be* 为正确选项;该句中宾语从句中使用的是 *there be* 结构,选项 (b) *there to be* 中 *there* 后而跟的是动词不定式,结构有误,故为错误选项;而 (c) *their being* 构不成宾语从句,故为错误选项;在 (d) *there were* 中使用的是过去式,该句所表达的是对过去未来的推测,因此动词时态使用有误,故为错误选项。

#### 7. (a)

本题有关短语动词“*believe in*”的用法,它后面可以跟名词或代词,也可以跟动词的-ing 形式,但不可以跟动词不

定式。因此 (a) taking over and ruling 为正确选项。(b) that took over and ruled 所表达的意思与文中意义不符,它表达的是“接管并统治世界(的计算机)”,故为错误选项。而在 (c) take over and rule 和 (d) to take over and rule 中,带 to 和不带 to 的动词不定式都不能用于“believe in”之后,故都为错误选项。

8. (a)

本题有关由疑问词引导的主语从句的用法。本句中疑问词应该作从句中的主语,而可以作主语疑问词只有 who、what、which 和 whose。该处所表达的是“什么使得巴格瑞特的预言如此非凡”,因此 (a) What makes 为正确选项;而 (b) Why are、(c) How many are 和 (d) They make 均为错误选项。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (a)

课文中使用的是动词“dismissed(不接受)”,而 (a) refuted 意即“驳斥,否认……正确性”之意,故 (a) 为正确选项;而 (b) refused (拒绝)、(c) rejected (回绝) 和 (d) discharged (释放) 所表达的意思都与“dismissed”不符,故为错误选项。

10. (b)

课文中使用的是“small enough”,而 (b) sufficiently (足够〈小〉),与“small enough”所表达的意思相符,故为正确选项;而 (a) adequately (刚好够,适当地)、(c) capably (能干地) 和 (d) possibly (可能地) 所表达的意思与“small enough”不符,故为错误选项。

11. (a)

课文中使用的是形容词“commonplace (普通的,平常的)”,而 (a) relatively normal (相当正常的,相当普遍的)

与 commonplace 同义,故为正确选项;而 (b) more or less frequent (几乎常见的)、(c) taken for granted (理所当然的)和 (d) unexceptionable(好到极点的)所表达的意思与“commonplace”不符,故为错误选项。

12. (a)

课文中使用的是动词“communicate (联系,交流)”,而 (a) get in touch (与……联系)与 communicate 同义,故为正确选项;而 (b) contact (与……联系)虽然所表示的意思与“communicate”以及“get in touch”相符,但是 contact 是及物动词,后面直接跟宾语,不能跟介词 with,故为错误选项;而 (c) send a message (传递一个消息)和 (d) convey an idea (表达一种观点)与“communicate”所表达的意思不符,故为错误选项。

## Lesson 52

### Mud is mud

#### 实事求是

1

写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Asked for perfumed mud—had already asked for 'Myrolite'—assistant had already promised to order some
2. Assistant's eyes lit up—fetched several bottles—put on counter
3. Harry picked up smallest bottle—asked price
4. Learned—£ 20—left—bottle under arm
5. Curious bottle—first and last purchase of rare cosmetics

#### 摘要写作参考答案

The assistant promised to order the 'Myrolite' Harry had already asked for, so he then said he wanted perfumed mud. This time her eyes lit up and she immediately fetched several bottles which she put on the counter. Harry picked up the smallest bottle, and when he learned the price (£ 20), he paid and left with the bottle under his arm. This curious bottle, now in his study, was his first and last purchase of rare cosmetics.

(77 words)

## 作文参考答案

### *Plan and ideas for composition (a)*

Title: A day's shopping

Introduction: Looking forward to day out—wanted to get new clothes—last Friday

Development: Got up usual time—caught bus to centre of town—a list of purchases—something to wear to friend's wedding—pair of shoes to go with new clothes—within an hour had most important things on list

Then most difficult part of day—' Birthday present for Pat'—a book

Spent 2 hours in one large book shop—failed—bought three for self!

Conclusion: How I felt when I got home

### *Composition*

For me, a day's shopping is the best way I think of to pass a day away from college or work. I have been looking forward to a day out shopping for weeks because I have wanted to get some new clothes for ages, so last Friday I took a day off.

I got up at the usual time (as if I were going to work or college) because for me shopping is as serious as work. Before I left the house I made sure I put on a good pair of walking shoes and then caught the bus into the centre of the town.

Some people visit all the shops in the hope that they will find what they want at the prices they want to pay. Not me: I'm one of those shoppers who has a list of purchases—and with a fairly good idea of how much I want to pay.

The first thing I wanted was something to wear to a

friend's wedding next month—and I didn't want to pay very much. I found just what I wanted in the second shop I visited. And in the second shoe shop I visited, I found a pair of shoes that would go with the new clothes *and* which I could wear to work afterwards. Within an hour I had bought the most important things on my shopping list. I was so pleased!

But then came the most difficult part of the day. The third thing on my shopping list was 'Birthday present for Pat'. I like to give her a present but it is always so difficult. This year, I decided, I would buy her a book. Do you know how long I spent in one large book shop? Two hours! And even then I didn't get her a book—although I bought three for myself!

By the time I got home, it was six o'clock. I was absolutely exhausted, but pleased that I had managed to buy two things on my list.

(337 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

Did you hear reports of the thunderstorm in our area a week ago? We were caught in the middle of it.

We were woken in the middle of the night by thunder and lightning. We went downstairs where my mother made coffee and tea. Then the wind started howling and it started to pour with rain. When we looked out of the windows, we could hardly see any of the neighbouring houses, and water was flooding down the road. Suddenly there was a crash on our roof.

We didn't realize how bad the damage was until the following morning when we found that the chimney had fallen

through the roof.

(110 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

delicate (1.3);

pleasant and not strong

observant (1.3);

quick to notice things

came into the possession (1.9);

became the owner of

stuff (1.9);

material, matter, substance

insoluble (1.14);

that will not dissolve (in  
water)

to keep a straight face (1.17);

not to laugh, to stop oneself  
from laughing

is quite beyond me (11.17-18);

I don't understand it

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

## 3 多项选择练习

### Comprehension 理解

1. (a)

根据课文第 12~13 行“Harry used to consider it a great joke to go into expensive cosmetic shops and make outrageous requests for goods that do not exist (哈里曾认为走进一家名贵化妆品商店荒唐地提出要买一种根本不存在的商品是件很开心的事儿)”,得知哈里之所以到名贵的化妆品商店并不是为了买那些化妆品,因为他所提

出要买的商品是他编造出的。他只是为了寻开心,因此 (a) he would take up the shop assistants' time without having to buy anything (他只是占用商店售货员的时间而什么都不买)为正确选项;而 (b) he enjoyed inventing fanciful names for outlandish products (他乐于编造一些稀奇古怪的商品的名称)并不是他恶作剧的目的,故为错误选项;而 (c) the shop assistants usually tried very hard not to disappoint him (售货员通常竭尽全力不令他失望)也非他恶作剧的目的,此外也并不是所有的售货员为他寻找他所要的商品,故为错误选项;由于他所提出要买的商品根本不存在,是他编造出来的,售货员当然不可能知道,因此 (d) he was amused at the idea that he knew something the shop assistants didn't (他知道某种商品而售货员却不知道令他非常得意)为错误选项。

2. (c)

根据课文第 15~17 行“*He loved to be told that one of his imaginary products was temporarily out of stock and he would faithfully promise to call again at some future date, but of course he never did*(他爱听售货员说他想像出来的那种东西暂时脱销,于是他就煞有介事地许诺改天再来光顾。当然,他再也不会来了)”,得知 (c) *was delighted if the shop assistant believed the product actually existed* (如果售货员相信他所说的商品的确存在,他非常高兴)为正确选项;根据课文第 13 行“*He would invent fanciful names on the spot* (他会当场编造出一些稀奇古怪的货名)”得知,哈里并不是走进商店之前先想好一个名字而是当场现想出来的,因此 (a) *always thought up a name for some nonexistent item before going into the shop* (总是在走进商店之前想出一个本不存在的商品的名称)为错

误选项;而 (b) would walk out angrily if the assistant did not entertain his request (如果售货员不考虑他的要求,他会生气地走出去)与文中所述意义不符。文中说如果售货员从未听说过这些东西,他会装出十分遗憾和不安的样子,因此该选项也是错误的;他所要的商品根本不存在,因此并不可能脱销,所以 (d) seldom bought the products he asked for as they were out of stock (由于他所要的商品已经脱销,所以他极少买到他所要的商品)为错误选项。

3. (d)

根据课文第 28 ~ 30 行 “He picked up what seemed to be the smallest bottle and discreetly asked the price. He was glad to get away with a mere twenty pounds and . . . (他挑出一个看上去最小的瓶子,谨慎地问了价。他庆幸自己只破费了 20 英镑便得以脱身……)”,得知 (d) picked up the smallest bottle, hoping it wouldn't be too expensive (挑出最小的瓶子,希望它不会太贵)为正确选项。他压根就不想买任何化妆品,没想到这次他编造出的商品名字却真有其货,他不得不忍痛买下最小的一瓶。而 (a) was surprised, as he had only expected one such bottle to be produced (由于他原以为只生产了一瓶这种商品,所以倍感吃惊)与文中所述意义不符,故为错误选项;课文中说哈里只好认输,只是说他只得自认倒霉,而不是向售货员认输,因此 (b) told the shop assistant he was defeated (告诉售货员他这回栽了)为错误选项;哈里没想到确有他编造的这种商品,他只得忍痛买下这种商品,因此 (c) felt obliged to offer twenty pounds for the smallest bottle (觉得有必要为最小瓶的香水付 20 英镑)为错误选项。

## Structure 结构

### 4. (b)

课文中使用的是“looks like (看上去像)”,而(b) seems to be 所表达的意思与“looks like”相符,故为正确选项;而(a) must be 表示肯定的推测,故为错误选项;(c) would be 表示“肯定是”之意,因此为错误选项;而(d) would appear 表示“肯定会出现”之意,因此也为错误选项。

### 5. (c)

本题有关 it 作先行宾语的用法。在本句中真正的宾语是动词不定式“to ask for goods that do not exist”, it 作先行宾语, funny 作宾语补语。这样,(c) it 为正确选项;而(a) that was、(b) it being 和 (d) they were 用在此句中结构上都讲不通,因此均为错误选项。

### 6. (d)

本题有关带介词的非限定性定语从句的用法。(d) for which 为正确选项,表示为他所要的商品编造名称。这里“which”代表的是他所要的 goods。此处应该用代表 goods 的关系代词,而不能用表示时间的关系代词,因此(a) when 为错误选项。在(b) to which 中,不应该使用介词 to,而应该使用介词 for。给什么编造名字应该是“to invent names for something”,而不是“to invent names to something”,故为错误选项。在(c) for what 中 what 不能引导定语从句,故为错误选项。

### 7. (b)

本题有关 it 作先行宾语的用法。it 可用于 enjoy、hate、like、love 等动词之后作宾语,再接真正的宾语从句,因此(b) it when he was told 为正确选项;在(a) when he was told 中缺少 it,因此为错误选项;在(c) it to be told 中 it 是多余的,故为错误选项;而在(d) that he was told 中缺

少 it, 同时应该用 when 而不能用 that, 因此也为错误选项。

8. (a)

本题有关句子时态的用法。文章的一开始使用的是一般现在时, 由此可以断定, 自那以后直到现在哈里一直未再玩那种恶作剧, 因此应该用现在完成时态, 故 (a) he has not played 为正确选项; 而 (b) had not played it 中使用的是过去完成时, 与文章整体的时间概念不符, 故为错误选项; 而 (c) he does not play it 和 (d) did not play it 未能将从那时到现在这一持续的时间概念表示出来, 故为错误选项。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (c)

课文中使用的是形容词“outlandish (稀奇古怪的)”, 而选项 (c) weird (古怪的) 所表示的意思与“outlandish”相符, 故为正确选项; 而 (a) foreign (不相关的)、(b) rural (乡下的, 具有乡村特色的) 和 (d) unlikely (不可能发生的) 均与“outlandish”的意思不符, 故均为错误选项。

10. (d)

课文中使用的是动词“conveyed (表达)”, 而 (d) meant (表达, 表示) 所表达的意思与“conveyed”相同, 因此为正确选项; 而 (a) sensed (感觉到)、(b) reminded (提醒) 和 (c) informed (通知) 均与“conveyed”所表达的意思不符, 故均为错误选项。

11. (a)

课文中使用的是副词“mildly (轻微地)”, 而 (a) slightly (轻微地) 与“mildly”所表达的意思相同, 因此为正确选项; 而 (b) little (一点也不, 完全不)、(c) barely (几乎不, 几乎没有) 和 (d) grossly (全部地) 均与“mildly”所表达

的意思不符,故均为错误选项。

12. (d)

课文中使用的是“beat a hasty retreat (匆匆离去)”,该短语表示“避开(讨厌的事)”之意,换言之,即有幸离开令自己不愉快的环境。这样,(d) had a lucky escape (幸运地逃离)与 beat a hasty retreat 意思相同,因此为正确选项;而 (a) got a real bargain (的确买得划算)、(b) made a fortunate choice (做出了幸运的选择)和 (c) little to lose (几乎未损失什么)均与“beat a hasty retreat”所表达的意思不符,故均为错误选项。

## Lesson 53

### In the public interest

#### 为了公众的利益

1

写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Ombudsman received complaint from foreigner—wrote to Chief of Police—wanted record of case
2. No official record—Chief denied accusation
3. Action impossible—then similar complaint—sent lawyer to investigate
4. Lawyer ascertained truth of accusations
5. Policeman severely reprimanded—warned—any further complaints—prosecution

#### 摘要写作参考答案

On receiving a complaint from a foreigner about police ill-treatment, the Ombudsman wrote to the Chief of Police asking for a record of the case. As there was no official record and the Chief denied the accusation, no action was possible. But when there was another similar complaint, the Ombudsman sent a lawyer to investigate. He ascertained the truth of the accusations, the policeman was severely reprimanded and warned that if there were further complaints he would be prosecuted.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

*Plan and ideas for composition (b)*

Title: The work of a policeman

Introduction: In Britain—people—different attitudes to police—  
generally appreciate them (not criminals!)

What do police *do*?

Development: Number of jobs in one:

Traffic; keeping the peace; solving crime;  
helping to keep order in emergencies—air  
crashes, fires, road accidents, etc.

Conclusion: Police do excellent job—don't envy them

### *Composition*

In Britain, people have different attitudes to the police. Most people generally appreciate them and the job they do—although there are certain people (including criminals, of course) who do not believe that the police should have the power that they do.

What does a policeman actually do? It is not an easy job to describe. After all, a policeman has a number of jobs in one. A policeman often has to control traffic, either on foot in the centre of a town, or in a police car on the roads. Indeed, in Britain, he might be in the Traffic Police and spend all, or a lot of, his time driving up and down main roads and motorways. A traffic policeman has to help keep the traffic moving, stop speeding motorists and help when there is an accident.

A policeman has to help keep the peace, too. If there is a fight or some other disturbance, we expect the police to come and assess the situation and restore order. And they often have

to deal with situations at great risk to themselves and their own safety.

We expect the police to solve crimes, of course, so an ordinary policeman, even if he is not a detective, will often have to help look for and arrest criminals.

And who do we call when there is an emergency—an air crash, a fire, a road accident, or a burglary? We call the police. So a policeman has to be prepared to face any unpleasant emergency that may happen in the modern world.

The police do an absolutely necessary job, they do it extremely well and I support them, but I do not envy policemen. I do not think that I could ever do the job of a policeman.

*(296 words)*

### 书信写作参考答案

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing to you to complain about the standard of postal services in our district.

We used to receive post regularly at special times of the day and post used to be collected regularly from post boxes at the same times every day. In the past few months, however, the service has deteriorated. We no longer receive post regularly and it would seem that post is collected from post boxes at any time of day.

My neighbours and I would like you to investigate this situation.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

(100 words)

## 2 语法词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

evolved an excellent system (11.2-3):	developed a very good method
safeguard (1.9):	protect
grievances (1.11):	complaints
investigates (1.12):	looks into, tries to find the reasons for
correspondence (1.16):	the letters to and from the Ombudsman
altered (1.18):	changed in a small way

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

## 3 多项选择练习

### Comprehension 理解

1. (c)

根据课文第 6 ~ 8 行 “The Swedes were the first to recognize that public officials like civil servants, police officers, health inspectors or tax-collectors can make mistakes or act over-zealously in the belief that they are serving the public. As long ago as 1809, the Swedish Parliament introduced a scheme to safeguard the interest of

the individual (是瑞典人首先认识到政府工作人员如文职人员、警官、卫生稽查员、税务人员等等也会犯错误或者自以为在为公众服务而把事情做过了头。早在 1809 年,瑞典议会就建立了一个保护公民利益的制度)”,可以确定 (c) It admits the possibility of official oppression and guards against it (它承认有可能存在官员欺压行为并且采取措施加以防范)为正确选项。而 (a) Other countries have followed the Swedish example (其他国家已经效仿了瑞典的做法)与问题不符。问题是问瑞典司法特派员制度在哪一个方面体现了开明的社会政策。(b) Each party appoints its own Ombudsman to ensure equal representation (每一政党指派它自己的司法特派员以保证具有平等的代表性)与文中所述意义不符。文中说由议会中代表各政党利益的委员会委派司法特派员,司法特派员制度的建立是防范各种官员的错误行为,而并非单单是为了消除对外国人的歧视,因此 (d) It aims to eliminate prejudice against foreigners living in Sweden (它的目的是消除对住在瑞典的外国人的歧视)为错误选项。

2. (d)

根据课文第 12 行“The Ombudsman is not subject to political pressure (司法特派员不受任何政治压力的制约)”,得知 (d) his decisions are not influenced by any one political party (他的决定不受任何一个政党的影响)为正确选项;而 (a) the complaints he deals with come from all levels of society (他所处理的抱怨来自社会的各个层次)并不证明他能公正地行使权利,因此为错误选项;文中说意见必须用书面的形式提出,根据这些书信再进行调查,这只是一种程序,并不是他公正行使权利的关键,因此 (b) he will only take action if written evidence justifies a

complaint (只有当书面证据证实某一项抱怨时他才能采取行动) 为错误选项。而 (c) every letter of complaint receives legal attention (每一封抱怨信都得到法律的重视) 与文中所述意义不符。文中说, 如果公民的意见正确, 司法特派员便为他伸张正义, 那么换句话说, 如果不正确司法特派员就不会予以采纳和采取行动, 故此为错误选项。

3. (c)

根据课文第 28 ~ 29 行 “The policeman in question was severely reprimanded and was informed that if any further complaints were lodged against him, he would be prosecuted (当局的警察受到严厉的斥责, 并被告知如果再有人投诉他那么他将受到起诉)”, 得知 (c) He was officially rebuked (他受到官方的谴责) 为正确选项; 而 (a) He was sent to prison (他被关进监狱)、(b) He was prosecuted (他受到起诉) 和 (d) He was dismissed from the police force (他被开除出警察队伍) 都与文中所述意义不符, 故均为错误选项。

4. (b)

根据课文第 22 ~ 24 行 “There was nothing in the record to show that the foreigner’s complaint was justified and the Chief of Police strongly denied the accusation. It was impossible for the Ombudsman to take action, but ... (材料中没有任何文字记载证明外国人说说的情况符合事实, 警察局长矢口否认这一指控。司法特派员难以处理……)”, 得知 (b) the Ombudsman cannot take action if he lacks supporting evidence (如果缺乏有利的证据, 司法特派员不能采取行动) 为正确选项; 而 (a) an official may not be prosecuted until a law is altered by parliament (只有

议会修改了某项法律, 否则官员不能够被起诉) 与文中所述意义不符, 故为错误选项; 司法特派员之所以在收到第 2 封投诉信才立即派人去调查此事, 是因为前一个投诉没有任何文字记载, 而且警察局长也矢口否认, 所以不能采取行动, 这并不意味着采取行动都必须得有两个相同的投诉, 因此 (c) *it needs two similar complaints before the Ombudsman can take action* (司法特派员在采取行动之前需要有两例相同的投诉) 为错误选项; 文中只举出一个有关某警察歧视外国人这一实例, 表明瑞典司法特派员制度保证每个公民不受官员的欺压, 并不是说明瑞典所有的警察都腐败, 都欺压外国人, 因此 (d) *the Swedish police are corrupt and prejudiced against foreigners* (瑞典警察腐败并且歧视外国人) 为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 5. (a)

本题有关强调 *it* 的用法。(a) *It was the Swedes who first* 为正确选项。*it* 用在这种强调句中时它也称作先行主语。在这种句子结构中, 所强调的词往往由关系代词 *that* 与从句连接, 当所强调的主语是人时可以用关系代词 *who*, 当需要对句子的某一部分进行强调时只能用代词 *it* 作主语而不能用其他代词, 即尽管所强调的部分为复数名词也必须用 *it*, 因此 (b) *They were Swedes who had first* 为错误选项。强调句子的某一部分也可以用 “*the person who*”, “*the thing that*” 等形式表示, 虽然 (c) *The Swedes were the first who have* 在结构上是正确的, 可是 *who* 引导的定语从句中不应该用现在完成时, 因为从句中所表达的概念是 “过去谁最先认识到……”, 而不是 “谁最先已经认识到……”, 故为错误选项。而在

(d) First it was the Swedes that 中“first”的位置不对,故为错误选项。

6. (c)

该题有关冠词的用法。该句中的“complaint”为泛指,应该用不定冠词 a,因此 (c) a justified complaint 为正确选项;而在 (a) the complaint justifiably 中,首先“complaint”为泛指,不能用定冠词,此外“justifiably”为副词,不能修饰名词,故为错误选项;在 (b) the justified complaint 中,不能用定冠词修饰泛指名词“complaint”,因此为错误选项;虽然 (d) justified his complaint 在句子结构上是正确的,但是在语义上是不正确的,因为不能由投诉人自己去证实自己的投诉是符合事实的,因此为错误选项。

7. (a)

本题 (a) the next time any 为正确选项。“the next time”引导的是一种含蓄条件句,即不用 if 直接引导的条件句,相当于“if any further”。这里需要的是一个条件句,而不是一个时间状语从句,而在 (b) after any further 中,“after”引导的是时间状语从句,故为错误选项;在 (c) unless no further 中,“unless”可以引导条件句,但是它等于“if ... not”,因此如果“unless”后面用 no 则正好与原文意思相反,故为错误选项;(d) furthermore 为副词,表示“此外,再者”,不能修饰名词“complaints”,故为错误选项。

8. (a)

本题有关虚拟语气的用法。本句中的条件句是非真实性条件句,而且是对过去发生的事情的非真实性的假设,因此该句的主句应该用“might + 动词的现在完成时”形式表示,故 (a) might have continued 为正确选项;而

(b) might continue、(c) will continue 和 (d) would continue 所用的动词时态都不正确,故均为错误选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

#### 9. (c)

课文中使用的是形容词“high-handed (专横的,霸道的)”,而 (c) officious 意即“爱发号施令的”,与“high-handed”同义,因此为正确选项;而 (a) efficient (效率高的,能胜任的)、(b) quick-tempered (急脾气的) 和 (d) handy (敏捷的) 都与“high-handed”的意思不符,故均为错误选项。

#### 10. (a)

课文中使用的是“The action he takes varies according to the nature of the complaint (司法特派员采取的行动因投诉的性质不同而有所不同)”,即根据投诉的性质决定采取什么行动。因而 (a) depends on 所表达的“依照,根据”之意与文中所述意义相符,故为正确选项;而 (b) alternates with (轮流,交替)、(c) differs from (与……不同) 和 (d) agrees with (赞同) 都与文中所述意义不符,故均为错误选项。

#### 11. (b)

课文中使用的是副词“strongly (强烈地)”,而 (b) firmly (强烈地) 与此同义,因此为正确选项;而 (a) bitterly (辛辣地)、(c) mildly (温和地) 和 (d) roughly (粗鲁地) 都与“strongly”所表达的意思不符,故均为错误选项。

#### 12. (b)

课文中使用的是“in question (当事的)”,而 (b) concerned (当事的,有关的) 与“in question”同义,因此为正确选项;而 (a) questioned (被询问的,被质询的)、

(c) described (被描述的) 和 (d) interrogated (被讯问的, 被审问的) 都与“in question”所表达的意思不符, 故均为错误选项。

## Lesson 54

### Instinct or cleverness?

#### 是本能还是机智?

#### 1 写作练习

##### 摘要写作要点

1. Saw thousands of ants crawling up tree
2. Noticed leaves withering—clusters of aphids under leaves
3. Visited by ants
4. Bound base of tree with sticky tape—stopped ants temporarily
5. Next morning—ants solved problem—house wall onto leaves

##### 摘要写作参考答案

The writer saw thousands of ants crawling up his peach tree. Then he noticed the leaves of the tree were withering and found there were aphids under the leaves. They were being visited by the ants. In an effort to stop them, he bound the base of the tree with sticky tape and of course they couldn't cross it. By the next morning, however, they had solved the problem: they were climbing onto the leaves from the house wall.

(79 words)

## 作文參考答案

### *Plan and ideas for composition (b)*

Title: Our efforts to control pests

Introduction: What are 'pests'?—see dictionary definition—always been difficult to control or exterminate them

Development: Insects: ants, wasps, locusts, (plague,) beetles that damage woodwork ... damage property, devour our crops, ...—other pests—mice, rats—eat food—spread disease—efforts to control pests—insecticides and pesticides—poison—traps

For farmers, even certain birds are pests—gulls, pigeons, etc.—follow at sowing time and eat seeds—scarecrows to frighten birds

Conclusion: Tried almost everything—some pests held in check—other still a major problem (e.g. locusts)

### *Composition*

According to my dictionary, 'pests' are 'small animals or insects that harm or destroy food supplies'. But for me, they are more than that; they are insects and small animals that spread disease and damage property, too. Whatever they do and however you define them, pests have been a major problem to man throughout history. Man has tried to control or exterminate these creatures, but never with very much success.

In some ways, insects are the worst pests. Ants, locusts and beetles damage property, woodwork, crops and harvest, and in this century we have sprayed crops with insecticides and

pesticides to protect them from insects. The problem now is that there are some insects that have become immune to pesticides. Rats and mice eat our food supplies too and spread disease, and people have tried to kill or catch them with poison or traps. But again, they are still with us. We haven't managed to exterminate them.

Let's not forget, however, that for farmers, certain birds are 'pests' too. In Britain, seagulls, pigeons and other birds often fly down in their hundreds (or even thousands) to pick up seeds when farmers are planting crops. Years ago, farmers used to stand scarecrows in the fields to frighten away birds, but I'm not sure how effective they were.

We have tried different things, then, to control pests, and we have managed to hold some pests in check. However, some are a big problem, both in the major industrial nations and in the Third World. While locusts are a terrible problem in countries like Sudan and Ethiopia, rats are still a problem in most large cities in the world. We might control pests to a certain extent, but we shall never get rid of them.

(292 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

It seems ages since we went on holiday together, so I thought I would write and ask how you are.

I am keeping well and working hard at college. I came back from our holiday really refreshed and ready for this term. And we really had a good time, didn't we? I particularly remember the day you brought your camera and took lots of amusing photos. Have you had them developed yet? If so, I'd

love to see them.

Write and let me know what you are doing now. Did you start that new job?

I look forward to seeing the photos.

All best wishes,

(105 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

contaminate (1.3):	make ... impure or dirty
devour (1.4):	eat, consume (completely)
provocation (1.4):	being made angry or bad tempered
dispelling (1.8):	getting rid of
industrious (1.8):	hard working
revulsion (1.9):	disgust
pouncing (1.15):	jumping

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

## 3 多项选择练习

### Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第 7~8 行“Reading about them increases our understanding without dispelling our fears (阅读有关昆虫的书能增加我们对它们的了解,却不能消除我们的恐惧心理)”,得知 (b) but we are no less likely to lose our

- irrational fear of them (但是我们却毫无可能放弃对它们毫无道理的恐惧) 为正确选项; 课文中表达的是“我们”对昆虫的恐惧, 而不是被吓得动弹不得, 因此 (a) and become so fascinated by them that we are no longer moved by them (并且受到它们的震慑而再也动弹不得) 为错误选项; 作者喜欢看昆虫做事, 他希望昆虫不知道他就在它们身边, 但他并不知道昆虫是否知道他的存在, 因此 (c) provided they remain unaware of our presence while we observe them (只要我们观察它们的时候它们并不知道我们的存在) 为错误选项; 而 (d) as long as they only harm each other and not us (只要它们仅仅互相伤害而不伤害我们) 与原题形成不了直接的因果关系, 更多地了解昆虫并不在于昆虫是否伤害人类, 因此为错误选项。

2. (d)

根据课文第 28 ~ 30 行 “Instead, I saw that they had discovered a new route. They were climbing up the wall of the house and then on to the leaves of the tree. I realized sadly that I had been completely defeated by their ingenuity (结果却发现它们又找到一条新的路径。它们正在顺着房子的外墙往上爬, 然后爬上树叶。我懊丧地感到败在了足智多谋的蚂蚁手下)”, 得知 (d) shows great ingenuity at finding its way round any obstacle in its path (在行进途中能找到越过任何障碍的途径表现出它们的足智多谋) 为正确选项; 蚂蚁是在发现猎物后会想尽办法得到它, 而不是一路走一路吃, 因此 (a) will eat its way through anything from picnic lunches to aphids (会一路走一路吃, 从田间野餐到蚜虫) 为错误选项; 作者对蚂蚁的勤奋和组织性持赞赏态度, 可是看到它们在田间野餐上爬来爬去感到反感, 因此 (b) lives in a highly organized

society which we find disgusting (〈它们〉居住在令我们反感的具有高度组织性的社会里) 为错误选项; 蚂蚁在捕捉到巨大的猎物时才成群结队地将猎物抬回家, 所以 (c) once it has killed its prey, will bear it home in a triumphal column (一旦它捕杀了猎物后就会结队抬着它凯旋而归) 为错误选项。

3. (a)

根据课文第 18~19 行 “The tree has grown against a warm wall on a sheltered side of the house. I am especially proud of it, not only because it has survived several severe winters... (那棵树是靠着房子有遮挡的一面暖墙生长的。我为这棵树感到特别自豪, 不仅因为它度过了几个寒冬终于活了下来……)”, 得知 (a) it might not have survived the severe winters (它可能不会度过那几个寒冬) 为正确选项; 作者在观察那些蚂蚁的行动, 而不是在观察树, 因此 (b) the writer would not have spent days looking at it (作者不会花几天的时间观察它) 为错误选项; 那些蚂蚁从何处爬来作者并不知晓, 因此树种在何处离蚂蚁更近也就难确定了, 故 (c) the ants would have had further to go before reaching it (蚂蚁要抵达那棵树就需要爬得更远) 为错误选项; 树种在房子的另一侧, 蚂蚁照样可以沿着墙爬到树叶上, 因此 (d) the ants would not have found another route of access to the leaves (蚂蚁就不可能找到通往树叶的另外一条路了) 为错误选项。

4. (c)

根据课文第 21~22 行 “They were visited by a large colony of ants which obtained a sort of honey from them (蚜虫遭到一窝蚂蚁的攻击, 蚂蚁从他们身上可以获得一种蜜)”, 得知 (c) they were milking a kind of honey from the

aphids on the leaves (它们正在从树叶上的蚜虫身上吸取一种蜜) 为正确选项; 蚂蚁是从那些蚜虫身上而不是从树叶上吸取蜜, 因此 (a) they collected a kind of honey from the leaves (它们从树叶中收集一种蜜) 为错误选项; 树液中并不包含蜜, 因此 (b) they fed on a kind of honey contained in the sap of the tree (它们以树液中包含的一种蜜为食物) 为错误选项; 蚂蚁的窝并不在树上, 因此 (d) they needed to go back to their nest in the branches of the tree (它们需要回到树枝上的窝里去) 为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 5. (c)

本题有关情态助动词的用法。本题是并列句结构, 第一个句子的时态是现在时, 使用的是 may, 表示“可能”, 那么连词 but 所连接的句子应该用表示“能够”的情态助动词 will 与否定词 not 连用, 表示那样做并不能消除我们的恐惧心理。因此 (c) this will not 为正确选项。其中的代词 this 指代“by reading about them”这一行为方式; 而在 (a) we will not 中, 主语用错, 句子表达的不是我们消除恐惧, 而是通过阅读有关昆虫的书来消除恐惧, 故为错误选项; 在 (b) it does not 中不应用助动词“does”, 助动词“does not”表示“不消除我们的恐惧”, 而这里要表达的是“读书并不能消除我们的恐惧”, 因此为错误选项; 行为动词作谓语的句子必须由“助动词 + not”构成否定形式, 没有助动词而单靠否定词 not 无法构成其否定句, 因此 (d) not 为错误选项。

#### 6. (a)

本题有关先行宾语 it 的用法。(a) it impossible to erase them 为正确选项。it 为先行宾语, 动词不定式“to erase

them”为宾语，“impossible”为宾语补语；而在（b）that they cannot erase 中，代词 they 代替的是 our fears，这里应该用被动语态，表示“我们的恐惧能够被消除”，而不能用主动语态，因此为错误选项；文中原句是“... but they are impossible to erase”，句子中使用的是动词不定式。在某些情况下，主动形式的动词不定式和被动形式的动词不定式都可表达被动的概念。上面的那个句子可以写成“... but they are impossible to be erased”，在（c）them to erase impossible 中没有先行宾语 it，代词 them 和形容词 impossible 的位置不对，故为错误选项；（d）erasing them impossible 的结构不正确，因此也为错误选项。

7. (c)

本题有关物主代词 its 的用法。（c）despite its 为正确选项。“despite”与“in spite of”所表达的意思相同，意即“尽管”，但是 despite 后而不跟介词 of。该处应该用物主代词 its，因为这里需特指“试验的失败”，这里的“its failure”指“the failure of the experiment”。在这个句子中，关系代词 which 后面跟随的是作让步状语的插入部分，而不是完整的句子，因此（a）even though it was 为错误选项；（b）in spite of the 中使用了定冠词 the，而不是语义明确的 its，使得“the failure”的语义不明确，不知它是指“试验的失败”，因此为错误选项；本句中定语从句的谓语部分是“kept me fascinated”，which 后面的部分是作让步状语的插入成分，因此（d）was a 为错误选项。

8. (d)

本题有关“it takes somebody sometime to do something”的使用方法。该结构表达“某人花费多少时间做某事”概念，因此（d）It had not taken the ants 为正确选项；而（a）The ants have not been 和（b）The ants had not been

的句子结构不对,故为错误选项;如果表达“某人花费多少时间做某事”概念,可以说“someone spends some time doing something”,而不能说“someone spends long to do something”,因此(c) The ants had not spent 为错误选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

#### 9. (b)

本句表达的意思是“我们禁不住充满了……”。动词“help + 动词的-ing 形式”表示“禁不住……”,故(b) help 为正确选项;而(a) refuse (拒绝)、(c) prevent (阻止)和(d) lose (丢失)都不能表达“禁不住”的意思,故均为错误选项。

#### 10. (b)

课文中使用的是形容词“uncanny (神秘的,不可思议的)”,而(b) mysterious (神秘的)与其同义,故为正确选项;而(a) unknown (未知的)、(c) infinite (无限的)和(d) disabled (残疾的)都与“uncanny”所表达的意思不符,故均为错误选项。

#### 11. (b)

课文中使用的是形容词“luscious (甘美的)”,而(b) sweet and juicy (香甜多汁的)所表达的意思与luscious相符,故为正确选项;而(a) deliciously fresh (鲜美的)、(c) tender (柔软的)和(d) exotic (珍奇的)所表达的意思都与luscious不符,故均为错误选项。

#### 12. (c)

课文中作者说他完全被那些蚂蚁的“足智多谋(ingenuity)”所击败,也就是说被那些善于发明创造的蚂蚁所击败,(c) inventive creatures (富有创造性的生物)与其同义,故为正确选项;而(a) speedy swarms (行动神

速的蚂蚁群)、(b) hungry hordes (饥饿的蚁群) 和 (d) ingenuous insects (足智多谋的昆虫) 都与文中所表达的意思不符, 故均为错误选项。

## Lesson 55

### From the earth: Greetings

#### 来自地球的问候

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Impossible—find life on other planets—earth-based telescopes
2. Heat of own planet—dust particles in solar system
3. Need to be as far away as Jupiter
4. Even then—how to blot out light of planet's star / sun
5. Most likely life forms—plants and bacteria—not little green men
6. Even discovery of lowly life forms—change of view of ourselves

#### 摘要写作参考答案

Finding life on other planets with earth-based telescopes is impossible because of the heat of our planet and the dust particles throughout the solar system. A telescope would need to be as far away as Jupiter. Even then, the problem will be how to blot out the light from a planet's sun to study it. The most likely forms of life will be plants and bacteria. Even the discovery of lowly life forms would change our view of ourselves.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### *Plan and ideas for composition (a)*

Title: Extraterrestrials

Introduction: Remember 'ET'? Ideas about extraterrestrials

Development: But creatures with incredible intelligence and no form? How deal with them? Not benevolent?

Stories of extraterrestrials/aliens landing—have scientists studied them? Extraterrestrials helping scientists? Stories just rumours?

Conclusion: Extraterrestrials out there in space? Perhaps one day we'll know; change our view of everything

### *Composition*

Do you remember ET in the film *ET, the Extraterrestrial*? If you do, you will know that the common picture of extraterrestrials is that they will look rather strange—for instance, they might have big eyes and funny feet and be a strange colour—but they will still somehow look like living creatures from earth. At the same time, of course, we believe that they will probably have incredible powers—like ET's power to heal injuries and to come alive again. Many science-fiction stories and films have shown aliens or extraterrestrials like this. They may somehow look like strange earth creatures, therefore, but they are benevolent.

But what if extraterrestrials—beings from other planets—are creatures with incredible intelligence and with no form, that is, with no body form like earthly creatures? They might be almost 'living thoughts'. How would we greet them? How would we deal with them? And what if they are not

benevolent? In other words, what if they really want to take over the earth?

There are stories that extraterrestrials or aliens have already crashed on earth in spacecraft (flying saucers) and that scientists have studied them. There are even more fantastic stories that scientists are already learning from extraterrestrials new knowledge which will help us build incredible spacecraft to fly to other planets and beyond. Stories like that must surely be just rumours.

Perhaps one day we will know if there really are extraterrestrials out there in space, and if there are, we will know what they look like and what they think of us. Will they really be little green men? Or will they be giants? Or perhaps they will be so small that we can hardly see them? Will they be friendly? Or will they want to take over the earth? Who knows? One thing is certain. If we were ever to discover that there are extraterrestrials out there, the discovery would completely change our view of the universe and ourselves.

(329 words)

### 书信写作参考答案

Many thanks for the enclosed travel guide which you lent me a month ago and which I am returning as promised.

As we are thinking of going to Greece for a holiday, the book was extremely useful. We were able to read about mainland Greece as well as all the different islands, and we think that we know where we would like to go. We will probably fly to Athens for two or three days and then go to Cephalonia, one of the islands off the west coast.

When we have made all the arrangements, we might like to borrow the book again.

Write soon.

(105 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

detect (1.1):	discover, find
in relative terms (1.3):	relatively (speaking), in relation to other things
emit (1.4):	send out
ideal conditions (1.8):	an environment which is perfect (for the development of life)
capable of (1.12):	able to
alternatively (1.12):	on the other hand
presence (1.15):	existence

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

## 3 多项选择练习

### Comprehension 理解

#### 1. (b)

根据课文第17~18行“*Our own warm atmosphere and the heat generated by the telescope would make it impossible to detect objects as small as planets* (地球周围温暖的大气层和望远镜散出的热量使得我们根本不可能找到像行星这

么小的物体)”，得知 (b) Because of the limitations of earth-based telescopes (因为放置在地球上的望远镜的局限性) 为正确选项；文中谈到“即使是一台放置在围绕地球的轨道上的望远镜——如非常成功的哈勃望远镜——也因为太阳系中的尘埃微粒无法胜任”。此处哈勃望远镜无法胜任的是观察其他行星上的生命，而不是行星本身，故 (a) Because of the dust particles in our own solar system (因为我们自己太阳系中的尘埃微粒) 为错误选项；文中并不是说哈勃望远镜看不到银河系以外的物体，而是观察不到其他行星上的生命，因此 (c) Because even the Hubble is not powerful enough to see beyond the Milky Way (因为即使哈勃望远镜也不足以看到银河系以外的物体) 为错误选项；并不是因为恒星比行星又大又亮，行星才更不易看到，而是因为放置在地球上的望远镜不具备看到其他行星的条件，因此 (d) Because planets are small and dark, and stars are large and radiant (因为行星又小又暗，而恒星却又大又发光) 为错误选项。

## 2. (c)

根据课文第 6 ~ 8 行 “In our own solar system, for example, Venus is far too hot and Mars is far too cold to support life (对于生命来说，金星的温度太高，而火星的温度则太低)”，得知生命存在的基本前提是温度要适中，因此 (c) Its distance from its star will be such that it has a moderate temperature (它距恒星的距离应该保证温度适中) 为正确选项；距离恒星太近会使其温度过高，温度过高就不可能有生命存在，因此 (a) It will orbit closely round its star (它将紧紧地围绕它的恒星转) 为错误选项；文中说生命的进化需要 4 亿年，而不是行星生成的年代，因此 (b) It will be at least four billion years old (它应

至少生成了 4 亿年) 为错误选项; 而 (d) It will have an atmosphere capable of supporting bacteria (它要拥有使细菌生存的大气层) 并不是生命存在的最根本的条件, 因此也为错误选项。

3. (a)

根据课文第 20~22 行“A telescope would have to be as far away as the planet Jupiter to look for life in outer space, because the dust becomes thinner the further we travel towards the outer edges of our own solar system (望远镜要放置在木星那样遥远的行星上才有可能在外层空间搜寻生命, 因为我们越是接近太阳系的边缘, 尘埃就越稀薄)”, 得知 (a) far enough from the centre of our solar system not to be affected by dust (远离我们的太阳系的中心从而不受尘埃的影响) 为正确选项; 妨碍人们观察其他行星上的生命的主要因素不是望远镜的功能, 而是望远镜所在的位置, 因为距离太阳系中心越近, 尘埃越厚, 越无法观察其他行星上的生命, 因此 (b) infinitely more powerful than even the very successful Hubble (比非常成功的哈勃望远镜功能还要强得多) 为错误选项; 文中说将望远镜放置在木星上就有可能观察其他行星上的生命, 而不是放置在另外一个太阳系中去, 因此 (c) orbiting in a different solar system a long way away from our own (围绕一个远离我们自己的太阳系的另一个太阳系旋转) 为错误选项; 木星并不是处在太阳系的边缘, 只是接近太阳系的边缘, 故 (d) on the planet Jupiter, on the edge of our solar system (放置在我们的太阳系边缘的木星上) 为错误选项。

## Structure 结构

### 4. (b)

本题有关介词的用法。(b) through 为正确选项。介词“through”表示“通过”；(a) caused by 为过去分词结构可以作定语,表示“由……导致的”,多用于表示导致不好的结果,因此为错误选项;而(c) as regards(关于,至于)在语义上不通,因此为错误选项;(d) for 不能用于此处,因为它所表达的不是“通过”的意思,故也为错误选项。

### 5. (c)

本题是有关“for there to be”的用法。“there + to be”常用于 for 之后,如:It's important for there to be a fire escape at the back of the building.(这座建筑物的后面设置一个防火安全通道非常重要。)因此(c) for 为正确选项;而(a) than、(b) whether 以及(d) nor 都不能用于 there to be 之前,故均为错误选项。

### 6. (a)

本题有关 so 和 such 的用法。用 so 或 such 修饰一个单数名词时,它们的词序不同。用 so 时的结构是“so + 形容词 + a/an + 单数名词”,如 so gentle a person, 而用 such 时的结构是“such + a/an + 形容词 + 单数名词”,如 such a gentle person。综上所述,(a) so big a star 为正确选项;在(b) such big star 中缺少冠词 a, 故为错误选项;在(c) a like star 中,like 为介词,表示“像”,不能作定语放在名词前修饰该名词,如果为“a star like this”结构就正确了,故为错误选项;在(d) a star as this 中,as 为连词,表示“像”。当 as 作连词表示“像”时,其后应该跟从句或介词短语。“as”也可以作介词,但是所表示的意思是“作为”。试比较:As your brother, I must warn you to be careful.(作为你的哥哥,我必须提醒你要小心谨慎。)

Like your brother, I must warn you to be careful. (我就像你的哥哥,我必须提醒你要小心谨慎。)因此 (d) 为错误选项。

7. (a)

本题有关动词的否定形式用法。(a) does not exist 为正确选项,表示现在并不存在能够探测生命的望远镜;而 (b) no exist 不是正确的动词否定形式。构成行为动词的否定形式必须借助于助动词或情态助动词,故此为错误选项;虽然 (c) cannot exist 的否定结构是正确的,但是它所表达的意思并不是“不存在”,而是“不能存在”,与文中语义不符,因此为错误选项;(d) won't exist 的否定结构也是正确的,但是时态不正确,它所表达的是“将不会存在”,因此也为错误选项。

8. (c)

本题有关句子的双重否定以及如何使用恰当的否定词。(c) Nothing 为正确选项,表示“人类的努力和想法都会发生变化”;如果将 (a) All things 或 (b) Everything 用于句子中,所表达的意思与文中所述意义恰好相反;(d) None 通常不单独使用,常与“of + 代词或名词”等结构形式连用;只有当前面已经提到,且所指十分明确时,方可单独使用,因此 (d) 为错误选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (a)

英语中表示“同……一样多/大”时,使用“as much/many as”,本句中比较的是体积的大小,故应该用“as much as”,因此 (a) as much as 为正确选项;而 (b) as well as 所表达的意思是“不仅……而且……”,故为错误选项;(c) such as 所表达的是“诸如”的意思,用来举例说明,因此为错误选项;(d) as if 所表达的意思是“好像,就像”,也为错误

选项。

10. (c)

课文中使用的是动词“generated (生产)”，而 (c) produced (生产) 与其同义，故为正确选项；而 (a) manufactured (制造) 常用来表示“用机械设备或其他工艺流程制造”，与 generated 所表达的意思不符，因此为错误选项；(b) fabricated (捏造, 组装) 的语义与其不符，因此为错误选项；而 (d) given being 的词义与结构均不正确，故也为错误选项。

11. (b)

课文中使用的是“cherish the hope (总存有这样的希望)”，而 (b) fondly dream (执着地梦想)，与“cherish the hope”所表达的意思相符，故为正确选项；而 (a) like to know (想知道)、(c) love to expect (喜欢考虑) 和 (d) profoundly believe (坚信) 都与“cherish the hope”所表达的意思不符，故均为错误选项。

12. (a)

课文中使用的是动词“unchanged”，而 (a) unaltered 意即“未受到改变的”，与其同义，故为正确选项；而 (b) ineffective (无效的)、(c) unchallenged (未经受挑战的) 和 (d) unchecked (未受到核查的) 都与“unchanged”所表达的意思不符，故均为错误选项。

## Lesson 56

### Our neighbour, the river

#### 河流, 我们的邻居

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. One bad winter—river rose—our cattle OK—worried about new neighbours
2. Floods put telephone out—couldn't contact them
3. Watched their land from attic window—first sign—dead sheep—then swimming horse
4. Raft (like Noah's ark)—family, hens, dog, cat, bird
5. Obviously unduly frightened by rising flood
6. Men waded out—pulled raft and contents to bank

#### 摘要写作参考答案

One winter, the river rose alarmingly, and we were worried about our new neighbours. The floods had put the telephone out of order, so we couldn't contact them. We were watching their land when we saw the first sign of trouble, a dead sheep, and then a swimming horse. Then a raft came down, complete with the family and animals. They had clearly been frightened by the rising flood. Our men waded out and pulled the raft to the bank.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### *Plan and ideas for composition (b)*

Title: A dark and gloomy street

Introduction: Dark and gloomy street—on way home from party—short cut

Development: Someone standing at far end, under lamplight—wasn't frightened—felt person did not mean to harm me—not sure what to do—decided to walk on towards the light

The 'guide' started walking ahead of me—dressed in long gown—dim glow—felt safe and followed—part of town, I realized, that I had been warned about—but nothing happened to me—and near bright lights—'guide' just disappeared

Conclusion: A young person killed that night—was the guide my guardian angel?

### *Composition*

It was a dark and gloomy street. I was on my way home from a friend's party and had decided to take a short cut. I had just turned the corner from the main street and had started walking towards the light at the end of the short street.

Suddenly, almost by magic, I thought, there was someone standing at the far end, under the lamplight. Most people would have been frightened, perhaps terrified. I wasn't at all frightened. Perhaps I should have been. There was someone there. I felt somehow that the person—and I couldn't see whether it was a man or a woman—did not mean to harm me. Although I wasn't frightened, I still wasn't sure what to

do. Should I walk on towards the end of the street and towards the light and towards the person? Or should I go back the way I had come? I decided to walk on towards the light.

The 'guide', as I called the person later, stood and seemed to wait until I was halfway down the street, and then started walking ahead of me. Even now I couldn't describe him or her: he or she seemed to be dressed in a long gown, but there was a dim glow all around him/ her. Certainly I felt safe and followed the person down several streets that I did not know. It was a part of town, I realized, that I had been warned about—but nothing happened to me—and as soon as we were near the bright lights of the main road, my 'guide' just disappeared.

The following day I heard that a young person had been killed walking home alone not very far from where I was that night. I don't care what other people think. I am sure that the 'guide' was my guardian angel and that he or she looked after me.

(317 words)

### 书信写作参考答案(b)

Some time ago you told me that you enjoyed going to the theatre. I have just been given two free tickets for a performance of Shakespeare's *Hamlet* and wonder if you would like to go with me.

The performance is on Saturday, 15th July at the 'New World Theatre' and starts at 7.30. We could go from my flat or meet at the theatre.

Please let me know as soon as you can if you would like to

come. If you can't, then I know one or two other people who would like the ticket.

(96 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

instinctively (1.5):	without having to be told
overtake (1.6):	happen (to us) suddenly
predecessor(1.9):	previous owner
hard by (1.10):	close to, very near to
in a heat wave (1.10):	in a period of unusually hot weather
a rare occurrence (1.14):	a very unusual event
goes to extremes (1.15):	gets extremely hot or extremely cold
favourably (1.16):	pleasantly, well

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

## 3 多项选择练习

### Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第 15 ~ 17 行 "We are lucky in that only the lower fields, which make up a very small proportion of our farm, are affected by flooding, but other farms are less favourably sited, and flooding can sometimes spell disaster

for their owners (值得庆幸的是, 只有低洼地受到洪水影响, 而低洼地在我们农场比例很小, 其他农场地势欠佳, 洪水有时会给农场主带来灾难)”, 得知当地只有作者家的农田大部分不在低洼地, 而其他人则没有他们幸运, 大部分农田地势较低, 易受洪水的侵扰。因此 (b) farmed land which for the most part lay on a level with the river banks (在大部分都处在与河堤同一个平面的土地上耕种) 为正确选项; 文中并没有提到其他人没有从河里提升水的手段, 所以 (a) had no means of pumping water away from the river (没有从河里提升水的手段) 为错误选项; 他们同住在一个地区, 气候不可能有很大的不同, 故 (c) lived where the climate was more variable and the rainfall heavier (住在气候变化更多、雨量更大的地方) 为错误选项; 土地不会因处在河流湍急的上游而受洪水的侵扰, 而是因为土地所处的位置低, 因此 (d) had land which lay upstream where the river current was stronger (拥有一些处在河上游的土地, 那儿河水更湍急) 为错误选项。

2. (a)

根据课文第 19~20 行 “We were, however, worried about our nearest neighbours, whose farm was low lying and who were newcomers to the district (不过我们很为我们的近邻担心, 他们的农场地势低洼, 而且他们又是初来乍到)”, 得知 (a) as their farm was liable to flooding and they had not lived there long (因为他们的农场易受患于洪水, 而且他们在那儿居住的时间不长) 为正确选项; 作者一家人之所以为他们的邻居担心, 并不是因为电话联系中断, 而是因为他们邻居地处低洼地, 所以 (b) because the floods had put the telephone out of order (因为洪水已经破坏了

电话线)为错误选项;(c) when they saw the river sweep over the boundary between the two farms (当他们看到河水漫过两个农场的交界处时)也为错误选项;而(d) as soon as they saw a dead sheep floating down the river (当他们一看到一只死羊顺流而下时)并不是他们为邻人担心的原因,所以为错误选项。

3. (c)

根据课文第 27~29 “The men of our family waded down through our flooded meadows with boathooks, in the hope of being able to grapple a corner of the raft and pull it out of the current towards our bank (我家的男人们手拿船篙, 蹚过被水淹没的草场, 希望能够钩住筏子一角, 将它拽出激流, 拖回岸边)”, 得知 (c) managed to get down to the river in time to save their neighbours (得以及时地赶到河边将邻人救起) 为正确选项; 作者家人认为他们的邻居一定是让洪水吓坏了, 因为他们的房子即使让洪水淹没了也不会倒塌, 并不认为他们的房子已经被洪水淹没, 因此 (a) thought their neighbour's house must have been submerged (认为他们邻居的房子肯定被浸没了) 为错误选项; 作者家人没有划船去救邻人, 而是蹚水过去, 用船篙将船钩住, 因此 (b) rowed their boats down to the bank and pulled the raft in with the oars (划着船只来到河边用桨将筏子拉过来) 为错误选项。

**Structure 结构**

4. (c)

本题有关介词的用法。表示从某个泉眼流出的水时, 其前需用冠词 the, 以表示特指某个泉眼的水。用介词 from 表示“来自何处的”, 因此 (c) The water from the spring 为正确选项; 而在 (a) Water of the spring 中缺少冠词

the, 而且介词应该用 from, 故为错误选项; (b) The water in spring 中的介词用错, 因此为错误选项; (d) Spring water 泛指泉水, 该句中则特指供应他们家用的那个泉水, 因此为错误选项。

5. (d)

本题有关词序以及对“a predecessor of ours”的理解问题。(d) by one of our predecessors at the farm 为正确选项, 其中“one of our predecessors”所表达的意思与“a predecessor of ours”相同, 此外词序也正确, “at the farm”为介词短语作定语修饰“predecessors”; 而在 (a) at the farm by a predecessor of ours 中, 介词短语“at the farm”所放的位置不正确, 该介词短语为定语, 修饰“a predecessor of ours”, 应该置于其修饰词的后面, 故为错误选项; 在“a predecessor of ours”中, “ours”为名词性物主代词, 表示“我们前辈们中的”, 而不是表示“为我们(建造的)”, 因此 (b) for us at the farm by a predecessor 为错误选项; 而 (c) by our predecessor at the farm (由我们农场的前辈) 与“by a predecessor of ours at the farm (由我们农场前辈中的一个)”所表达的意思不同, 故为错误选项。

6. (c)

本题有关动词的时态用法。本句话所表达的是一种现象, 所使用的是现在时态, 因此 (c) has rained 为正确选项。现在完成时态表示下雨太久会对河流产生的什么影响, (a) is raining 现在进行时态, 与表示持续时间概念的时间状语 for a long time 连用不妥, 故为错误选项; 而 (b) rained 为过去时态, 与主句的时态不一致, 故为错误选项; (d) had rained 为过去完成时, 也与主句的时态不一致, 因此为错误选项。

7. (b)

本题有关动词“prevent”的用法。动词“prevent”可以表示“防止/阻止某事发生”之意,其结构为“to prevent + 宾语 + from + 动词的-ing形式”,因此(b) it from landing 为正确选项;而(a) that it landed、(c) it to land 和 (d) the landing of it 的结构都不正确,故均为错误选项。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8. (c)

课文中使用的是动词“welcome”,通常 welcome 表示“欢迎,迎接”的意思,但是在课文中,它表示的是“庆祝……到来”,而(c) celebrate the arrival of 所表达的意思即“庆祝……的到来”之意,因此为正确选项;而(a) greet 只是表达“迎接”的意思,本身没有“庆祝”的意思,因此为错误选项;(b) go out to greet (出去迎接)和(d) invoke the start of (祈求……的开始)均与“welcome”所表达的意思不符,故也为错误选项。

9. (a)

课文中使用的是“to be worried about (为……担心)”,而(a) concerned for (为……担心)与其同义,因此为正确选项;而(b) occupied with (忙于某事)、(c) agitated by (为……所困扰)和(d) distressed about (为……而痛苦)都与“to be worried about”所表达的意思不符,故均为错误选项。

10. (d)

课文中使用的是“at the most critical juncture (在最紧急的时刻)”,意即“在洪水最猛烈的时候”,因此(d) when the flood was at its height (当洪水达到最高峰的时候)为正确选项;而(a) in the peak of condition (在顶峰状况时)、(b) in place of the most severe critic (替代最严厉的

批评家) 以及 (c) at the most dangerous boundary (在最危险的交界处) 都与“at the most critical juncture”所表达的意思不符, 因此均为错误选项。

11. (c)

课文中所表达的意思是“将筏子从激流中拖出来, 以免被激流冲走”。本题句子所表达的意思是“在激流将筏子冲走之前, 将筏子拉到岸上来”, 因而短语动词“to carry . . . off . . .”意即“将……拖出……”, 故 (c) off 为正确选项; 而 (a) out、(b) in 以及 (d) under 与 carry 构成的短语动词所表达的意思均与文中所述意义不符, 因此均为错误选项。

12. (a)

课文中使用的是副词“still”和现在时态, 表示“时至今日 (仍认为那是个奇迹)”之意, 这样 (a) To this day (直到现在) 与其同义, 故为正确选项; (b) Up till now 表示“强调直到现在之前某事未停止, 但是现在刚刚停止”之意, 因此为错误选项; 而在 (c) As yet 中, “yet”不能表示“某事继续发生”之意, 故为错误选项; 而 (d) Even so (即便如此) 与文中所表达的意思不符, 因此也为错误选项。

# Lesson 57

## Back in the old country

### 重返故里

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Should be looking at village—only lake
2. Wrong turning?—back to town—retraced route—finished up same spot
3. Lake not marked
4. Man on horseback appeared—asked way to old village
5. No village—pointed to lake—submerged with whole valley—man-made reservoir

#### 摘要写作参考答案

In the place of the village there was only a lake. Had he taken the wrong turning? He went back to town and retraced his route, only to finish up at the same spot. The lake was not marked. When a man on horseback appeared, the author asked the way to the old village. The horseman told him there was no village and pointed to the lake; it had been submerged with the whole valley under a man-made reservoir.

(80 words)

#### 作文参考答案

*Plan and ideas for composition (a)*

Title: My ideal house

Introduction: The house I would like to own—home town—magnificent mansion

Development: Once visited it—owner held exhibition of sculptures and paintings in house—visitors had chance to see house

Large heavy green front door—large entrance hall—marble floor—large open staircase to first floor—large dining room and large sitting room—both look out onto front lawn—peacocks—oak trees

Back of house—kitchen, a laundry room, games room—upstairs 6 bedrooms, 4 bathrooms  
House—full of antique furniture—rooms decorated classical style

Conclusion: May sound like a dream—will be reality

### *Composition*

There is a house in another part of my home town that I would love to own. It is called the 'White House', like the President's house in Washington! I think you could easily describe it as a 'mansion' and it is magnificent. I have no idea how much it is worth, but that doesn't worry me. I admire the house and have always admired it.

I do not have to imagine what the house is like inside because I have, strange as it may seem, actually been inside. About three years ago the owner held an exhibition of sculptures and paintings in the house. The exhibits were distributed throughout the house so that all the visitors had a chance to see the house.

When you go in through the large heavy green front door, you find yourself in a large entrance hall with a shining black and white marble floor, rooms leading off from it in all directions, and a large open staircase leading up to the first floor. There is a large dining room on the right and a large sitting room on the left. Both rooms have big windows that look out onto the front lawn. There are always peacocks on the front lawn, and there are two large oak trees where you can sit in the shade on hot summer days.

At the back of the house is a large kitchen, a laundry and work room and a games room. Upstairs there are six bedrooms and four bathrooms. I *think* there are four bathrooms, but I can't quite remember.

The house is full of beautiful antique furniture and all the rooms are decorated in a classical style—lots of light blue and light green paint with white doors, and quite a lot of gold decoration.

The whole thing may sound like a dream, but one day it will be real. One day I will own my ideal house.

(322 words)

### 书信写作参考答案(b)

Flat 605 6/F,  
35 Dadong Street,  
Guangzhou, Guangdong 510065  
P.R.C.  
10th September, 2000

Dear Charlie,

Thank you very much for your present which arrived just

before my birthday. It was very kind of you. Now that I have my own copy of the *Thesaurus*, I will naturally be able to make a lot of use of it. And I think that some of my friends will want to use it too!

My family and I are well and looking forward to a short holiday next month. It will be the first holiday that we have had for two years.

Please remember me to your parents and sisters.

All best wishes.

Write soon.

(99 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

objective (1.2);

seemed alien (1.2);

lacked for nothing (1.9);

embedded (1.11);

mortally (1.12);

comprehensive (1.14);

positive (1.17);

familiar territory (11.17-18);

destination

looked strange

had everything I needed

fixed firmly and deeply

fatally, leading to death

complete, including a lot of

different ones

absolutely sure

well-known land

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

**Comprehension 理解**

## 1. (d)

根据课文第 1~3 行“I had expected to be near my objective by now, but everything still seemed alien to me (我本想离目的地已经不远,但周围一切对我仍很陌生)”,得知 (d) he did not recognize any familiar landmarks (他找不到任何熟悉的地标)所表达的意思即周围的一切对他都很陌生,因此为正确选项;作者停下来主要是想辨明一下自己所处的地理位置,同时让发动机降降温,而不是因为天气太热,因此 (a) it was too hot for him to concentrate on where he was going (天气太热了,使得他无法集中精力于朝哪儿行驶)为错误选项;而 (b) he wanted to find his way back to the nearest town (他想寻找一条返回最近的一个城镇的路线)和 (c) he realized that he must have taken a wrong turning (他意识到他肯定是拐错了弯儿)也都不是作者停下来的原因,故均为错误选项。

## 2. (d)

作者的父亲想让作者重回故里,为的是让儿子看看他们出生的地方,并不是想回去居住,因此 (d) He had always intended that his son should see the land of their birth (他一直打算他的儿子应该看一看他们出生的地方)为正确选项;作者的父亲原本只是想回去看看,而且早已有了新的生活,回去就不会伤感了,所以 (a) He feared that his wound would reopen if he were to return himself (他担心一旦他自己回去的话,会勾起他的伤感)为错误选项;作者的父亲本想亲眼去看一看,只是不久将辞于人世,所以想让儿子去看一看他们的出生地,因此 (b) He wanted to

hear what had happened to his village before dying (他想在去世之前听到有关家乡的变化) 为错误选项; 作者的父亲知道自己不久将辞于人世, 才不得不让儿子单独回去, 而并不是病重得无法忍受行车的艰辛, 因此 (c) He was too ill to accompany his son on the cross-country journey (他病重得无法陪伴儿子跨国旅行), 为错误选项。

3. (b)

根据课文第 21~22 行 “I could see no valley, no farms, no cottages and no church spire—only a lake (可现在我却看不到山谷, 看不见农舍, 也看不见教堂尖顶, 看见的只是一片湖泊)”, 得知作者所期待看到的那些景物都看不到了, 因此他觉得他闯进了噩梦境地, 故 (b) Nothing he saw corresponded to what he had expected to see (他看到的一切都与他所期待看到的不一样) 为正确选项; 根据作者父亲的讲述, 他离开镇子走出 10 英里时应该能看到坐落在远处的山谷里的农场和农舍以及村庄教堂的尖顶, 而不是到达村子, 因此 (a) According to his father, he should already have reached the village (根据他父亲的讲述, 他应该已经到了村子) 为错误选项; 而 (c) He did not know how he could get to the other side of the lake (他不知道如何抵达湖的另一边) 并不是令他如同闯进噩梦境地的原因, 因此为错误选项; 作者还是碰到一个骑马的人, 并且告诉了他有关村子的事情, 因此 (d) He was curious to know more about the lake but there was no one to ask (他急于更多地了解那个湖泊, 可是无人可问) 为错误选项。

**Structure 结构**

4. (a)

本题有关动词的语态以及词序的用法。该处是对过去发

生事情的叙述,用一般过去时或过去完成时都正确。由于是被父亲带到国外,所以应该用被动语态,此外副词 abroad 应该紧跟在过去分词 taken 之后,因此 (a) had been taken abroad by my father 在时态、语态和词序上都正确,因此为正确选项;而 (b) took abroad with my father 中应使用被动语态,其次应该用介词 by 表示动作是由谁做出的,而非介词 with,因此为错误选项;而 (c) had taken with my father abroad 中的错误与 (b) 类似;在 (d) was taken by my father abroad 中,副词“abroad”的位置不正确,应该紧跟 taken,因此为错误选项。

5. (c)

课文中使用的是“without a woman's care”,表示“在没有母亲的关怀下(长大)”之意。在 (c) without a woman to care for me 中,动词不定式“to care for me”作定语使用,修饰“a woman”,表达的意思与“without a woman's care”相同,故为正确选项;由于“care”为不可数名词,其前不能用不定冠词,因此 (a) without a care of women 为错误选项;而 (b) without care by a woman 和 (d) careless of a woman 的结构和用词均不正确,故均为错误选项。

6. (b)

本题有关情态助动词的用法。情态助动词 should 和 would 都可以用来表示“在某种情况下某事肯定会发生”之意。当主语为 I 或 we 时,既可以用 should 也可以用 would,但是当主语为其他代词或名词时,只能用 would。课文中使用的是 should,因此 (b) would see 为正确选项;而 (a) could see 中的情态助动词 could 所表达的是“可能性”,不能表达上述意思,故为错误选项;在 (c) would he seeing 中,“seeing”与课文中所用的“looking at”所表达的意思不同,前者表达的是“看见”,而且往往不用于进行时

态,而后者表达的是“注视,看”的意思,因此为错误选项;  
(d) *should have seen* 表示“期待某事已经发生”或“期待某事发生,但是事实上并未发生”,这与原句所表达的意思不符;原句是以间接引语的形式转述他父亲的话,他父亲告诉他说他会看到农庄和农舍,因此该项为错误选项。

7. (c)

本题有关从属连词的用法。这里有个动作顺序的问题,“向他问路”的动作发生在“等他走近”之后,因此(c) *before* 为正确选项;而(a) *until* 表示“直到……才”,这里强调的是 *until* 前面的动作,而不是 *until* 后面的动作,故为错误选项;(b) *when* 表示动作的同时发生,该句中的“等他走近”和“向他问路”这两个动作发生在一前一后,而不是同时发生,因此为错误选项;(d) *so that* 表示结果或目的,而不表示时间,因此为错误选项。

8. (d)

英语中可以用“疑问词 + 带 *to* 的动词不定式”构成表示间接征询的间接疑问句。(d) *how to get* 就是这样的形式,与“*I asked him*”一起构成表示间接征询的间接疑问句,因此为正确选项;而(a) *what way it was* 和(c) *which way to go* 在结构上都不成立,故为错误选项;虽然(b) *if he knows the way* 在结构上是正确的,但是时态不正确,因为主句为过去时态,从句不应用一般现在时态,因此也为错误选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

9. (a)

(a) *reminded him of her* 为正确选项。“*to remind somebody of something/somebody*”表示“勾起某人对某事或对某人的回忆”,与课文中“*Everything around him was full of her presence* (他身边的一切都有母亲的影子)”所

表达的意思相符。而 (b) presented her to him 表示“将她带至他的身边”；(c) recalled him to her 表示“将他召回到她的身边”；在 (d) remembered her for him 中介词 for 用错,应该用介词 to 表达“向某人问好”之意。这 3 个选项都不能用来表达文中所要表达的含义,故均为错误选项。

10. (c)

课文中使用的是“over and over again (再三地)”,而选项 (c) repeatedly (再三地,反复地) 与其同义,故为正确选项;而 (a) incessantly (不间断地)、(b) overmuch (过度地,太多地) 和 (d) extensively (大量地) 都与“over and over again”所表达的意思不符,故均为错误选项。

11. (c)

课文中使用的是动词“marked (标出)”,而 (c) shown (表示,显示) 与“marked”所表示的意思相符,故为正确选项;而 (a) signed (署名,签署)、(b) written (书写) 和 (d) spotted (认出,察觉) 都与“marked”语义不符,故均为错误选项。

12. (b)

选项 (b) a man-made 与原文中所用词汇相同,惟一不同的是将其所修饰的名词“reservoir”用不定代词“one”代替,显然此为正确选项;而 (a) an unnatural (非正常的,异常的)、(c) an unreal (不真实的) 和 (d) a manufactured (制造的) 所表达的意思都与文中意义不符,故均为错误选项。

## Lesson 58

### A spot of bother

#### 一点儿小麻烦

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Went through ransacked flat—didn't touch anything
2. Police inspector looked for fingerprints—constable checked front door locks
3. No fingerprints—inspector found bundle jewellery—not burglars' first job
4. Inspector asked old lady—check what missing—advised—not stay in flat
5. Rang daughter to ask for help

#### 摘要写作参考答案

The old lady and the porter went through the flat, careful not to touch anything. Later, a police inspector looked for fingerprints while a constable checked the front door locks. There were no fingerprints, but the inspector found a bundle of jewellery suggesting this was not the burglars' first job that day. The inspector asked the lady to check what was missing and advised her not to stay in the flat. Eventually she rang her daughter to ask for help.

(80 words)

## 作文参考答案

### *Plan and ideas for composition (b)*

Title: My first visit to the UK

Introduction: Nothing like first visit abroad—what to expect?—new language, new culture—everything new and strange

Development: 3 years ago—UK—arrival at airport—experiences

Landed at Heathrow—met by rep of A1 English Language School—taken to accommodation—small English family—at first everything strange—after 3-4 days began to enjoy stay

So many things to learn in England—example—asking way to ‘Albert Hall’ = ‘the Albert Hall’

Conclusion: Foreign travel—impossible to overestimate value—also helps understand foreign visitors to our country

### *Composition*

There is nothing like your first visit to a foreign country. Whatever you may have heard, or whatever you have read or seen, you still don't really know what to expect. You will hear and read a new language, you will be surrounded by a completely different culture, and everything will seem new and strange.

My first visit abroad was three years ago when I went to the UK. I had booked to attend a short English language course in London with a friend of mine. After a very long

flight, we landed at Heathrow Airport and were met by a representative of the A1 English Language School. She welcomed us and took us to our accommodation. We were staying with a small English family. At first everything was so strange—the food, the furniture in their home and the way they live, everything! But after three or four days we both began to enjoy our stay, and of course we made lots of friends at the school, which was only half a mile away.

There are so many things to learn when you are in England. For example, one day my friend and I were sightseeing in London and stopped to ask an Englishman the way.

‘Excuse me,’ I said. ‘Where is Albert Hall?’ I thought my English was just right.

‘Oh,’ he said, ‘you mean the Albert Hall!’

‘Yes,’ I said, ‘where is the Albert Hall?’

He then explained how to get to the Albert Hall, but I didn’t realize the word ‘the’ was so important in English!

It is impossible to overestimate what you get from foreign travel. Going to the UK made me realize how small the world is, it made me see how important travel is, and it helped me to understand what foreign visitors feel like when they visit China for the first time.

(317 words)

### 书信写作参考答案(a)

I know that we had arranged to spend a day in town next Tuesday. I thought that I had better write and tell you that I shall unfortunately not be able to see you.

The reason is that I have been ill for the past two weeks with some kind of infection. It's a little like flu, but seems to be worse.

Can I suggest instead that you come and visit me one day? Almost any day will suit me, but it might be best if you ring first.

(89 words)

### 词汇练习参考答案

reprimand (1.6):	scold
piece of negligence (1.7):	act of carelessness, not taking enough care
regular practice (1.10):	usual habit, usual routine
as clear as daylight (1.11):	obvious
prudent (1.13):	wise, sensible
her composure regained (1.15):	after she had become calm again
intruders (1.16):	burglars, people who break in
lurking (1.16):	waiting quietly, secretly and unseen

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

**Comprehension 理解**

## 1. (c)

根据课文第 3 ~ 5 行 “In the lift her thoughts were on lunch and a good rest; but when she got out at her own floor, both were forgotten in her sudden discovery that her front door was open (她乘上电梯后, 只想着午餐和好好休息一下。但她到了自己的楼层走出电梯后, 就把这两件事忘了个干净, 因为她突然发现她家的大门开着)”, 得知 (c) but the sight of the open front door put them both out of her mind (但是看到她家敞开的大门使得她将那两件事放在了脑后) 所表达的意思与文中意义相符, 因此为正确选项; 老妇人外出就是去购物, 而不是顺路买东西, 因此 (a) because she had done so much shopping on her way home (因为她已经在回家的路上买了太多的东西) 为错误选项; 老妇人是乘坐电梯而不是走楼梯到达她家所在的楼层, 因此 (b) as she climbed the steps to the floor her flat was on (当她爬上她所在楼层的楼梯时) 为错误选项; 老妇人发现大门敞开, 起初以为是帮工忘记了关门, 但是想起帮工在她购物之前就离开了, 故 (d) until she remembered she had gone shopping after the home help had left (直到她记起在干家务的帮工走后她才去购物的) 为错误选项。

## 2. (b)

根据课文第 15 ~ 16 行 “Then, her composure regained, she was ready to set off with the porter's assistance to search for any intruders who might still be lurking in her flat (此刻老妇人也镇定下来, 准备在看门人的协助下搜

寻可能仍躲藏在她房里的窃贼)”,得知 (b) they searched the rooms for any burglars who might not have escaped. (他们搜寻可能仍然躲藏在房间里的窃贼) 为正确选项; 看门人在地下室给警察打电话, 而不是在老妇人的房间, 原题中的“the scene of the crime (犯罪现场)”是在老妇人的房间, 因此 (a) he made her a cup of strong tea and then telephoned the police (他为她沏了一杯浓茶, 然后给警察打电话) 为错误选项; 他们并不知道哪些东西窃贼碰过, 所以他们尽可能不碰任何东西, 而不是仅仅不碰窃贼碰过的东西, 因此 (c) they took care not to touch anything the burglars had touched (他们小心翼翼地不去碰窃贼碰过的东西) 为错误选项; 事实是在警察到来之前他们就走进了房间, 想逮住可能仍然滞留在房间里的窃贼, 因此 (d) they waited for the police before going into every room in the flat (他们等到警察来了之后才走进每一个房间) 为错误选项。

3. (d)

根据课文第 24~26 行“... but the inspector found a dirty red bundle that contained jewellery which the old lady said was not hers. So their entry into this flat was apparently not the burglars' first job that day and they must have been disturbed (……却发现了一个装有珠宝的肮脏的红包袱。老妇人说那不是她的。很明显, 闯进这套公寓的窃贼那天并不是首次作案, 而且他们一定是受了惊吓)”, 得知 (d) They had left behind some jewellery which did not belong to the lady (他们留下一些不属于老妇人的珠宝) 为正确选项; 而 (a) They had been forced to leave the front door open (他们被迫使大门敞开着)、(b) There was no trace of their fingerprints (没有他们的任何指纹) 以及

(c) They had made no attempt to disguise the fact they had been there (他们没设法掩盖他们曾闯入这一事实)都不是使警察认为窃贼曾受到惊吓的原因,因此均为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (a)

本题有关动词“have to”的时态和用法。课文中使用的是情态助动词“must”。情态助动词 must 和 have to 都可以表示“必须”。在表示“将来必须”或“过去将来必须”时,应该用“will have to”或“would have to”,这里表示的是过去将来的概念,因此 (a) would have to 为正确选项;而 (b) had to 表示“过去必须”,因此为错误选项;“have to”不能用进行时态,故 (c) was having to 为错误选项;而 (d) has to 为现在时态,表示“现在必须”,因此也为错误选项。

#### 5. (a)

这里表达的是“老妇人外出时总是将门锁上”。该句使用否定副词“never”和表示否定意思的介词“without”,构成双重否定的形式,表达肯定的概念。(a) without shutting them 为正确选项;当“before”用于含短暂性动词的句子时不能用否定形式,只有在用持续性动词时“before”方可用于否定句中,本题中的动词“went out”为短暂性动词,故如果后面使用“before”引导的状语则不能用否定形式,因此 (b) before she shut them 为错误选项;而 (c) except to have shut them 属于结构性错误。在 (d) in case they were not shut 中,“in case”表示“一旦”的意思,这里“in case”引导的是让步状语从句,用在此句中语义不通,故为错误选项。

#### 6. (a)

该句有关副词“down”的用法。“basement”为地下室,在

楼房的下面,故应向下走,这样应该使用表示“向下”概念的副词“down”,故(a) down to the basement 为正确选项;而在(b) below to his basement 中,“below”表示“在……下面”,不表示“向下”,故此为错误选项;而(c) from his basement 如果置于 to fetch the porter from his basement 中,那么在结构上是正确的,但是由于置于“so she went”之后,故在结构上就是错误的;在(d) along to the basement 中,“along”表示“沿着长而狭窄的路或河流行进”之意,而老妇人并不是沿着平行狭窄的通道去找看门人,因此为错误选项。

7. (c)

该句所表达的是“对她来说找出几年前就该扔掉的东西要容易多了”。在该句结构中,“it”为先行主语。当 it 作先行主语时,多与形容词 difficult、easy、important 等连用,后面使用动词不定式。如果要表示“对某人来说”,常用“for somebody”形式,故(c) for her to sort 为正确选项;该句不是比较结构,而是 it 作先行主语的结构,than 引导的比较状语从句不能作这类结构句子中的真正主语,因此(a) than she sorted 为错误选项;在(b) that she sorted 中,“that”引导的名词性从句虽然可以作真正主语用于 it 作先行主语的句子中,但是该名词性从句中的动词“sorted”所表达的动作已经发生,而此处所要求表达的是将要发生的动作,而动词不定式所表达的是将要发生的概念,因此为错误选项;(d) sorting 中的动名词也可以用于 it 作先行主语的句子中作真正主语,但是它没有表达出“对她来说”这个概念,因此也为错误选项。

8. (a)

该句有关 which 引导的非限定性定语从句的用法。(a) which proved 为正确选项。关系代词“which”代替

“locks had not been forced”这一事实；而 (b) by this proving 在结构上讲不通，介词短语“by this”不能作“proving”的逻辑主语，故为错误选项；(c) so that he proved 所表达的是“因此他证明了”，而事实上不是“他证明了”，而是“门不是被撬开的这一事实证明了”，故为错误选项；在 (d) in that it proved 中，“in that”表示“原因，理由”，引导原因状语从句，只能放在主句之后说明原因，而此句所要表达的是“因为门不是被撬开的，所以证明了……”，故此为错误选项。

### Vocabulary 词汇

#### 9. (b)

课文中使用的是名词“magpie (喜欢收藏各种物品的人)”。“magpie”是一种喜欢收藏各种闪光物品的喜鹊，后引申指喜欢收藏各种各样不同东西的人。(b) every conceivable article (任何可以想像的东西) 为正确选项；老妇人并不是专门收藏有价值的东西，而是收藏任何她想收藏的东西，因此 (a) anything of value (任何有价值的东西) 为错误选项；老妇人收藏许多东西，而不是好几个她感兴趣的東西，因此 (c) quite a few items of interest (好几个感兴趣的東西) 为错误选项；老妇人并不仅仅收藏那些稀奇古怪的小东西，因此 (d) odd bits and pieces (稀奇古怪的各种小东西) 为错误选项。

#### 10. (b)

课文中使用的是副词“alone”，表示“独自一人地”，而选项 (b) on her own (她自己一人地) 与“alone”所表达的意思相符，因此为正确选项；而 (a) single (独身的)、(c) lonely (孤单的/地) 和 (d) selfish (自私的) 都与“alone”所表达的意思不符，故均为错误选项。

11. (d)

课文中老妇人觉得劝告她不要在公寓自己过夜的巡官大惊小怪,说巡官是个“fussy creature”意即“大惊小怪的人”,而(d) unduly (过分地)与课文中所表达的意思相符,故为正确选项;而(a) rather (相当地)、(b) quite (十分地)和(c) hardly (几乎不)都与“fussy creature”所表示的意思不符,故均为错误选项。

12. (d)

老妇人将入室抢劫说成是“a little spot of bother (一点儿小麻烦)”,是在轻描淡写地说这件事,因此(d) understating the case (轻描淡写地说这件案子)为正确选项;而(a) underestimating her losses (低估了她的损失)、(b) undercharging the burglars (过轻地指控抢劫犯)和(c) underlining the evidence (强调证据)都不符合原句的意思,因此均为错误选项。

## Lesson 59

### Collecting

#### 收藏

1

写作练习

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Relaxation—looking at treasures—a joy
2. Collection at home—no need to go out
3. Always something to do—right place for latest addition—  
verifying facts in reference books
4. Educational—meet people—circle of friends grows
5. Hobby leads to travel, national and international
6. May become authority—give talks

#### 摘要写作参考答案

Collecting provides hours of relaxation for looking at your treasures is a joy. If you have a collection at home, why go out? There is always something to do, from finding the right place for the latest addition to verifying facts in reference books. Collecting is educational, too, and through meeting people, increases your circle of friends. The hobby can lead to travel, national and international. You may become an authority on the subject and be asked to give talks.

(80 words)

## · 作文参考答案

### *Plan and ideas for composition (b)*

Title: The knock on the window

Introduction: There was a knock on the window—hardly noticeable—branch on oak tree?

Development: House stands on own—countryside—lonely—few neighbours—don't see each other  
Heard blowing of wind—noise of traffic from main road

Conclusion: Looked out—no one there—came back in—knock on window—louder—heart pounding—little girl from down the lane

### *Composition*

There was a knock on the window. At first it was hardly noticeable, almost as if a branch on the large oak tree outside had brushed against the window. It was repeated, and then there was silence.

I got up and looked out of the window. I couldn't see anybody and my dog hadn't started barking. It was mid-afternoon, about three o'clock and I had been listening to the radio and reading a book. The house stands on its own, down the end of a long lane in the middle of the countryside, so it is very lonely. I have few neighbours, but the neighbours I have are very good, even though we don't see each other very often.

I had got so nervous recently that I had to summon up enough courage to unlock the front door and go outside. There was no one there. True, there was a light breeze and the wind was shaking the branches of the oak tree, but the only other

sound was the noise of the traffic on the main road a mile away. For one moment I thought I saw someone hiding behind the fence, but nothing moved, so I thought I must be wrong.

I came back in and settled down by the fire with my book. Then there was a knock on the window, this time louder. It was a real knock with a human hand, no doubt about it—well, certainly not the branch of a tree—and my heart started pounding. I looked up and there, outside the window, was the little girl from down the lane. Her mother had sent her down to see if I was all right, and she had decided to play a trick on me!

(292 words)

### 书信写作参考答案 (a)

I was very pleased to hear you are coming to see me after all this time.

However, as you have never been here before, I thought I'd better give you some directions. You will be coming out to Hightown on the underground. As you come out of the station, turn left and walk along the High Street for 200 metres. Turn left into Green Street, then our road is the first on the right. Our apartment block is on the left.

I'm enclosing a rough map, so I'm sure you'll find the apartment with no problems.

All best wishes,

(100 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

amass (1.1):	collect in large amounts, accumulate
being aware (1.1):	realizing, knowing
move house (1.4):	take your family and belongings from one house to a different one
attics (1.6):	rooms in the roof of a house
gradually acquire (1.10):	slowly (or over a period) get or gain
thrifty (1.12):	very careful with money
in every direction (1.17):	all over the place

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text.

## 3 多项选择练习

### Comprehension 理解

#### 1. (a)

根据课文所述得知,不加选择的收藏家什么都收藏,只凭自己的爱好和习惯,而真正的收藏家则收藏那些可以与其他收藏家进行交流或交换的收藏品,所以 (a) What he collects is only of personal rather than communal interest (他所收藏的物品只是自己感兴趣的东西,而非大家感兴趣的东西) 是不加选择的收藏家与严肃的收藏家的区别,因此为正确选项;而 (b) He lacks the physical and mental energy to go out and about (他没有体力和精力外

出或四处走动)并不是两者的区别所在,因此为错误选项;(c) His possessions are varied but over the years they gain in value (他所拥有的东西各种各样,可是多年之后这些东西就值钱了)并非事实,只是有些东西多年后可能会用得着,而严肃收藏家所收藏的东西倒是有可能升值,因而此为错误选项;不加选择的收藏家并不是为了不去旅行而将收藏品存放在家中,因此(d) He confines his collection to the home and therefore does not travel (他将他的收藏品存放在家中,因此无需旅行)为错误选项。

2. (d)

根据课文第16~17行“*It is a harmless habit, but it litters up her desk to such an extent that every time she opens it, loose bits of paper fall out in every direction* (这种习惯无害,只是把写字台里堆得满满当当,以致每次打开抽屉总能带出许多纸片四处飞扬)”,得知作者的这位朋友一直未能将她的这些收藏品进行整理,导致打开抽屉时纸片乱飞,因此(d) *she never gets round to sorting out the clutter she has accumulated* (她一直未能将她所收集的那些杂物进行整理)为正确选项;短语动词“*to get round to doing something*”表示“最终做某事”。作者的朋友不是保存报纸,而是保存从报纸上剪下的那些流行服装的图样,希望日后有钱去买衣服,因此(a) *she keeps newspapers in the hope that one day they may come in useful* (她保存那些报纸是希望有一天它们可能有用)为错误选项;作者朋友收集服装图样是为了日后去买那些服装,而不是为了不花钱买那些图样,因此(b) *she collects sketches of clothes to save herself the cost of buying them* (她收集服装图样是为了不用花钱去买那些图样)为错误选项;作者的朋友并不是出于情感因素而收集那

些从报纸上裁剪下来的图样,因此 (c) she is too narrow-minded to be able to stop a sentimental practice(她过于心胸狭窄,而无法停止做一件具有情感色彩的事)为错误选项。

3. (a)

根据课文第 18~20 行“*It provides relaxation for leisure hours, as just looking at one's treasures is always a joy. One does not have to go outside for amusement, since the collection is housed at home (它可以使人在闲暇中得到休息,因为欣赏自己收藏的珍品总会充满了乐趣。人们不必走到户外去寻求娱乐,因为收藏品都是存放在家中)*”,得知 (a) *at home, as his collection is sufficient entertainment in itself (在家里〈度过闲暇时光〉,因为他的收藏品本身就足以是一种享受)* 为正确选项;文中表达的是欣赏收藏的珍品度过自己的闲暇时间,而不是一边欣赏珍品一边度过闲暇时光,因此 (b) *at the same time as looking joyfully at his treasures (在愉快地观赏他的珍品的同时〈度过他的闲暇时光〉)* 为错误选项;严肃的收藏家并不仅仅通过核对参考书中的事实教育自己,而是通过所选择的收藏专题教育自己,通过与其他收藏者交流而互相提高,因此 (c) *educating himself and others by verifying facts in reference books(通过核对参考书中的事实教育自己和他人)* 为错误选项;文中并未提到为自己的收藏品建造房屋,文中使用动词“house”表示将收藏品存放在某处,因此 (d) *occupying himself by constructing a house for his collection (忙于为自己的收藏品建造房子)* 为错误选项。

## Structure 结构

### 4. (d)

本题有关比较级“the more... the more... (越……越……)”的用法。这是英语中常用的一种比较形式,表示“越……越……”的意思,该句表示人们年龄越大收集的东西就越多,因此(d) The older they get the more 为正确选项;而在(a) As they get older more 中“as”引导的是一个时间状语从句,后面的主句应该用正常词序,即“people accumulate more belongings”,而不应倒装,故为错误选项;在(b) In getting older there are more 中句子的主干为“there be”结构,可是后面跟随的是另外一个行为动词,因此使用结构有误; (c) Only when they get older, do more 的结构是正确的,但是其所表达的意思是“只有当他们老了,才……”与“年龄越大收集的东西越多”的意思不符,故为错误选项。

### 5. (b)

课文中使用的是被动语态“Some things are collected deliberately in the home ...”,而本句中使用的是主动语态,因此(b) People deliberately collect some things 为正确选项;而在(a) People deliberately collect 中“collect”为及物动词,表示“收集”之意,其后缺少宾语,因此为错误选项; (c) People collect deliberately 中的错误与(a)类似,及物动词“collect”缺少宾语,此外修饰行为动词的副词往往放在所修饰动词的前面; (d) People collect deliberately some things 的错误在于应将副词“deliberately”放在它所修饰的动词“collect”之前。

### 6. (d)

课文中使用的是表示程度的介词短语“to such an extent”而后跟 that 引导的结果状语从句结构,意即“达到某种程

度以至于……”，而 (d) so much 也可以跟 that 引导的结果状语从句，表示“达到某种程度以至于……”，因此为正确选项；(a) so far 所表达的意思是“时至今日”，而不是表示程度，用于此处语义不当，故为错误选项；(b) as long as 表示“只要”，本身即可引导条件状语从句而无需“that”，此外本句需要引导的是结果状语从句，故此为错误选项；(c) in as much 中的 3 个词应该为一个词，“inasmuch”表示“由于”，故为错误选项。

7. (d)

本题有关动词不定式作定语的用法。(d) to put 为动词不定式修饰“the right place”，表示“放置……的地方”，为正确选项；整个句子中没有出现动作的实施者，即人称代词，但是 (a) where he puts 中出现了人称代词 he，比较唐突，故为错误选项；(b) in order to put 是目的状语，这里并不强调目的，而只是陈述一个事实，即“找一个放置……的地方”，因此为错误选项；(c) for to put 中介词“for”后面不能跟动词不定式，因此为错误选项。

8. (b)

本题有关人称代词的使用方法。课文中的“if successful”为省略句，完整的句子应该是“if one is successful”，此处 one 指某位严肃的收藏家，因此 (b) one is 为正确选项；在 (a) they will be 中人称代词和时态都不正确，此处 if 引导的是一个条件句，在条件句中不应该用将来时态；在 (c) it has been 中代词“it”不能指人，故为错误选项；在 (d) they were 中人称代词和时态都不正确，故为错误选项。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (b)

课文中使用的是副词“deliberately (故意地，有目的地)”，

与 (b) intentionally (故意地, 有目的地) 同义, 故为正确选项; 而 (a) systematically (有条理地)、(c) purposefully (果断地) 和 (d) organizationally (有组织地) 都与 “deliberately” 所表达的意思不符, 故均为错误选项。

10. (a)

课文中使用的是 “quite different (完全不同)”, 与 (a) altogether separate (完全不同) 与其同义, 故为正确选项; 而 (b) rather unlike (稍有不同) 在程度上较 “quite different” 弱, 故为错误选项; (c) fairly diverse (略有不同) 也在程度上较 “quite different” 弱, 因此为错误选项; 而 (d) very distinguished (非常杰出的) 与之在语义上完全不同, 因此为错误选项。

11. (d)

课文中使用的是动词 “verify (查证, 核实)”, 而 (d) checking (核查, 核实) 与其同义, 故为正确选项; 而 (a) insuring (保证, 确保)、(b) certifying (证明, 宣称) 和 (c) identifying (认明, 认出) 都与 “verify” 所表达的意思不符, 故均为错误选项。

12. (b)

课文中用 “to have some bearing on it” 表示 “与它有关”, (b) relate to it (与它有关) 与其同义, 故为正确选项; 而 (a) stand up to it (勇敢地面对)、(c) bear it out (证实) 和 (d) carry it off (夺走) 都与其表达的意思不符, 故均为错误选项。

# Lesson 60

## Too early and too late

### 太早和太晚

1

#### 摘要写作要点

1. Girl entered station early
2. He said—2 hours too soon—showed porter details of journey
3. Porter agreed—but mail train, not for passengers
4. Girl demanded—see timetable—station master came—pointed out train stopped for mail
5. Train came in—girl still not allowed to get on

#### 摘要写作参考答案

The girl entered the railway station twenty minutes early, but the porter said she was *two hours* too soon. When she showed him the details of the journey, he agreed it was correct, but said it was a mail train, not a passenger train. When she demanded to see a timetable, the station master came and pointed out that the train only stopped for mail. The train came in but the girl was still not allowed to get on.

(79 words)

## 作文参考答案

### *Plan and ideas for composition (a)*

Title: A piece of paper

Introduction: Piece of paper—blowing in wind—not large—  
drop into water?—looked very light—tissue/  
toilet paper?

Development: Finished sandwiches—set off back to office—not  
looking forward to afternoon

Piece of paper flew up again—noticed writing on  
it—flew away—dropped down—wind took it  
again

Ran after it once more—landed in front of me

Conclusion: Lottery ticket—took it home—won £ 50!

### *Composition*

A piece of paper was blowing in the wind. When I saw it, I was sitting in the park eating my sandwiches. It was floating across the surface of the park lake, not large, about half the size of a postcard, and I wondered when it would drop into the water. But it didn't. As it got near to the surface, it rose again and the wind took it over the bank towards some trees. Even then I thought that it looked very light—perhaps tissue paper or toilet paper, maybe—because it almost fluttered, like a butterfly. But then again, perhaps it wasn't. Perhaps it was just ordinary paper that had got a bit wet.

I finished my sandwiches, threw my waste paper into the bin nearby and set off back towards the trees and my office. I was not looking forward to the afternoon. As I walked round the edge of the lake, the piece of paper flew up again in front of me. It began to annoy me, and intrigue me—because when it

flew up, I noticed that it was pink with some writing on it. It flew away and I chased it. It dropped down and I had nearly reached it when the wind took it again. I ran after it once more and it landed again some metres in front of me.

I finally caught up with it and put my foot on it to stop it flying away again. This time I held it firmly with my foot until I could lean down and pick it up. I looked at it and realized what it was: a lottery ticket—a little wet, and one corner was torn, but it was a lottery ticket. I could see that the date on it was about six weeks before. It was probably worth nothing, but I decided to take it home and dry it.

It *was* worth something! When I checked the numbers with the winning numbers six weeks before, I had 4 the same. The 'piece of paper' was worth £ 50!

(344 words)

### 书信写作参考答案(a)

I am writing to inform you that I shall unfortunately have to be absent from school from Monday, 13th to Thursday, 16th July.

The reason is that an uncle of mine has just died and we have to attend his funeral. As he lived a long way away, my family is travelling there on Monday in order to attend the funeral on Tuesday. My parents then have to attend to certain matters before we travel back on Wednesday.

I sincerely hope that, in view of the situation, you will grant me leave of absence for these four days.

(97 words)

## 2 语法、词汇练习

### 词汇练习参考答案

a state of chaos (1.3):	a condition of complete disorder and confusion
sparsely-populated (1.3):	with not many people living there
disregard (1.4):	ignore
reproached (1.8):	criticized, scolded
setting out (1.10):	leaving the house
diversions (1.10):	moving to a different route (due to an accident, for example)
industrious (1.11):	busy, productive, hard-working
destination (1.33):	the place she wanted to go to

### 关键句型和难点练习参考答案

See text

## 3 多项选择练习

### Comprehension 理解

1. (b)

根据课文第 3 ~ 4 行“Only in a sparsely-populated rural community is it possible to disregard it (只有在人口稀少的农村,才可以忽视准时的习惯)”,得知只有居住在人口稀少的地方的人们才可以忽视准时,因此 (b) people who live in remote places where there are few people (居住在很少有人烟的地方的人们) 为正确选项;而 (a) ordinary citizens who have nothing to do with publicity (与广告业

毫无关系的普通市民)与文中所述意义不符,因此为错误选项;知识分子迟到会得到谅解,但并不等于他们可以不理睬准时的问题,因此(c) intellectuals who have to deal with unexpected problems (不得不处理突发问题的知识分子)为错误选项;(d) people who are forced to work overtime in order to finish a job (为完成某项工作而被迫超时工作的人们)所指的这样的人可能因为要完成某项工作而迟到,但并不等于他们忽视准时这个习惯,故为错误选项。

2. (b)

根据课文第8~10行“*But people are often reproached for unpunctuality when their only fault is cutting things fine. It is hard for energetic, quick-minded people to waste time, so they are often tempted to finish a job before setting out to keep an appointment (但有些人不准时常常是因为掐钟点所致,他们常常会受到责备。精力充沛、头脑敏捷的人极不愿意浪费时间,因此他们常想做完一件事后再去赴约)*”,得知那些掐钟点的人往往是那些精力充沛、头脑敏捷人,因此(b) energetic, quick-minded people (精力充沛、头脑敏捷的人)为正确选项;掐钟点的人可能因为时间卡得太紧,一旦路上遇到事故可能就要迟到,但是并不等于所有掐钟点的人通常都会因路上发生事故而迟到,因此(a) delayed by accidents on the roads (路上因事故而延误)为错误选项;掐钟点并不令人恼火,而是迟到令人恼火,因此(c) no more irritating than the over-punctual (并不比那些过于准时的人更令人恼火)为错误选项;掐钟点的人并不见得总是迟到,因此(d) reproached for being late for appointments (由于约会迟到而受到责备)为错误选项。

### 3. (d)

根据课文第 31~32 行“Just as that moment the train came into the station. The girl, tears streaming down her face, begged to be allowed to slip into the guard's van. But the station master was adamant; rules could not be broken (正在这时, 火车进站了。女孩泪流满面, 央求让她不声不响地到押车员车厢里去算了。但站长态度坚决, 规章制度不能破坏)”, 得知女孩之所以难过是因为站长毫不通融, 不让她上车, 所以 (d) the station master insisted that passengers were not allowed on to it (站长坚持说乘客不允许上那辆车) 为正确选项; 女孩并没有误了火车, 而是那趟火车不允许上乘客, 因此 (a) her parents would not forgive her for missing it (她父母不会原谅她误了火车) 为错误选项; 女孩之所以难过是因为站长不让她上那辆火车, 因此 (b) she had two hours to wait before the next train arrived (她在下一趟火车抵达之前得等两个小时) 为错误选项; 她父母怕她赶不上火车而使接她的人去接她两趟, 而不是她得又一次旅行, 所以 (c) she was going to have to make a second journey to reach her destination (为了到达目的地, 她将不得不又一次旅行) 为错误选项。

### Structure 结构

#### 4. (b)

这是一个先行词 it 作主语而真正的主语为动词不定式的句子。课文中使用的是否定代词“nothing”。本题的句子中使用了否定形容词“impossible”, 因此后面就不应再使用否定代词“nothing”, 否则所表达的意思就正好相反。本题 (b) ever to bring anything 为正确选项; 在 (a) to have ever brought anything 中动词不定式为完成式, 完成

式动词不定式常表示“已经完成或已经发生”的动作或“非真实的过去事件或行为”，本句只是陈述一个事实，因此不应用完成式动词不定式，故此为错误选项；本句使用了表示否定概念的形容词“impossible”，因此(c) to bring nothing ever 中不应用表示否定概念的代词“nothing”，故为错误选项；在(d) nothing to be brought ever 中不仅不该用“nothing”，而且也不该用被动语态的动词不定式，因此为错误选项。

5. (b)

本题有关情态助动词的用法。情态助动词 might 和 may 都可以表示可能性，课文中使用的是“may”，而(b) might 可以替代 may，所以为正确选项；而(a) must、(c) should 和(d) can 这几个情态助动词都不可以表示“可能性”，故均为错误选项。

6. (c)

本题有关“had better”的用法。“had better”表示“应该”，后面跟不带 to 的动词不定式，本题(c) had better be 为正确选项；而(a) are better being、(b) would be better 以及(d) will be better to be 的用法都不正确，故均为错误选项。

7. (a)

课文中使用的是“at the very moment when”，表示“正当……时刻”，而选项(a) just as 所表示的意思与其相同，as 为从属连词引导一个时间状语从句，因此为正确选项；该处引导的是时间状语从句，而关系代词 that 不能引导时间状语从句，因此(b) immediately that 为错误选项；(c) in a while 不能作从属连词，因此无法引导一个时间状语从句，故为错误选项；(d) as soon as 虽然可以作从属连词引导一个时间状语从句，但是所表达的时间概念是

“一……就……”，与文中意义不符，故为错误选项。

8. (c)

课文中使用的是一个状语从句，从句中使用的是被动语态“while she was left behind (而撇下了她)”。(c) leaving her behind 使用的是主动语态的现在分词短语，该分词短语的逻辑主语是 that train，表示“(火车消失在她所要去的方向的同时) 将她撇下了”，因此为正确选项；本句的主语是“she”而不是“that train”，所以不能说 she left her behind，因此 (a) and left her behind 为错误选项；表达“将某人撇下”只能是“to leave somebody behind”，而不能说“to leave behind somebody”，因此 (b) and leave behind her 和 (d) while it left behind her 均为错误选项。

**Vocabulary 词汇**

9. (c)

课文中的原句是“... there can be some tolerance of unpunctuality (……人们可能容忍一定程度的不准时)”，“some tolerance of unpunctuality”表示“对不准时的一定程度的容忍”，而 (c) to a certain extent 意即“一定程度上”，因此为正确选项；而 (a) out of kindness (出于好心)、(b) on occasion (有时，间或) 和 (d) in varying degrees (不同程度地) 都与“some tolerance of unpunctuality”表达的意思不符，故均为错误选项。

10. (b)

课文中使用的是名词“a trial (讨厌的事/人)”。该句中“as”为副词，后而应该跟形容词，而选项 (b) trying 在这里为形容词，表示“令人讨厌的”，因此为正确选项；而 (a) detestable 的意思是“令人憎恶的”，(c) provident 的意思是“深谋远虑的”，(d) inconsiderate 的意思是“不体谅别人的”，都与“令人讨厌的”意思不同，故均为错误选项。

11. (a)

课文中使用的是动词“impress”，意即“使……印象深刻，强调”，而 (a) stressed the point (强调这点) 与“impress”所表达的意思相符，因此为正确选项；而 (b) given the impression (留下这种印象)、(c) marked it down (将它写下/记下) 和 (d) given notice (提出警告) 都与“impress”所表达的意思不符，故均为错误选项。

12. (c)

课文中使用的是“Just at that moment (正在那时)”，而 (c) At that very moment (正在那时) 与“just at that moment”同义，因此为正确选项；而 (a) Only then 表示“只有在那时”，而且当“only then”用于句首时句子应该倒装，故此为错误选项；而 (b) Instantly (立刻，马上) 和 (d) Precisely (准确地) 都与“just at that moment”所表达的意思不同，故也为错误选项。